



Class PG 411

Book . J 68

Copyright N^o _____

COPYRIGHT DEPOSIT.

BOHEMIAN MADE EASY.

A PRACTICAL BOHEMIAN COURSE FOR
ENGLISH SPEAKING PEOPLE.

—BY—

Charles Jonas,

late U. S. Consul at Prague, author of the first Dictionary of the Bohemian
and English languages.

Second Edition.

Published by the SLAVIE, Racine, Wis., 1900.

PG 4111
.J68

~~89~~
~~1890~~

~~~~~  
Entered according to Act of Congress, in the year 1890, in the office  
of the Librarian of Congress, at Washington, D. C.  
~~~~~

© - 1890
Cla. A, 32318
JUL 15. 1909

TO THE HONORABLE

GROVER CLEVELAND,

EXPRESIDENT OF THE UNITED STATES,

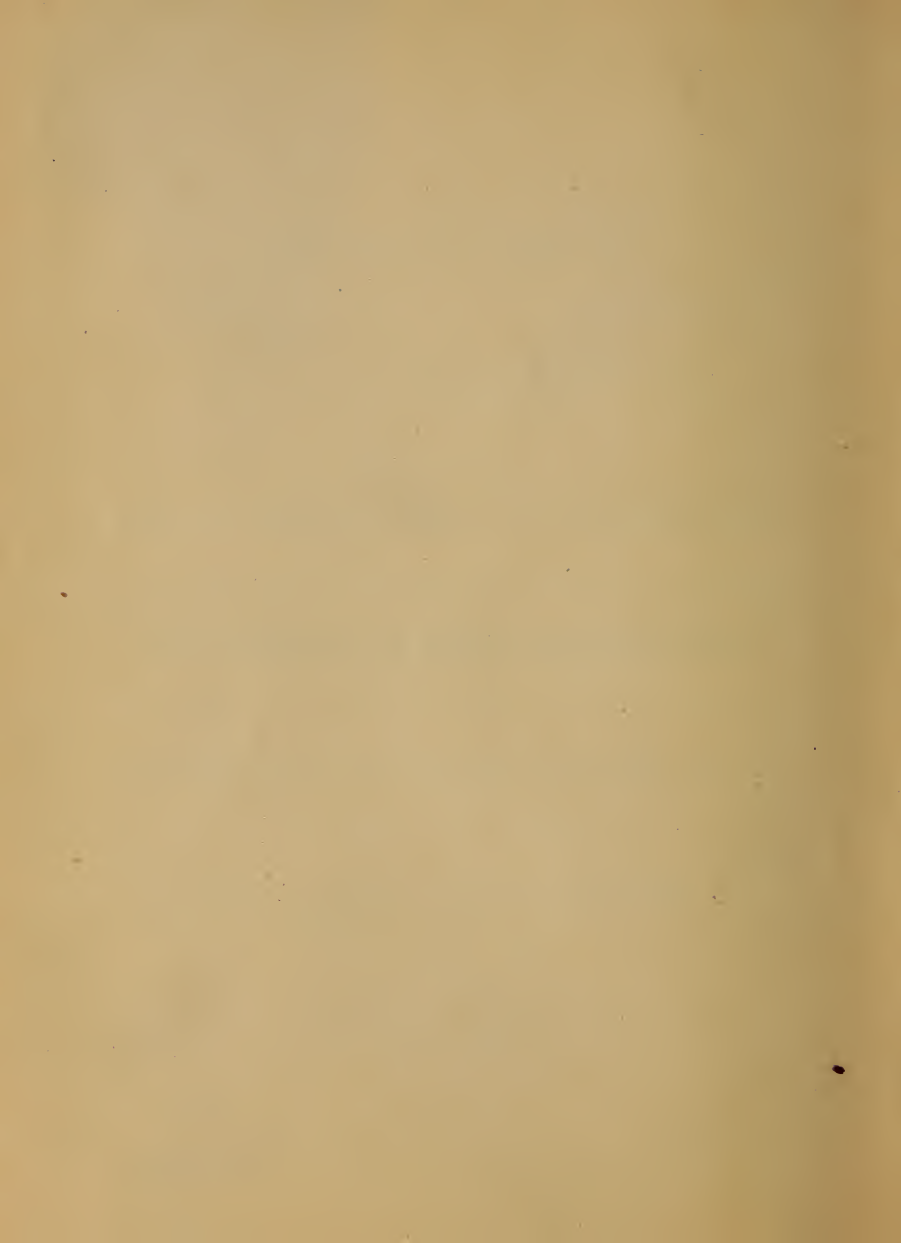
THIS LITTLE BOOK IS DEDICATED,

AS A SLIGHT TOKEN OF PROFOUND,

RESPECT AND ADMIRATION

BY THE

AUTHOR.



Why this book has been written.

The answer to such a question is simple: because there is a demand for it. And whenever there is a demand, the supply is sure to come.

Not a year passes, but numbers apply to divers booksellers and publishers for some handy book to give them a practical knowledge of the Bohemian language or to serve as a proper introduction to a study thereof.

Who are the applicants? They are business men, clerks, salesmen and travelers, druggists and physicians, ministers, teachers and lawyers. They live and follow their vocations in localities where a large fraction of the population speaks the Bohemian language; they perceive the advantage which a knowledge of Bohemian, or even a slight acquaintance with that tongue, would give them; and consequently they look for a guide.

Such a guide this little work is designed to furnish. I may say that within six or eight years past I have myself read hundreds of applications for such a guide from different parts of our country and I repeatedly promised to write a book of this kind as soon as my other occupations permitted. Now I have redeemed that pledge. It has been done to be sure, only in an imperfect manner; there are defects and shortcomings, which in a pioneer work of this kind cannot be avoided. But I applied myself to the task with the honest intention, materially to assist the beginner in his attempt to gain such a knowledge of the Bohemian language, as would be of help to him in his intercourse with people speaking that language, or in his desire to read Bohemian literature; and I cherish the

hope, that this present result of my labor will prove really helpful to those who will make use of it for that purpose. —

„Is Bohemian a hard language to learn?“ This inquiry I have heard more than once.

I think no language is easy to learn, if a person wants to have a perfect command of it; and Bohemian presents about a fair average of the difficulties, which a student of languages encounters. But there is no great difficulty in acquiring a superficial knowledge of any living European tongue, a knowledge sufficient for ordinary intercourse in every day life, if a person has the will and perseverance to learn it and a fair opportunity to use what he learns. Beginners who will take up this little book with an earnest purpose, will soon find out that Bohemian comes well under this general rule.

Some years ago I made the acquaintance of a business man in a small city of Wisconsin, with whom I conversed both in English and Bohemian and whom I noticed to use both languages in his general conversation with others apparently with the same ease and fluency. It was not until some time after our first meeting, that I learned the gentleman in question was not a Bohemian by birth, but a native American of German descent. Had I been told that he was a born Bohemian. I certainly would have believed it, from the way he handled the language. On our next meeting I asked him how he succeeded in mastering the Bohemian language so perfectly; and he said: „My instructor was the Bohemian newspaper. I commenced by reading communications written by farmers in an easy, colloquial style and asking explanations as to meaning and pronunciation. In this I persevered, my stock of words and phrases grew rapidly, and I was soon enabled to understand and to make a rapid progress in conversation. Later on I had recourse to the dictionary.“

This tends to show what may be done by patient application and perseverance and it may serve us an encouragement

to beginners. Of course, the number of persons of other nationalities who have acquired a sufficient practical knowledge of Bohemian to employ it in ordinary intercourse and business, is very large; and I mention it simply to show, that there is no insuperable difficulty in the way, as some persons perhaps might imagine.

And with this little introduction I wish the beginner God speed!

The Bohemian language.

The Slavonic family of nations, numbering rather more than one hundred and ten millions, is composed of two great divisions:

1. The eastern division, comprising the Russians, Bulgarians and Serbo-Croats, under which latter head may also be classed the Slovenes;

2. the western division, comprising the Poles, Bohemians and the remnant of the Wends in Germany.

The Bohemian language is closely related to the other branches of the Slavonic tongue. It needs only a few weeks study, for a person having a full command of Bohemian, to obtain a fair practical knowledge of any other Slavonic idiom. Especially is the relationship between Bohemian and Polish so close, that they might almost be considered dialects of one and the same language.

The Bohemian language is spoken in Bohemia, Moravia, part of Austrian and Prussian Silesia, and also in Upper Hungary. The Slovak idiom spoken in the last named country is simply an earlier form of Bohemian, which latter the Slovaks of Hungary used for centuries as

their literary or "biblical" language; only within the last fifty years have they begun to employ their proper dialect largely in literature. But still, the language is virtually the same, Bohemians and Slovaks needing no interpreters to understand one another, and no dictionaries mutually to read their publications. As a matter of fact, the two idioms are much nearer than high German and low German.

The Bohemians in the United States.

About the year 1848 Bohemian emigration to the United States commenced. Its volume has never been so large as that of the Irish or German emigration, but it has been steady and it will naturally go on for many years to come. In all probability, it will continue as long as European emigration to this side of the Atlantic ocean in general, and it may in the near future assume larger proportions than in the past.

The census of 1870 found 42,000 persons of Bohemian birth settled in the United States. In the year 1880 there were, according to the census taken in that year, over 85,000. But it must be remembered that many of those classified in the census tables as born in Austria, are of Bohemian nationality, especially such as emigrated from the provinces of Moravia and Silesia, and not from Bohemia proper. Quite a number, also, were by mistake entered under the general heading of "Germany", as to the country of their nativity.

It is safe to say that the number of persons born in Europe, whose mother tongue was Bohemian, at the time

of the official enumeration of 1880 exceeded one hundred thousand. At this writing they number nearly 200,000, and together with the first generation born in this country of Bohemian parents and speaking the language, in all probability somewhere near 500,000.

Within the last ten or fifteen years quite a heavy stream of immigration has set in from Hungary. At first mostly employed in Eastern mines and factories, these immigrants have in recent years been spreading west and settling on lands. These Hungarians are mostly Slovaks.

The number of Slovaks in the United States at this time probably equals about one third that of the Bohemians proper; hence the present number of persons in the United States speaking the Bohemian language in both its dialects may be computed at six hundred thousand.

The Bohemians have their homes chiefly in the following states: New York, Pennsylvania, Maryland, Ohio, Illinois, Michigan, Wisconsin, Iowa, Minnesota, Nebraska, Kansas, S. Dakota, Missouri and Texas.

In the first five states and also in Missouri they live chiefly in the cities, following different trades and working in factories. In the other states they are mainly farmers, as a rule very industrious and thrifty. Many of them are of course engaged in business of all kinds and in the professions. In their manners and customs and ways of thought the Bohemians strongly resemble the Germans, particularly the South Germans, with whom they have been in close contact in the old world for over a thousand years. They are industrious and saving, sociable and hospitable;

their favorite beverage at social gatherings and entertainments is beer, and "Bohemian beer" of different make has in recent years become quite popular in this country of ours. Immoderate indulgence in their favorite drink may doubtless sometimes be observed among them as among others, especially in the large cities; but as a rule, they are sober, law-abiding and extremely goodnatured.

In religion, Roman Catholicism predominates among the Bohemians and they have a large number of churches, priests and parish schools in the United States. The Protestants also have numerous places of worship. Large numbers of the Bohemians, however, keep apart from all churches and religious denominations. They are liberals, free-thinkers and agnostics of different shades of opinion, enjoying the inestimable privilege of every American citizen to follow his convictions and enjoy a full personal freedom, so long as he respects the laws and the equal freedom of his fellow-citizens.

The first Bohemian newspaper on this side of the Atlantic was issued thirty years ago at Racine, Wisconsin, the first number appearing on New Year's day 1860. Now there are about twenty five or thirty newspapers in that language published in the United States, both daily and weekly, besides several in the Slovak dialect. Most of them have a good patronage and some have in fact a surprisingly large circulation. Other publications are also quite numerous. The Bohemians, and particularly the farmers, are fond of reading, eager for information, and above all they seek political knowledge, taking the liveliest interest

in whatever concerns the government, public institutions and laws of their adopted country. During the civil war the Bohemians, although at that time quite generally classified as Germans, furnished a considerable contingent of the defenders of the Union and in Chicago a monument will soon be reared by the Bohemians in memory of those of their nationality, who cheerfully took up arms and gave their lives for the unity and freedom of this great country.*)

*) The following is a quotation from an extensive article on the Bohemians in St Louis, Mo., which appeared in the *GLOBE DEMOCRAT* of February 16, 1890:

"In the territory lying between Seventh and Fourteenth streets on the east and west, and Geyer and Russell avenues on the north and south, there is a population of 25,000 souls, all speaking the language of Bohemia, schooling their children in the ancient tongue, keeping up an acquaintance with a rich and varied literature that dates back to the ninth century, and for the most part worshipping in the Roman Catholic Church, of which Bohemia has been a staunch adherent since the ninth century. A thrifty set are these Bohemians, good citizens in all that the term implies, prompt taxpayers, fully alive to the requirements of civilization; mingling freely in business intercourse with their cousins from other lands, they yet preserve the social customs of their native land, and take an overweening pride in the preservation of its language and its literature. The Bohemian met up town in business life would be casually mistaken for a German, but a tour through their section of the city impresses one with their startling individuality.... In conversation with S. (one of their leading men) I was struck by the ease and purity of his English diction. There is a marked peculiarity of most of the Bohemians. From their own harsh and difficult language they switch off into English which betrays but little trace of foreign accent."

The statement about the Bohemians having been steadfast adherents of the Church of Rome may be considered as a serious *lapsus calami*, because it is not borne out by history. The Bohemians were in fact a protestant nation from the burning at the stake of their famous reformers John Huss and Jerome of Prague (in the years 1415 and 1416) until the period of the Thirty Years war, which took its start in Bohemia. Concerning the allusion to the character of the Bohemian language it may be stated as a well known experience, that nearly every language appears "harsh and difficult" to a person who is perfectly ignorant of the same and very rarely hears it spoken. Time and again have I heard, on the European continent, English language characterized as "harsh and difficult", whereas in fact, English is a language not only full of melody as well as power, but probably the easiest of all European languages to learn.

PART I.



SECTION 1.

General observations.

In the Bohemian language Roman characters are used in writing and printing.

In order to read Bohemian it is first necessary to be well acquainted with the sounds, represented by the different letters of the Bohemian alphabet.

In attempting to read English while giving the letters the customary Bohemian sounds, we should find most English words difficult to pronounce and a large proportion of them simply unpronounceable.

The same is true if we attempt to read Bohemian while giving the letters their English sounds.

This explains why English speaking persons, entirely ignorant of any language but their own and supposing that the letters of the alphabet always retain their English sounds, find so many "jawbreakers" in trying to pronounce Bohemian or other foreign words. Foreign persons, ignorant of English, find themselves "in the same boat", when trying to pronounce English words, and their difficulty is even much greater on account of the complicated character of English orthography.

SECTION 2.

The Bohemian alphabet.

The alphabet of the Bohemian language consists of 26 letters, the same as the English, if accented letters, being simply a modification of the original sounds, are not counted; but, counting all the accented letters separately, we find 41 letters in the Bohemian alphabet.

The following table gives the complete alphabet of the Bohemian language, with the English equivalents as near as possible. Capital letters, of course, correspond with the small letters, accented or unaccented.

THE ALPHABET.

a	has the sound of <i>o</i> in <i>done</i> .
á	“ “ “ “ <i>a</i> in <i>arm</i> .
b	“ “ “ “ <i>b</i> .
c	“ “ “ “ <i>ts</i> .
č	“ “ “ “ <i>ch</i> in <i>child</i> .
d	“ “ “ “ <i>d</i> ; it takes the sound of ď when followed by the soft vowels ě, i or í .
ď	“ “ “ “ <i>dí</i> in the French word <i>diabie</i> . This mellow sound of <i>d</i> , imperfectly rendered by <i>dy</i> , is ordinarily heard in the English expressions <i>would you</i> , <i>could you</i> , when rapidly uttered, so that the terminal <i>d</i> and initial <i>y</i> are fused into one sound.
e	“ “ “ “ <i>e</i> in <i>end</i> .
é	“ “ “ “ e in <i>ere</i> , or <i>ai</i> in <i>air</i> .
ě	“ “ “ “ <i>ea</i> in <i>beatitude</i> , or <i>ye</i> in <i>yes</i> ; when it occurs directly after d, n, t , these letters take the soft sound of ď, ň, ť , and ě sounds like e . The syllable je, ye , is an equivalent for ě .
f	“ “ “ “ <i>f</i> .
g	“ “ “ “ <i>g</i> in <i>great</i> ; it occurs only in foreign words.
h	“ “ “ “ <i>h</i> in <i>ham</i> .
ch	“ “ “ “ <i>ch</i> in German and Dutch, also in Welsh, or <i>x</i> in Greek, — somewhat like <i>kh</i> .
i	“ “ “ “ <i>i</i> in <i>pin</i> .
í	“ “ “ “ <i>i</i> in <i>pique</i> , or <i>ee</i> in <i>seen</i> .
j	“ “ “ “ <i>y</i> in <i>yes</i> .
k	“ “ “ “ <i>k</i> in <i>sink</i> , without an aspirate.
l	“ “ “ “ <i>l</i> .

m	“	“	“	“	<i>m.</i>
n	“	“	“	“	<i>n.</i>
ñ	“	“	“	“	<i>ñ</i> in Spanish (cañon) or <i>gn</i> in French (campagne); imperfectly rendered by <i>ny</i> .
o	“	“	“	“	<i>o</i> in <i>obey</i> .
ó	“	“	“	“	<i>ó</i> in <i>lord</i> .
p	“	“	“	“	<i>p.</i>
q	“	“	“	“	<i>q</i> in <i>question</i> ; it occurs only in foreign words.
r	“	“	“	“	<i>r</i> in <i>rest</i> ; it has a sharp, trilling sound.
ř	“	“	“	“	<i>rsh</i> (or <i>rzh</i> , as the Imperial Dictionary of the English language has it;) it is a sound proper to the Bohemian and Polish languages, which must be heard in order to be acquired correctly; the same may be said of the English sound of <i>th</i> , hard and soft.
s	“	“	“	“	<i>s</i> in <i>sink</i> .
š	“	“	“	“	<i>sh.</i>
t	“	“	“	“	<i>t</i> in <i>test</i> ; it takes the sound of t when followed by ě , i or í .
t	“	“	“	“	<i>t</i> in the French word <i>tiens</i> , as commonly pronounced. This mellow sound of <i>t</i> , imperfectly rendered by <i>ty</i> , is also heard in the English expressions <i>wouldn't you</i> , <i>couldn't you</i> , when rapidly uttered, so that the terminal <i>t</i> and initial <i>y</i> are fused into one sound.
u	“	“	“	“	<i>u</i> in <i>push</i> .
ů	“	“	“	“	<i>u</i> in <i>rude</i> , or <i>oo</i> in <i>pool</i> .
v	“	“	“	“	<i>v</i>
x	“	“	“	“	<i>x</i> in <i>expect</i> .
y	“	“	“	“	<i>y</i> in <i>lynch</i> .
ý	“	“	“	“	<i>i</i> in <i>pique</i> , or <i>ee</i> in <i>seen</i> .
z	“	“	“	“	<i>z</i> in <i>zeal</i> .
ž	“	“	“	“	<i>z</i> in <i>azure</i> , or <i>s</i> in <i>pleasure</i> .

The beginner must try to master thoroughly the peculiar sound of every accented letter in the Bohemian alphabet, before proceeding with his lessons. However, it is evident that of all the accented letters only four will present a certain difficulty: **ď**, **ň**, **ť** and **ř**. The rest are simple. Among the plain consonants, the peculiar sound of **ch** must be well practiced; the combination *kh* gives it only imperfectly.

SECTION 3.

Names of the letters.

The names of the letters of the Bohemian alphabet, though of little consequence to the beginner, are given in the following table as near as can be. However, the Bohemian sounds of the letters, as explained in the foregoing section, must be well kept in mind, in order to name the letters correctly.

For instance: **b** is called *bé*, to be pronounced like *beh*, the *e* sounding like *e* in *ere*, **ai** in *air*, or **a** in *fare*, the final *h* being mute and serving only as a lengthening mark.

Two of the accents (*á*, *û*), whenever they occur, signify only a prolongation of the sound; the quality of the other accents has been explained in the foregoing section.

In spelling a word, the vowels with a long accent (*á*, *é*, *í*, *ú*, *ý*) are called *long a*, *long e*, etc.; also, **a** with a comma, **e** with a comma, and so forth; *û* is called *u with a ring*.

THE LETTERS NAMED.

a , á	<i>á</i> (<i>ah</i>)	ch	<i>khá</i>	ř	<i>ersh</i>
b	<i>bé</i>	i , í	<i>ee</i> (<i>in bee</i>)	s	<i>ess</i>
c	<i>tsé</i>	j	<i>yé</i>	š	<i>esh</i>
č	<i>ché</i>	k	<i>ká</i>	t	<i>té</i>
ď	<i>ďé</i>	l	<i>el</i>	ť	<i>ťé</i>

ď	<i>ďé</i>	m	<i>m</i>	u, ú, ů	<i>oo</i>
e, é	<i>é, (eh)</i>	n	<i>en</i>		(in boom)
ě	<i>iyé</i>	ň	<i>eň</i>	v	<i>vé</i>
f	<i>f</i>	o, ó	<i>ó (oh)</i>	x	<i>ix</i>
g	<i>gé</i>	p	<i>pé</i>	y, ý	<i>ee or ypsilon</i>
(like g in go)		q	<i>koo</i>	z	<i>zet</i>
h	<i>há</i>	r	<i>er</i>	ž	<i>žet</i>

SECTION 4.

Bohemian pronunciation.

After mastering the sounds of the Bohemian letters, the learner may be said to have fully conquered Bohemian pronunciation.

There is in fact only one rule: *Pronounce as it is written, sounding every letter*, — of course, giving the letters their proper Bohemian, and not their English sounds.

The English, French and German written languages abound with silent letters; the Bohemian language has practically none, that is, extremely few. Such as there are, will be pointed out in the course of the following lessons.

It is a well known rule in English, that there can be no written syllable without a vowel. In Bohemian we sometimes encounter syllables made up of consonants without any vowel.

“How in the world can you pronounce that?”

Not infrequently have we heard such a question from persons, having no idea of any language but their own.

But it is just as easy to pronounce such syllables in Bohemian, as it is in English to give utterance to syllables with a mute vowel. An example will elucidate it:

Trn means *thorn*. This word is evidently of the same derivation in both languages.

Now, the Bohemian word **trn** being composed of three consonants and no vowel, how is it pronounced?

In the same way, as the second syllable of the English words *bittern*, *slattern*, where the vowel *e* is silent. We hear in that second syllable only the sounds of *t-r-n*, the sound of the vowel *e* disappearing entirely; and this explains exactly the pronunciation of Bohemian words of one syllable, or syllables, without a vowel. Syllables with silent vowels abound in English as well as in German, — not quite so in French; — and they are constantly pronounced with the same ease, as the syllables having no vowel sounds in Bohemian.

It is to be observed that such syllables **always** contain one of the two consonants **l** and **r** which are sometimes called “half-vowels”, because in such cases they almost take the place of vowels. In a prolongation of the sound we hear in Bohemian somewhat indistinctly the vowel **e** before the proper sound of those consonants, as if we wrote and partially pronounced:

t^ern instead of **trn** (thorn)

v^elk “ “ **vlk** (wolf)

The number of monosyllabic words without a vowel is not large; but syllables consisting of two or three consonants occur quite often.

For instance: **trěti**, **strěti**, means in English *to stick out, to push*. **Each** of these words is composed of three syllables; **tr-ěe-ti**, **str-ěi-ti**; and the first syllable of each contains only consonants: **tr**, **str**.

How are they pronounced?

Just like *ter* and *ster* in the English words *bitter*, *blister*. Nobody finds any difficulty in passing over the silent *e* and saying *bittr*, *blistr*.

Among the Bohemian vowels there are some, which are called *soft*, namely: **e**, **ě**, **i**, **í**; and others (**a**, **o**, **u**, **y**) which are called *hard* or *broad*.

Of the soft vowels the last three, **ě**, **i** and **í**, have a softening influence upon some preceding consonants, particularly **n**, **d**, **t**, which they change into the soft sounds of **ñ**, **d'**, **t'**, as noticed in section 1. For instance:

saně	(sleigh) is pronounced as if spelt sañe ;
paní	(mistress, lady) is pronounced as if spelt pañí ;
dělo	(cannon) sounds like d'elo ;
dílo	(work)..... d'ílo ;
tělo	(body)... .. t'elo ;
tisk	(printing)..... tisk ;

This will always be plainly indicated in the pronouncing columns of the practical lessons contained in Part II.

Care must be taken to give every long vowel (**á, é, í, ý, ó, ú, ů**) its proper *long* sound, because a shortened sound would often make the word unintelligible or change its meaning, the same as in English in numerous cases. For instance:

pata means *heel*; **pátá** means the *fifth* (in the feminine gender). The only difference is in the length of the vowels. Likewise in English: **lid** and **lead** have the same vowel sound, the only difference being in its length or quantity. —

We have said all it is necessary to say about Bohemian pronunciation and in closing we again enjoin the only rule, which obtains in the Bohemian with very few exceptions: **Pronounce as it is written**, — giving every letter its proper Bohemian sound.

SECTION 5.

Parts of speech.

In Bohemian the parts of speech or classes of words are the same as in English excepting the article.

In English we have the definite article *the* and the indefinite article *a, an*. In French, masculine, feminine, *le, la*, — *un, une*; in German, masculine, feminine and neutre, *der, die, das*, — *ein, eine, ein*.)

In Bohemian there is no article, definite or indefinite. In this regard, Bohemian agrees with Latin.

We say in English: *the house, the houses, a house*; in Bohemian **dŭm, domy, dŭm**.

SECTION 6.

Gender.

But, having no article, the Bohemian noun suffers nevertheless from the useless infliction of grammatical gender in the same degree as the German, Latin and Greek. It has three genders, namely: masculine, feminine and neutre

The English language has rejected all distinction of gender, attributing sex to living beings only, which is one of the greatest advantages the English language has over all other European tongues, ancient and modern.

In the absence of an article in Bohemian, if we want to designate the gender of a noun, we use the indicative pronoun *this* or *that*, namely: **ten** for the masculine, **ta** for the feminine and **to** for the neutre gender. Hence we say:

ten dŭm		<i>this (or that) house</i>
ta bouda		<i>this (or that) hut</i>
to okno		<i>this (or that) window</i>

In the plural it is **ti** for living masculine beings:

ti muži, *these (or those) men*;

ty for inanimate masculine things and for the feminine gender; **ta** for the neutre:

ty domy, *these or those houses*;

ty boudy, *these or those huts*;

ta okna, *these or those windows*.

However, in colloquial parlance, **ty** is heard in the plural regardless of gender. —

Always remember, that the article has no existence in Bohemian; and that the words **ten, ta, to, — ti, ty, ta**, when used before a noun, are simply indicative pronouns and nothing else.

SECTION 7.

Grammatical rules in general.

Bohemian is one of the highly inflected languages, like German or the classic tongues, which is doubtless a disadvantage, to be deplored especially from the standpoint of the learner. On account mainly of the useless distinction of gender, which permeates the whole structure of the Bohemian language, grammatical forms and rules are numerous, forming the principal difficulty encountered in the study of the language.

But to some extent, at least, that difficulty is offset by colloquial usage, which largely disregards the artificial distinction of gender in the employment of pronouns, adjectives and verbs, as they relate to nouns of different gender. This serves to simplify the matter somewhat for the learner of Bohemian as commonly spoken.

In the following lessons we try to imitate the natural method of learning a language. We do not teach the child grammatical rules and complications before it knows how to speak. We teach its words and their connection in phrases, expressing thoughts.

Consequently we do not intend to cram the beginner at the outset with all sorts of grammatical rules. There are not thousands but millions of people using the Bohemian language and knowing little of the rules and perplexities of its grammar. The same is true of every other living tongue.

This Course being designed solely for practical purposes, it will be our aim to impart to the learner some practical knowledge of the language in the easiest, most natural and most direct way possible. We shall therefore interpolate in the following lessons only such grammatical rules, as

may appear to be indispensable to facilitate the student's progress and which may easily be mastered *en passant*, or, so to say, by a method of easy induction.

A more extended and methodical review of the Bohemian grammar will be found in the last part of this book. After acquiring to a certain degree a practical knowledge of the language, the learner will find it much easier to grapple with the details of its grammar, which in the beginning would serve only to perplex him unnecessarily and to dampen his ardor. And when a moderate knowledge of the tongue is attained, the progressive student will naturally take a Dictionary of the English and Bohemian languages to his aid, which will make further progress rapid and pleasing.

The main difficulty is in the start, as in every other language. It requires earnestness of purpose and perseverance. The beginner must not allow himself to be discouraged by such initial difficulties, as he is sure to meet with; and whenever the pronunciation of an accented letter or a word, as given in this book, seems to be a stumbling-block, we would advise him to ask some neighbor or acquaintance, who speaks Bohemian, to pronounce it for him repeatedly, so that his ear may grow accustomed to the sound and the same may become quite familiar to him. If he fails to catch it forthwith let him try again and again, until he succeeds. Let him remember, that the thousands of Bohemians who learn English find similar difficulties in their way; and numbers of those, who at first felt discouraged, thinking they could never master the intricacies of the English tongue, to-day speak and write it tolerably well, — many of them with fluency and grace.

SECTION 8.

The accent..

In the Bohemian language the accent is always placed upon the first syllable; consequently its rules, which in English have to be closely studied, do not offer any difficulty whatever. Only when a noun is preceded by a preposition of one syllable, the accent is transferred and placed upon that preposition.

SECTION 9.

Ty and **vy**, — *thou* and *you*.

The personal pronoun **ty** of the second person singular is used in Bohemian in family circles, and in addressing familiar or intimate friends. It expresses endearment, familiarity or close friendship.

But among the Bohemians in America it is very often improperly employed instead of **vy** (*you*) in addressing others, which latter word in Bohemian has the same general usage as in English. By a curious mistake most of the original Bohemian settlers in America, like many of the Germans, translated the English *you* by **ty**, fancying the meaning to be identical and supposing that in English the second person singular is used in addressing another person, instead of the second person *plural*, as is the proper custom in Bohemian. But the rule in ordinary discourse is almost the same in English as in Bohemian, the second person plural (*you*, **vy**) being employed in addressing others and always combined with a plural verb, there being only a few exceptions in Bohemian as stated above. The French language follows exactly the same rule as the Bohemian: but in German discourse the third person plural is used in speaking to another (**Sie**, *they*).

This explanation, though somewhat lengthy, has been deemed necessary at the outset.

SECTION 10.

In vulgar language, the sound of the consonant **v** is often improperly placed before the initial vowel **o**, so that for instance, in place of a pure **on**, **ona**, **ono** (he, she, it) we hear **von**, **vona**, **vono**. It is something similar to the vulgar English custom to place the sound of **h** before an initial vowel. *H'englishman*, *h'eye-tooth*, instead of Englishman, eye-tooth.

PART II.

Rules of pronunciation.

The following rules must constantly be kept in mind:

1—The Bohemian pronunciation in the following lessons is always given in *italics*.

2—We proceed upon the supposition that section 2, part I, explaining the sounds of all the Bohemian letters, and particularly the sounds of accented vowels, has been fully digested by the beginner.

3—Consequently we do not attempt, in the following lessons, to give English equivalents for the long vowels **á** and **é**, which are of very frequent occurrence, because it would be a useless complication. For the long vowels **í** and **ý**, whose sound is identical, the English *ee* as heard in *seen* will have to answer. But it is to be observed that in ordinary Bohemian discourse the sound of **ý** is frequently (in fact, nearly always) changed into **ej**, i. e. *ey* as heard in *they*, *obey*. The word **sýr** (cheese), for instance, is properly pronounced *seer*, but commonly *seyr*.

4—The sound of the Bohemian short vowels **a**, **e**, **o**, is represented by *ǎ*, *ě*, *ǝ*; but the marked characters *ǎ*, *ě*, *ǝ* are avoided when their use appears to be superfluous. For instance the pronunciation of words like **tento** (this one) **pense** (pension), **ponor** (draught of a ship) is sufficiently indicated by *tentǝ*, *pensě*, *ponor* to an English-speaking beginner; and it would be superfluous to write *těntǝ*, *pěnsě*, *pǝnǝr*.

5—The short sound of **i** is given by *i*, as heard in *pin*. When the long English sound of *i* (as heard in *dine*) is to be employed a full-face **i** or **I** will stand for it, which however is of rare occurrence.

6—Short **y** always retains its SHORT English sound as heard in the word **lynch**, and we use for it in the pronouncing column either *i* or *y*, as may be more appropriate. The combination **ej** will commonly be represented by *ey*, which must always be pronounced like *ey* in *they*, *why*, *obey*.

7—The short vowel **u** is represented by *ů*, but frequently also by *oo*, where a slight lengthening of the sound is not only admissible, but conducive to a clear enunciation. Long **ú** and **ů** are naturally always rendered by *oo*, as heard in *boot*.

8—The vowel **ě**, when preceded by **d**, **n**, **t**, changes them into **ď**, **ň**, **ť**, and has then the sound of a simple **e**. When it retains its proper sound of **ě**, we commonly write it *ye* in the pronouncing column. The student must be careful always to sound it like *ye* in the English words *yes*, *yet*, *yell*, and NEVER like the word *ye*, meaning “you”. For instance: **mě**, **právě**, (me, just). *mye*. *právye*, (*myě*, *právě*).

The syllable **je** is identical in pronunciation with **ě**, and is also rendered by *ye*; for example: **jen** (only), *yen*. **Je** is generally used in common discourse as an abbreviation of **jest**, *yest* (is); to guard against possible mispronunciation, we will always write it *yě*.

9—The sound of the soft consonants **ď**, **ň**, **ť** is represented by the combination *dy*, *ny*, *ty*, when practicable, which is rarely the case. Whenever this is found impracticable, or when it would only serve to obscure instead of facilitating matters, a full-face **ď**, **ň**, **ť** it is used in the pronouncing column and the student must try his best to give it the proper Bohemian sound.

Inflexible rule: When the soft vowels **ě**, **i**, **í** follow after **d**, **n**, **t**, these consonants are softened into **ď**, **ň**, **ť**, and will be so marked.

10—To represent the sound of **ch**, the combined letters *kh* are invariably employed, for want of a better substitute. The sound of **ř** is given by *rsh*, for the same reason.*)

*) The letter **ř** was unknown in the old Bohemian language and is wisely rejected by the Slovaks, who use the letter **r** in its place. In many cases also, where its use is insisted upon by strict and pedantic grammarians, it is avoided by the practical common sense of the people.

11—For the letter *č* we use *ch* or *tch* as heard in *chap*; *wretch*; for *š* the English equivalent *sh* is used; for the Bohemian *j*, the letter *y* as heard in *yonder* is made to answer. A final *s* in Bohemian has always the sharp hissing sound and will be marked *ss*.

12—For the sound of *ž* the Imperial Dictionary gives *zh* as a substitute; but we retain the full-face Bohemian *ž* in the pronouncing column, as nothing would be gained by such a substitution. It is always pronounced like *z* in *azure*, or *s* in *pleasure*. But in some cases, when terminating a word or a syllable, the letter *ž* takes the sharper sound of *sh* and will be so noted.

THE DIPHTHONG *ou*.

This is the only diphthong in the Bohemian language, and it must always be pronounced like *ou* in *dough*, or like the word *owe*, — never like *ou* in *pound* or *ghoul*. We shall commonly mark it *oŭ*.

ABBREVIATIONS

will be avoided as much as possible, and their meaning will in every case be self-evident. — The letters *m*, *f*, *n* beside a noun denote gender (masculine, feminine, neutre). — *Sing.* means singular number; *pl.* means plural number.

THE HYPHEN.

Syllables without a vowel — but always containing one of the so-called “semi-vowels” *l* and *r*, as before observed, — are separated from other syllables of the same word by a hyphen, to make their separate pronunciation apparent. For instance: *brzo* (soon), *br-zŏ*, — the syllable *br* being pronounced exactly like *bor* in the English words *labor*, *neighbor*.

However, a silent *é* will often be interpolated in such syllables, to elucidate their pronunciation; for instance: *prší*, *p^érshee*, it rains.

THE APOSTROPHE

will be used to prevent a collusion of two letters, into which an English-speaking beginner might easily be entrapped, and to keep them separate; as, for example: *měljsem* (I had), pronounced *m'yell sēm*, — and not *my-ell sēm*.

LESSON I.

Já	<i>yá</i>	I	ona	<i>ňná</i>	she
ty	<i>ty</i>	thou (<i>improperly</i> you)	ono	<i>ňň</i>	it
on	<i>ňn</i>	he	ten, ta, to,	<i>ten, tá, tǒ,</i>	this, tha ^t
		ty	<i>ty,</i>	that	<i>or</i> those
		tu, zde	<i>tǔ, zdě</i>	here	
		a, i	<i>ǎ, i</i>	and	
		ano, ne	<i>ňň. ně</i>	yes, no	
		za zǎ	<i>for;</i>	půl	<i>pool</i> half
		na	<i>ňá</i>	on	

Já mám,	<i>yá mám,</i>	} I have <i>or</i>	on má,	<i>ňn má,</i>	} he has <i>or</i>
mám	<i>mám</i>		} I have got	má	
mám?	<i>mám?</i>	have I?	má?	<i>má?</i>	has he?
ty máš,	<i>ty másh,</i>	} thou hast <i>or</i>	ona má,	<i>ňná má,</i>	} she has <i>or</i>
máš	<i>másh</i>		} thou hast got	má	
		(<i>improperly</i> : you have)	ono má,	<i>ňň má,</i>	} it has <i>or</i>
máš	<i>másh</i>	hast thou? (have you?),	má	<i>má</i>	} it has got

dollar, m. *dollár* dollar
 půl-dollar, m. *pool-d.* half-a-dollar
 cent, m. *tsent* cent
 peníze, pl. *peňeezě* money *or* cash
 hotové *hǒtové* cash

účet, m. *oo-chet,* bill, account
 dluh, m. *dlooh* debt
 na dluh *ňá dlooh* on trust, on credit
 na účet *ňá-oochet,* on trust, on credit
 maso, n. *māsǒ* meat

chleb, m.	<i>khleb</i> }	bread	pivo, n.	<i>peevõ</i>	beer
chleba	<i>khlebã</i> }		vino, n.	<i>veenõ</i>	wine
sýr, m.	<i>seer</i>	cheese	soda, f.	<i>sodã</i>	soda
máslo, n.	<i>mãslõ</i>	butter	voda, f.	<i>vodã</i>	water

Note 1. Pronounce **má** like *ma'a*, the vulgar abbreviation of *Mamma*; and **mám** like *ma'am*, the vulgar abbreviation of *Madam*; it will assist in catching the true sound,

Note 2. In Bohemian, **míti meet'i** (to have), is not an auxiliary verb as in English, but always an independent verb.

Note 3. **Soda** is commonly used as an abbreviation of **sodovka**, soda-water. — In vulgar speech, the expression **jo, yõ**, (from the German *ja*) is often heard instead of **ano, yes**.

Note 4. The long vowel **ú, oo**, which occurs only at the beginning of a word or syllable, is often changed into **ou, oũ**, and so pronounced. Hence we frequently hear **oučet, oũchet**, instead of **účet, oočet**, and the like.

EXERCISES.

Já mám peníze, I have money.

Mám peníze, I have money.

Ty máš peníze, thou hast money
(sometimes *improperly* used for:
you have money, See Section 7.
Part I.)

On má hotové, he has the cash.

Ona má chleba, she has bread (*or*
the bread).

Ona má dollar, she has a dollar.

Ona má cent, she has a cent.

Já mám účet, I have the bill.

Já mám dluh, I have a debt.

Ty máš dluh, thou hast (you have)
a debt.

On má dluh, he has a debt.

Já mám ten účet, I have the bill.

Mám ten účet? have I that bill?

Mám, I have.

Máš ten účet? hast thou (have
you) that bill?

Mám, I have.

Máš dollar? hast thou (have you)
a dollar?

Já mám půl-dollar, I have half-a-
dollar.

Máte peníze? have you money?	Máš maso? hast thou (have you) meat?
Má peníze? has he money?	meat?
Má on ty peníze? has he that money?	Ne, no.
On má dollar, he has a dollar.	Mám chleba a maso, I have bread and meat.
On má ten dollar, he has that dollar.	A já mám pivo, and I have beer.
Ona má ty peníze, she has that money.	To pivo, that beer (<i>or</i> this beer).
Ona má dluh, she has a debt.	To pivo a to víno, that beer and that wine.
Ona má zde účet, she has an account here.	Chleba za peníze } bread for cash
Ona má ten účet, she has that bill.	a pivo na dluh, } and beer on trust.
Mám chleba, I have bread.	Maso za hotové } meat for cash and
A já mám maso, and I have meat.	a víno na účet } wine on account.
Máš chleba? hast thou (have you) bread?	Má ten chleba } has he that bread
Ano, mám; yes, I have.	a to máslo? } and that butter?
	Chleba i voda, bread and water.
	Máslo a sýr, butter and cheese.

Note 5. *Gender of the nouns.* It will be observed that the nouns

dollar
cent

účet
dluh

chleba
sýr

are all of the masculine gender, and using the indicative pronoun we say: **ten dollar, ten cent,** etc.

Nouns terminating in consonants are mostly of the masculine gender.

The nouns **voda, soda,** are of the feminine gender: **ta voda, ta soda.**

Nouns terminating in a are always of the feminine gender.

But some feminine nouns also terminate in **ě** and in consonants: for instance **země,** earth (land, country): **kost,** bone; **daň,** tax.

The nouns **maso, máslo, pivo, víno,** are neutre: **to maso, to máslo,** etc.

Nouns terminating in o are always of the neutre gender.

But some neutre nouns have the termination **e**, **ě** or **í**; for instance **pole**, field; **doupě**, den; **osení**, crop.

Note 6. The noun **peníze** (money) is in the plural, the singular **peníz**, *peñeez*, means either "a coin" or "an amount".

LESSON II.

My	<i>me</i>	we	máme	<i>mámě</i>	we have
vy	<i>vy</i>	you	máte	<i>mátě</i>	you have
oni	<i>õñi</i>	they	mají	<i>mã-yeë</i>	they have

Note 1. In the third person plural **oni** *õñi* (they) is used in the masculine gender for animate creatures; **ony**, *õny* (they) in the feminine gender, and in the masculine for inanimate things; **ona** *õnã* (they) in the neutre gender.

But in common discourse no such grammatical distinction is made and the masculine form **oni** is employed in all cases.

papír,	m.	<i>pãpeer</i>	paper	plac,	m.	<i>plãts</i>	} place or room table
pero,	n.	<i>perõ</i>	pen	místo,	n.	<i>méestõ</i>	
inkoust,	m.	<i>inkoúst</i>	ink	stůl,	m.	<i>stool</i>	

vůz,	m.	<i>vooz</i>	wagon	seno,	n.	<i>sěňõ</i>	hay
bič,	m.	<i>bitch</i>	whip	obilí,	n.	<i>õbe-lee</i>	grain
pytel,	m.	<i>pitěll</i>	sack	potaħ,	m.	<i>potãħ</i>	team

čas, m. *chãss* time

tam	<i>tãm</i>	there	dost	<i>dõst</i>	enough
jen, jenom	<i>yey, yenõm</i>	only	každý	<i>kãždee</i>	every one

všichni, *fshikhñi* all

EXERCISES.

My máme papír, we have paper.	Zde máte stůl, here you have a table.
Máte pero? have you a pen?	Máme vůz, we have a wagon.
Ano, mám; yes, I have.	On má bič, he has a whip.
Máte inkoust? have you ink?	Ona má pytel, she has a sack.
Mám, I have.	Mají potah, they have a team.
Máte peníze? have you money?	Oni mají obilí a seno, they have grain and hay.
Zde máte plac, here you have a place.	Mají obilí a seno? have they grain and hay?
Tam máte místo, there you have a place.	Mají jen seno, they have only hay.
Zde má každý místo, here every one has a place.	Oni mají jenom pytel, they have only a sack.
Tam mají všichni místo, there they all have a place.	Máme čas, we have time.

Note 2. As observed in *všichni* (all), when a word commences with the letter *v* followed by another *consonant*, the initial *v* takes the sharp sound of an *f*, whenever the facility of pronunciation naturally requires that modification of the sound.

LESSON III.

Kde <i>gdě</i>	where	ne <i>ně</i>	no, not
kdy <i>gdy</i>	when	proč <i>průch</i>	why
kdo <i>gdo</i>	who	proto že <i>protě že</i>	because
teď <i>teď</i>	} now, at present	ani <i>āni</i>	} no, not one, not even, neither—nor
yní <i>nyňi</i>			
nemám <i>nemám</i>	I have not, I have not got	nemáme <i>nemámě</i>	we have not
nemáš <i>nemáš</i>	thou hast (you have) not	nemáte <i>nemátě</i>	you have not
nemá <i>nemá</i>	he (she, it) has not	nemají <i>nemájee</i>	they have not

Note 1. In the words **kde**, **kdy**, **kdo** the hard consonant **k** is pronounced like **g** in *go*. In **nemám**, **nemáš**, etc.. *nem* has exactly the same sound as in the word *nemesis*.

Note 2. Negation is always expressed by the prefix **ne**.

EXERCISES.

Nemám peníze, I have no money.

Nemáš peníze? hast thou no money?

Nemáte peníze? have you no money?

Ne; no.

Proč nemá peníze? why has he (she, it) no money?

Proto že nemá obilí, because he has no grain.

Nemáme účet, we have no account.

Nemáte hotové? have you no cash?

Nemáte ani dollar? have you not even a dollar?

Nemá ani cent? has he not a cent?

Nemám ani dollar, I have not a dollar.

Nemá ani cent, he has not a cent.

Nemají ani chleb, ani máslo; they have neither bread nor butter.

Nemají chleba, ani máslo, ani sýr; they have no bread, no butter and no cheese.

Nemáme papír, pero, ani inkoust; we have no paper, no pen and no ink.

Nemáte plac? have you no place?

Zde nemáme místo, we have no place here.

Tam nemáme místo, we have no place there.

Máš čas? hast thou time?

Máte čas? } have you time?

Máte kdy? }

Nemám čas, } I have no time.

Nemám kdy, }

Ted' nemáme čas, we have no time now.

Nyní nemají čas, they have no time now.

Kdy máte čas? when have you time?

Kdy máme čas? when have we time?

Nyní; now.

Kdo má peníze? who has money?

Kdo má čas? who has time?

Kde máš peníze? where hast thou the money?

Kde máte peníze? where have you the money?

Kdo nemá peníze? who has no money?

Kdo má dluh? who has a debt?

Kde máte dluh? where have you a debt?

Proč nemáte hotové? why have you not the cash?

LESSON IV.

Co	<i>tsǒ</i>	what	moc	<i>mǒts</i>	} much, many
co to	<i>tsǒ tǒ</i>	what it is (that)	mnoho	<i>mnohǒ</i>	
něco	<i>ñetsǒ</i>	something	tuze	<i>toozě</i>	very; too
nic	<i>ñits</i>	nothing	jak	<i>yǎk</i>	how
pranic	<i>prǎñits</i>	nothing at all	tak	<i>tǎk</i>	so

EXERCISES.

Já mám něco. I have something.

Já nemám nic. Nemám nic. I have nothing.

Já mám dollar, I have a dollar

Nemám ani dollar, I have not even a dollar.

Nemám pranic, I have nothing at all.

Nemáš nic, thou hast nothing.

Nemáte nic, you have nothing.

Oni nemají nic, they have nothing.

Co to máš? what is it thou hast got?

Máš něco? hast thou anything?

Co to máte? what have you? (what is it you have? what have you got?)

Máte něco? have you anything?

Co to mají? what have they got?

Nemáte nic? have you nothing?

Nemáte pranic? have you nothing at all?

Tak vy nemáte nic, so you have nothing.

Nic nemám, I have nothing.

Pranic nemáme, we have nothing at all.

Pranic nemají, they have nothing at all.

Ani víno, ani pivo nemají; they have neither wine, nor beer.

Mám moc, I have much.

Máme mnoho, we have much.

Ty nemáš moc, thou hast not much.

Vy nemáte moc, you have not much.

Oni nemají mnoho, they have not much.

Jak moc? Jak mnoho? how much?

Tuze moc. Tuze mnoho; very much.

Ne moc. Ne mnoho; not much.

Ne tuze moc, not very much.

Ne tuze mnoho, " " "

Ne tak tuze mnoho, not so very much.

Máš dost? hast thou enough?

Máte dost? have you enough?

Ano, mám dost; yes, I have enough.

Nemám dost, I have not enough.

To je tuze mnoho, co máte; that is very much, what you have got.

LESSON V.

někdo	<i>ňegďo</i>	somebody, some one	někde	<i>ňegďe</i>	somewhere, anywhere
nikdo	<i>ňigďo</i>	nobody, no one	nikde	<i>ňigďe</i>	nowhere
žádný	<i>žádnee</i>		nikdy	<i>ňigďi</i>	never
vždy	<i>vždi</i>	always, all the time, ever	stále	<i>stálě</i>	perád*) <i>poršád</i>
vždycky	<i>vždi-tskí*)</i>		co dělat	<i>tsě d'elät</i>	
práce,	f.	<i>prátsě</i>	work		

EXERCISES.

Máte něco? have you something?	Vy nemáte nikdy nic, you never have anything.
Máte někde něco? have you got something, anywhere?	Mám vždy (dycky) něco, I always have something.
Nemáme nikde nic, we have got nothing, nowhere.	Máte vždycky něco, you always have something,
Kdo má něco? who has something?	Pořád něco máte, you always have something.
Žádný nic, nobody (has) anything.	Ty pořád něco máš, thou hast always something.
Nikdo nemá nic, nobody has anything.	Stále něco máte, you always have something.
Nemáme žádný nic; nobody (none of us) has anything.	Nestále něco mají, they always have something.
Nikdo nemá tuze moc, nobody has too much.	Nemám pořád nic, I never have anything.
Nemám nikde nic, I have not anything anywhere.	Stále nemá nic, he never has anything,
Ty nemáš nikdy nic, thou never hast anything.	

*) Colloquially *dycky*, *dít-ski*; *porád*, *porád*.

Pořád nemají nic, they never have anything.	Proč nemáte nikdy čas? why have you never time?
Proč nemáš nic? why hast thou nothing?	Proto že mám moc práce, because I have much work (much to do).
Proč nemáte nic? why have you nothing?	Proto že mám mnoho co dělat, because I have much to do.
Proč nemáte něco? why have you not something?	Proto že mám tuze moc práce, because I have very much to do.
Proto že nemám, because I have not.	Jak moc? Jak mnoho? how much (many)?
Nemáš dollar? hast thou not a dollar?	Tak moc. Tak mnoho. So much (many).
Nemáte peníze? have you no money?	Tak tuze moc, so very much.
Proč nemáte peníze? why have you no money?	Proč tak moc? why so much?
Já mám půl-dollar, I have half-a-dollar.	Stále tak tuze moc, always so very much.
On má dollar a půl, he has a dollar and a half.	Žádný nemá tak mnoho, nobody has so much.
Nikdy nemám čas, I never have time.	Ne tuze moc, not too much.
	Co to? what is it?
	Nic, nothing.

Note 1. It will be observed that in Bohemian there is a double negation expressed in a negative sentence:

Já nemám nic, *literally*, I have not nothing, (*actually*, I have nothing).
Žádný nemá nic; nobody has not nothing, (nobody has anything).
Nemáte nikdy nic; you never have not nothing, (you never have anything).

Note 2. The order of the words in a sentence is much less rigid than in English, and may often be changed at pleasure or according to the stress we wish to lay upon a certain word, without changing the sense. For instance;

Žádný nemá mnoho; mnoho nemá žádný;
nemá žádný mnoho,

This is always one and the same sentence, the words fitting together at the pleasure of the speaker. But in English we are rigidly bound to a certain order: *nobody has much*. It would be impossible to transpose the words and say: *much has nobody; has nobody much*.

Of course, not every Bohemian sentence yields to transposition to the same extent, but nearly every one yields more or less. Let us take another illustration at random from the foregoing exercises:

Proto že mám moc práce, *because I have much work (much to do)* may be expressed as follows, without changing the sense:

proto že moc práce mám;
proto že práce moc mám;
proto že moc práce mám;
proto že práce mám moc.

In the English sentence no transposition is possible. What an immense help this freedom of transposition is, especially in poetry, will be apparent to the student.

LESSON VI.

Já jsem	<i>yá sěm</i>	}	I am		ty jsi	<i>ty si</i>	}	thou art
jsem	<i>sěm</i>				jsi	<i>si</i>		
on jest,	<i>ŏn yest;</i>		on je,		<i>ŏn yě;</i>		jest, je	he is
ona “	<i>ŏnā “;</i>		ona “		<i>ŏnā “;</i>		“ “	she is
ono “	<i>ŏnŏ “;</i>		ono “		<i>ŏnŏ “;</i>		“ “	it is
My jsme,	<i>me smě</i>	}	we are		vy jste	<i>vee stě</i>	}	you are
jsme	<i>smě</i>			jste	<i>stě</i>			
oni (ony,	ona) jsou		<i>ŏni (ŏny, ŏnā)</i>		<i>soŭ</i>		}	they are
jsou			<i>soŭ</i>					

Note 1. The verb *býti*, *beeťi* (to be) is the only auxiliary verb in the Bohemian language.

Jsem, jsi, jsme, jste, jsou, as shown above, are pronounced: *sem, si, smě, stě, soň*. In spelling the initial *j* is also frequently omitted, even by some of the best writers: *sem, si, sme, ste, sou*.

<i>dobrý, á, é</i>	<i>dobree</i>	good	<i>také, taky</i>	<i>táke</i>	also, too;
<i>špatný, á, é</i>	<i>shpätnee</i>	bad	<i>ale</i>	<i>álě</i>	but
<i>drahý, á, é</i>	<i>dráhee</i>	dear	<i>zde, tu, tady</i>	<i>zdě, tů, tůde</i>	here, present:
<i>laciný, á, é</i>	<i>lätsinee</i>	cheap	<i>teda</i>	<i>tějá</i>	well then;
<i>čerstvý, á, é</i>	<i>cherstvee</i>	fresh	<i>už, již</i>	<i>űsh, yeež</i>	already
<i>doma</i>	<i>děmă</i>	at home			

není neňí (colloquially: *nejní, neyňí*), he (she, it) is not
pravda, právdă true, truth

EXERCISES.

<i>Jsem zde,</i>	I am here.	<i>Ano, už jsou tu!</i>	Yes, they are here already.
<i>Zde jsem,</i>	here I am.	<i>Teda jsou všichni zde;</i>	well, then they are all here.
<i>Já jsem už zde,</i>	I am here already.	<i>Proč jsme zde?</i>	why are we here? (what are we here for?)
<i>Ji zde?</i>	art thou here?	<i>Proč vy jste tu?</i>	why are you here?
<i>Už jsem tu,</i>	I am here already.	<i>A proč on tady je?</i>	and why is he present?
<i>Jste už tady?</i>	are you already here?	<i>Proč jsou ty zde?</i>	why are those here?
<i>Už jsme tady,</i>	we are here already.		
<i>My jsme už také zde,</i>	we are also here already.		
<i>Jsou už zde?</i>	are they already here?		

<i>Máme dobrý chleba,</i>	we have good bread.	<i>Ano, je dobrý;</i>	yes, it is good.
		<i>Ale je drahý,</i>	but it is dear.
<i>Je ten chleba dobrý?</i>	is this bread good?	<i>My máme chleba doma,</i>	we have bread at home.

Je čerstvý?	is it fresh?	Vždyť (dyť) není drahý;	but it is not dear.
Ano, ten chleba je čerstvý,	yes, that bread is fresh.	Ale vždyť není drahý;	why, it ain't dear at all.
Ale proč je tak drahý?	but why is it so dear?	Je laciný,	it is cheap.
Není drahý,	it is not dear.	Je dost laciný,	it is cheap enough.
Jest tuze drahý,	it is very dear.	Je tuze laciný,	it is very cheap.

Ten sýr je dobrý,	that cheese is good.	My máme dobré víno,	we have good wine.
Je čerstvý,	it is fresh.	Kde mají dobré pivo?	where do they have (keep) good beer?
To pivo je taky dobré,	that beer is also good.	Zde všude,	here everywhere.
Ano, to je pravda;	yes, that is true.	Je to pravda?	is it true?
Je čerstvé,	it is fresh.	Ano, to je pravda;	yes, that is true.
Ale ta soda není dobrá,	but this soda-water is not good.	Zde všude mají dobré pivo,	here they everywhere have good beer.
To víno je špatné,	that wine is bad.	Ale víno nemají dobré,	but their wine is not good (<i>literally</i> : but wine they have not good).
Proč není to víno také tak dobré?	why is that wine not just as good?	Proč nemáte dobré víno?	why have you not good wine?

Note 2. It will be observed that the termination of the adjectives *dobry*, *drahy* etc. changes according to gender.

	The masculine gender terminates in <i>ý</i>	
the feminine	“ “ “	<i>á</i>
the neutre	“ “ “	<i>é</i>
dobry sýr (masc.),	<i>dobree seer</i> ,	good cheese;
dobrá voda (fem.),	<i>dobrá vöddä</i> ,	good water;
dobré pivo (neut.),	<i>dobré (eh) pivö</i> ,	good beer.

The feminine and neutre will always be indicated by placing **á, é** after the masculine adjective, as above.

In common conversation, however, the masculine termination is also used in the neutre gender: **dobrý pivo**; so that practically we hear only the two terminations **ý** and **á**: **dobrý, dobrá**.

Note 3. In ordinary speech the final **ý** of all adjectives in the masculine gender is pronounced *ey* (as in *they*), and such is in fact the prevalent custom in relation to the long letter **ý**, no matter where it occurs, as stated in the "Rules of Pronunciation". Hence we hear *dobrey, dráhey* in the masculine gender, instead of *dobree, dráhee*. This is the general colloquial usage, by no means confined to the uneducated lasses. It has sprung up quite naturally because the sound of *ey* is not only easier, but also more euphonious than the sound of *ee*, in most such cases. Listening to the common conversation of Bohemians, the beginner will a'most constantly hear the long **ý** pronounced *ey*.

LESSON VII.

Rád	<i>rád</i>	glad	nemíti rád	<i>nemeet'i rád, (nemeet' nád),</i>	to dislike
nerad	<i>neräd</i>	sorry	býti rád	<i>bee'ti, näd, (beet rád),</i>	to be glad
rádi	<i>räd'i</i>	} (the same in plural)	býti nerad	<i>bee'ti, neräd (beet neräd),</i>	to be sorry
neradi	<i>nerad'i</i>				
miti rád	<i>meet'i rád (meet räd)</i>	to like			
vždyť	<i>vždít'</i>	} but, well, yet	veliký, á, é	<i>velikee</i>	} large,
dyť (colloquial)	<i>dyť</i>			velký	
tak	<i>täk</i>	so, such	malý, á, é	<i>málee</i>	small, little
také tak	} <i>täkě täk</i>	} just so,	dlohý, á, é	<i>dloúhee</i>	long
tuhy tak			} just as	krátký, á, é	<i>krátkee</i>
všude	<i>fshudě</i>	} every-		pravý, á, é	<i>právee</i>
všade	<i>fshädě</i>		falesný, á, é	<i>fäleshnee</i>	false
všudy	<i>fshude</i>		where	plný, á, é	<i>pl-nee</i>
			prázny, á, é	<i>práznee</i>	empty

i	<i>e</i>	oh, well	nebo	<i>něbď</i>	or
že	<i>žě</i>	that	jako	<i>yăkď</i>	as, like
že je	<i>žě yě</i>	that he (she, it) is	skoro	<i>skorď</i>	almost
zase	<i>ză-sě</i>	} again	tomu	<i>tďmď</i>	of it
zas	<i>zăss</i>		žádné	<i>žădné</i>	none
opět	<i>op-yet</i>		dlužen	<i>dloožen</i>	indebted

EXERCISES.

Já jsem rád, I am glad.

To sem rád! I am so glad.

Tuze rád! very glad!

Jsmo tomu rádi, we are glad of it.

Tuze jsme tomu rádi, we are very glad of it.

Oni jsou tomu moc rádi, they are very glad of it.

Jsi rád nebo ne? art thou glad or not?

Jste tomu rádi? are you glad of it?

Máte to rád? (speaking to *one* person) do you like it?

Nemám to rád, I do not like it.

Nic to nemám rád, I do not like it at all.

Nemají to rádi. Oni to nemají rádi. They do not like it.

Jsem rád že mám peníze; I am glad (that) I have money.

Ten dollar je falešný; that dollar is false.

Není. Je pravý; no, it is genuine.

Já mám vždycky dobré peníze, I have always good money.

Máte vůz plný? have you a full wagon (is your wagon full)?

Vůz není plný, the wagon is not full.

On je skoro prázdný, it is almost empty.

On je rád že má prázdný vůz; he is glad that he has an empty wagon.

Já mám dluh, I have a debt.

Mám jen malý dluh, I have only a small debt.

Ale ty máš (vy máte) velký dluh; but thou hast (you have) a big debt.

Mám také tak velký dluh jako vy; I have just as large a debt as you.

Vždyť máte peníze! but you have money!

I nemám žádné; oh, I have none (well, I have none).

On je všude dlužen, he is indebted everywhere (he owes everybody).

Už zase máme peníze, again we have (some) money.

Ale vy zas už nemáte peníze, but you again have no money.

Já jsem tuze rád, že mám peníze! I am very glad that I have money!

On je tuze nerad, že je dlužen; he is very sorry, that he is in debt.

Proč je dlužeu? why is he in debt?

Proto že nemá peníze, because he has no money.

Vždyť (dyť) on nemá skoro žádný dluh; well, he has almost no debt (is almost out of debt).

To je pravda, that is true.

On není dlužen, he is not in debt.

Mám velký dluh, nebo malý? have I a large debt or a small one?

Tu jest účet, here is the bill.

To není dlouhý účet, that is not a long bill.

Je jenom krátký, it is only short.

Ano, velmi krátký; yes, very short.

Máte jen tak malý účet? have you only such a small bill?

Nemám rád velký účet, I do not like to have a large account.

Je velký dost, it is large enough.

Nemám mnoho, I have not much.

To je nic, that is nothing.

To je jako nic, that is like nothing.

To že je nic? this you call nothing (*literally*: that this is nothing)?

Oni jsou rádi, že tam není žádný dluh; they are glad, that there is not any debt there.

I je tam dluh, ale malý; well, there is a debt there, but a small one.

Pravda, jenom malý; true, only a small one.

Ano, tak to je; yes, it is so.

Ne, tak to není; no, it is not so.

Účet je pravý the bill is right.

Ten účet není pravý, that bill is not right.

Je falešný, it is false.

A proč? and why?

Proto že je! because it is!

LESSON VIII.

Nejsem *neysem* I am not

není *neyňí* he (she, it) is not

nejsi *neysi* thou art not

nejsmě *neysmě* we are not

nejste *neystě* you are not

nejsou *neysou* they are not

Note. Always pronounce *ney*, in the pronouncing column, like the English word *neigh*.

sám (masc.) *sám* } alone; him-
sama (fem.) *sámě* } self, herself
samo (neut.) *sámě* }
samoten (tna, tvo) } itself,

dnes *dness* to-day

právě *práv'yě* } just;
zrovna *zřevně* } this moment

otec	<i>otěts</i>	father	strýc	<i>streets, streyts</i>	uncle
matka	<i>mătĕkă</i>	mother	teta	<i>tětă</i>	aunt
bratr	<i>bră-tr</i>	brother	hoch	<i>hōkh</i>	} boy
sestra	<i>sěst-ră</i>	sister	chlapec	<i>khlapets</i>	
syn	<i>syn</i>	son	holka	<i>hōlkă</i>	} girl
dcera	<i>tsěřă</i>	daughter	děvče, n.	<i>ďěfchě</i>	
	docela	<i>dotsělă</i>	all, quite		
	pryč	<i>pritch</i>	away, gone		
	i	<i>e</i>	both...and		

EXERCISES.

- Nejsem rád,** I am not glad. **Je strýc doma?** is uncle at home?
- Nejsem tomu rád,** I do not like it. **Nebo teta?** or aunt?
- Nejsi rád?** art thou not glad? **Jsou taky pryč;** they are gone, too.
- Nejste rád?** (addressing *one* person;)
nejste rádi? (addressing *more than one* person;) are you not glad? **Ten hoch je tu sám;** the boy (this, that boy) is here alone.
- Jsem sám,** I am alone? **Ta holka je pryč;** the girl (that girl) is gone.
- Docela sám?** all alone? **To děvče je doma samotno,** that girl is at home alone.
- Ano, zcela samotný;** yes, all alone. **Proč tu není bratr?** why is the brother (her brother) not here?
- Není otec doma?** is father not at home? **On není doma, on je pryč;** he is not at home, he is gone.
- Ne, on není doma;** no, he is not at home. **Dcera není zde zcela samotná,** the daughter is not here all alone.
- Není žádný doma?** is nobody at home? **Matka je zde také;** the mother (her mother) is here, too.
- Matka ani bratr, ani sestra nejsou doma;** neither mother, nor brother or sister are at home. **Je někdo doma?** is somebody at home?
- Kde jsou?** where are they? **Není;** no.
- Pryč;** gone. **Dnes jsou všichni pryč,** to-day they are all gone.
- Všichni jsou pryč?** are they all gone? **Ano, všichni;** yes, all of them.

A kde jsou? and where are they?	Proč jste tu samotna? (fem.) why are you here alone?
Někde pryč, somewhere away.	Protože otec i matka jsou pryč, because both father and mother are gone.
Právě jsem tu sama (fem.); I am here just alone.	

LESSON IX.

Byl jsem <i>bill sěm</i> } I have been;	byli jsme <i>billy smě</i> } we have been;
(byla, f. <i>billä</i> " } I was	(byly, f. } we were
bylo, n.) <i>billö</i> " } thou hast	byla, n.) } you have been;
byl jsi <i>bill s</i> } been;	byli jste <i>billy stě</i> } you were
(abbr.) byl's, m. <i>bills</i> } thou wast	
" byla's, f. <i>billäss</i> } he (she, it) has been;	byli (y, a) <i>billy(y, ä)</i> } they have been;
byl (a, o) <i>bill (ä, ö)</i> } he (she, it) was	they were

Nebyl jsem <i>ně-bill sěm</i> } I have not been;	Nebyli jsme <i>ně billy smě</i> } we have not been;
	we were not

etc.

Kde jsem byl? <i>gdě sěm bill</i> } where have I been?	Kde jsme byli? <i>gdě smě billy?</i> } where have we been?
	where were we?

etc.

Míti, to have: mám, I have:	
měl jsem, <i>m'yell sěm,</i> }	I have had; I had;
měla jsem, <i>m'yellä sěm,</i> }	
měli jsme, <i>m'yelli smě,</i> }	we have had; we had;
and so forth, using <i>měl, měli</i> in place of <i>byl, byli</i> .	

Note 1. There is in Bohemian no such formal difference between the perfect and imperfect tense as in English: *I have been; I was.*

Note 2. There is a distinction of gender in the past tense, which does not exist in English. **I have been, I was,** is used in all cases. In Bohemian however, when a man speaks, he says: **byl jsem, bill sěm;** when a woman speaks, she says: **byla jsem, billa sěm.** And this rule covers every verb in the language. For instance, a man says:

jedl jsem,	yěd'l sěm,	I ate; I have eaten;
sedl jsem,	sěd'l sěm,	I sat down; I have sat down;
šel jsem,	shell sem,	I went; I have gone;
šil jsem,	shill sem,	I sewed; I have sewn;
viděl jsem,	vid'el sem,	I saw; I have seen.

A woman says:

jedla jsem,	yědlā sěm;	šla jsem,	shlā sem;
sedla jsem,	sědlā sem;	šila jsem,	shillā sem;
	viděla jsem,	vid'elā sem;	

In the third person of the past tense we say in English:

he was, he has been; she was, she has been; it was it has been;

In Bohemian we must say: **on byl, ona byla, ono bylo,** according to gender. This rule holds good in the conjugation of every verb.

For instance:

Jedl, yed'l, he has eaten; he ate;	šel, shell, he has gone; he went;
jedla, yedlā, she has eaten; she ate;	šla, shlā, she has gone; she went.
jedlo, yedlō, it has eaten; it ate;	šlo, shlō, it has gone; it went.

In the *plural* number the distinction of sex is simply grammatical and perfectly useless; in the ordinary spoken language there is none whatever. In grammatical theory

byli jsme,	byli jste,	byli,	is masculine;
byly jsme,	byly jste,	byly,	is feminine;
byla jsme,	byla jste,	byla,	is neutre.

But in the living tongue, or at least in ordinary conversation, we hear in all three genders:

byli jsme, billi smě; byli jste, billi stě; byli, billi.

There is no difference of pronunciation between **byli** and **byly**; and this orthographical distinction as well as the form **byla** in the third person neutre are only maintained by the pedantry of theoretical grammarians, opposing changes which a living tongue has actually undergone and which always tend in the direction of practical simplicity. That artificial and useless distinction of gender is found in writing, but not in conversation.

Note 3. The form of the second person plural as given above (**byli jste, billi stě**) is of course used when several persons are meant or spoken to; but when employing **vy, you**, in addressing a single person, we leave the main verb in the singular, whereas in English it is put in the plural, as if several persons were addressed: **byl jste, bill stě, you** have been, **you** were, (meaning only one person). And so in all Bohemian verbs; for instance:

jedli jste, yed'li stě, you have eaten, **you** ate, (meaning several persons);

jedl jste, yed'l stě, you have eaten, **you** ate, (meaning one person, addressed **vy, you**).

Ráno	<i>ráno</i>	in the morning	včera	<i>fcherä.</i>	yesterday
v poledne	<i>fpöledně</i>	at noon	včera večer,	<i>fcherä věčer,</i>	last evening;
večer	<i>věcher</i>	in the evening			last night
venku	<i>venků</i>	outside, out of doors	zima	<i>zimä</i>	cold
			oba	<i>öbä</i>	both

EXERCISES.

Byl jsem doma, I was at home.

Byl jsem stále doma, I have been
at home all the time.

Byl jsi doma? (*abbreviated: byl's*
doma?) hast thou been at home?
wast thou at home?

Ne, nebyl jsem doma; no, I was not at home.

Ale bratr byl doma, but brother was at home.

Kde jsi byl? (*abbreviated: kde's byl, gděss bil?* where hast thou been? where wast thou?)

Kde jste byl? Kde jste byla? (*fem. (when addressing one person)* where have you been? where were you?)

Byl jsem pryč, I was away.

Byla jsem pryč, (*fem.*) I was away.

Byli jsme právě pryč, we were just gone.

Byli jsme všichni pryč, we were all gone; we have all been away.

Kde byl otec? where was father?

Byl venku, he was out of doors.

A matka and mother?

Matka byla také pryč, mother also was gone.

Oba byli pryč, they were both gone.

Zádný nebyl doma, nobody was at home (*literally: nobody was not at home.*)

Všichni byli pryč, all were gone.

Ráno byli jsme doma a v poledne pryč; in the morning we were at home and at noon we were gone.

Byli jste večer doma? (*addressing one person: byl jste večer doma?*) Were you at home in the evening?

Nebyli jsme doma, we were not at home.

Nebyl jsem doma, I was not at home.

Proč jsi nebyl doma? why wast thou not at home?

Proč jste nebyl doma? why were you not at home?

Kdo byl doma? who was at home?

Bratr a sestra byli oba doma, brother and sister were both at home.

Proč nebyli venku? why were they not out of doors?

Proto že bylo zima, because it was cold.

Nebylo zima včera večer, it was not cold last evening.

Že nebylo? wasn't it?

Ba bylo! oh yes, it was!

Včera bylo zima, yesterday it was cold.

Nebylo tuze, it was not very.

LESSON X.

It will doubtless be self-evident to the student, that the past tense in the preceding lesson may at pleasure be connected with the personal pronoun, as is the rule in English.

		(<i>Instead of:</i>)			(<i>we can say:</i>)
byl jsem,		I have been	já jsem byl,		yá sěm bil
byl jsi,		thou hast been	ty jsi byl,		ty si bill
			(abbrev. ty's byl, <i>tyss bill</i>)		
byl, a, o,	he (she, it) has been		on (ona, ono) byl, a, o,		ōn bill
byli jsme,	we have been		my jsme byli,		me smě billy
byli jste,	you have been		vy jste byli,		vee stě billy
byli, y, a,	he (she, it) has been		oní byli,		ōñi billy

The sense is not changed thereby, only more emphasis is laid on the subject.

Then again, in the *first* person of the second form, both singular and plural, the auxiliary **jsem, jsme** is commonly left out.

		(<i>Instead of:</i>)			(<i>we can say:</i>)
já jsem byl,		yá sěm bil	já byl,	I have been; I was;	
my jsme byli,		me smě billy	my byli,	we have been; we were;	
já jsem měl,		yá sěm m'yell	já měl,	I have had; I had;	
my jsme měli,		me smě m'yelli	myměli,	we have had; we had;	
já jsem šel,		yá sěm shell	já šel,	I have gone; I went;	
my jsme šli,		me smě shli	my šli,	we have gone; we went;	

u mě	ūm'yě	by me,	with me,	at my house (or place)	
u tebe	ūtěbe	by thee,	with thee,	at thy house	
u něho	ūñehō	} by him,	with him,	at his house	
u něj	ūñey				
u ní	ūñee	by her,	with her,	at her house	
u nás	ūnáss	by us,	with us,	at our house	
u vás	ūváss	by you,	with you,	at your house	
u nich	ūñikh	by them,	with them,	at their house	
rodiče	rod'ichě	parents	celý den	tsělee den	all day
domu	dōmū	home	až	āsh	till, until
nic než	ñits nēsh	nothing but	pak	pāk	then

EXERCISES.

Já byl doma, I was at home.

Byl jsem doma celý den, I was at home all day.

Byl jsem pořád doma, I have been at home all the time.

Byl otec doma? was father at home?

Ano, byl; yes, he was.

A kdy byl doma? and when was he at home?

Skoro celý den, nearly all day.

Já šel domu ráno, I went home in the morning.

Kdy sestra šla domu? when did sister go home?

Ona šla domu večer, she went home in the evening.

Nešla domu až večer, she didn't go home till evening.

Byl strýc doma? was uncle at home?

Nebyl; he was not.

Byl's u něho? wast thou at his house?

Byl jste u něho? were you at his house?

Ano, byl jsem tam; yes, I was there.

Sestra byla zde, sister was here.

Byla u mě, she was at my house

Byla také u vás? was she also at your house?

Byla tam v poledne, she was there at noon.

Teta u nás nebyla, aunt was not at our house.

Ale její hoch tam byl, but her boy was there.

My byli včera u ní, we were at her house yesterday.

Rodiče byli včera ráno doma, our parents were at home yesterday morning.

Pak šli pryč, then they went away.

A my jsme šli taky pryč, and we went away, too.

Byl někdo u nich? was anybody at their house?

Žádný u nich nebyl, nobody was at their house.

V poledne někdo tam byl, ale šel pryč; at noon somebody was there, but went away.

Já měl dnes maso a pivo, I had to-day meat and beer.

Sestra měla maso a chleba, sister had meat and bread.

Ten malý hoch neměl nic, that little boy had nothing.

Proč neměl nic? why did we have nothing?

Neměli jsme nic pro něho, we had nothing for him.

Byl zde ten chlapec? was that boy here?

Byl tu,	he was here.	Docela sám,	all alone.
Co měl?	what did he have?	Měli jste dnes víno?	have you had wine to-day?
Nie neměl;	he had nothing	Ne, my jsme měli pivo;	no, we had beer.
Byl zde pořád?	has he been here all the time?	A co oni měli?	and what did they have?
Ano, byl tu stále;	yes, he has been here all the time.	Také pivo;	beer, also.
Kdy šel pryč?	when did he go away?	My neměli nic,	we had nothing.
Šel večer,	he went in the evening.	Ale pranic?	not a thing!
Šel sám?	did he go alone?		

LESSON XI.

Budu	<i>bůdů</i>	} I shall be " will be	budeme	<i>bůdemě</i>	} we shall be
budeš	<i>bůdesh,</i>		budem	<i>bůdem</i>	
bude	<i>bůdě</i>	thou will be	budete	<i>bůdětě</i>	you will be
		he (she, it) will be	budou	<i>bůdōů</i>	they will be
nebudu <i>něbůdů</i> , I shall (will) not be; etc.					

neb	<i>něb</i>	} or	snad	<i>snād</i>	perhaps
nebo	<i>něbō</i>		sootva	<i>sōtvā</i>	hardly
brzo	<i>br-zō</i>	} soon	zítra	<i>zeetrā</i>	} to-morrow
brzy	<i>br-ze</i>		zejtra	<i>zeytrā</i>	
hned	<i>hned</i>	presently, right away	letos	<i>letōs</i>	this year
až	<i>āsh</i>	} when	dobře	<i>dobrshě</i>	} well, right, it is well, all right.
když	<i>gděž</i>				

dělati	<i>dělā-ti</i>	to do	prodávati	<i>prodávā-ti</i>	to sell; to be selling;
platiti	<i>plāti-ti</i>	to pay	chtíti	<i>kh'tee-ti</i>	to want.
kupovati	<i>kūporā-ti</i>	to buy; to be buying;			

Note 1. English verbs in the infinitive have various endings; *to do, to pay, to sell, to speak, to converse, to understand, etc.*

Bohemian verbs invariably end in *ti*. However, in ordinary discourse the final *i* is nearly always dropped, and very often it is also omitted in spelling; the preceding *t* in such cases should indeed be written and pronounced *t'*; but it generally retains its common *hard* sound:

dělat	d'elät	to do	kupovat	kŭpovät	to buy
platit	plätit	to pay	prodávat	pro'ävät	to sell
	chtít	cht'eet			to want.

Note 2. *Badu, budeš, etc.*, connected as an auxiliary with the infinitive of another verb forms the future tense of this verb:

budu dělati	} I shall (will) do	bude kupovat	he will buy
“ dělat		budeme prodávat	we shall (will) buy
budeš platit	thou wilt pay	budete chtít	you will want
		budou chtít	they will want.

Zde jsem, here I am.
 Už jste tu? are you here already?
 Je zde taky bratr? is brother also here?
 Není, ale bude tu hned; he is not, but he will be here presently.
 To bude dobře, that will be all right.
 Kdy zde bude otec? when will father be here?
 Dnes sotva, hardly to-day.
 Snad zejtra, perhaps to-morrow.

Proč tu bude? why will he be here?
 Kupovat obilí a seno, to buy grain and hay.
 Budete mít letos víno? will you have wine this year?
 Nebudeme mít žádné víno, we shall have no wine.
 Co budou u vás prodávat? what will they sell at your place?
 Nebudou nic prodávat, they will sell nothing.

Máte čerstvé* máslo? have you fresh butter?
 Dnes nemáme, to-day we have not.

Ľemáme žádné, we have none.
 Ale budeme mít zejtra, but we shall have (some) to-morrow.

*) See lesson VI, note 2.

Co budete dělat dnes večer? what
will you do this evening?

Nebudu nic dělat, I shall do nothing.
A proč? and why?

Nemám co dělat, I have nothing
to do.

Až bude zase práce, budu dělat;
when there will be work again, I
shall work.

LESSON XII.

Míti	<i>meeŕi</i>	}	to have	chtíti	<i>khŕeeŕi</i>	}	to want
mít ¹⁾	<i>meet</i>			chtít ¹⁾	<i>khŕeet</i>		
chci	<i>khti</i>		I want	chceme	<i>khtsemě</i>		we want
chceš	<i>khtšěh</i>		thou wantst	chcete	<i>khtšěě</i>		you want
chce	<i>khtšě</i>		he wants	chtějí	<i>khŕe-ye</i>		they want
chtěl jsem ²⁾	<i>khŕel sēm</i>		I wanted	chtěli jsme	<i>khŕeli smě</i>		we wanted
budu	chtíti ³⁾	<i>būdū</i>	<i>khŕeeŕi</i>	}		}	I shall (will) want
“	chtít	“	<i>khŕeet</i>				
budeme	chtíti	<i>būdēmě</i>	<i>khŕeeŕi</i>	}		}	we shall (will) want
“	chtít	“	<i>khŕeet</i>				

Note 1. Irregular verbs in the Bohemian language are far less numerous than in English. There is not a full dozen of them, whereas in English we find nearly two hundred. On the other hand; regular verbs have only one conjugation in English, whereas in Bohemian there are several conjugations, as we shall see in due time.

Chťiti and **míti** are irregular verbs.

1) See Lesson XI, Note 1.

2) See Lesson IX. **Chťěl** simply takes the place of **byl**.

3) See Lesson XI, Note 2.

Od	<i>od</i>	since, from	nůž	<i>noož</i>	knife
pro	<i>pro</i>	for	vidlička	<i>vidlichká</i>	fork
více	<i>veetsě</i>	more	jídlo	<i>yeedlō</i>	{ something to eat; victuals; meal
ještě	<i>yesh-tě</i>	{ still, more, another	jíst (jísti)	<i>yeest</i>	to eat
trochu	<i>trokhŭ</i>	some, somewhat	krájet (i)	<i>krájet</i>	to cut
spolu	<i>spōlŭ</i>	together	mluvit (i)	<i>mlŭvit</i>	to speak
dlouho	<i>dloŭhō</i>	long	dát (i)	<i>dát</i>	to give
už dávno	<i>ŭsh dávnō</i>	{ already long (a long time already)	dejte mi	<i>deytě me</i>	give me
na prodej	<i>nă prodey</i>	for sale	kůň	<i>kŭň</i>	horse
nový, á, é, něvee		new	koně*)	<i>koňe</i>	{ of the horse; for the “
starý, á, é, stāree		old	ani	<i>āni</i>	{ not one; not even; neither
dříví,	<i>drshee-vee</i>	wood	asi	<i>āssi</i>	about, probably
stavivo	<i>stāvivō</i>	lumber	se, s	<i>sě</i>	with
míti hlad	<i>mceťi hlad</i>	to be hungry	opravdu	<i>oprădŭ</i>	truly, really
			muž	<i>moož</i>	man

EXERCISES.

Máte peníze?	have you money?	Chei něco jíst,	I want something to eat.
Mám asi dollar,	I have about a dollar.	Máte nějaké jídlo?	have you something to eat?
Nic více?	nothing more?	Tu máte maso,	here you have (some) meat.
Ani cent,	not a cent.	Dejte mi nůž,	give me a knife.
Co s dollarem?	what (can you do) with a dollar?	Zde máte nůž a tu je vidlička;	here you have a knife and here is a fork.
Aha, zde je ještě půl dolaru;	ah, here is half a dollar more.	Nožem můžete dobře krájet,	with the knife you can cut well.
Bude to dost?	will that be enough?	Tu je kůň a vůz,	here is a horse and a wagon.
Sotva,	hardly.	Vy máte zde koně;	you have a horse here.
Ani to nebude dost,	even that will not be enough.		
Já mám hlad	(literally: I have hunger), I am hungry.		

* The plural of the noun **kůň** is also **koně**, *koňe* (the horses).

Ano, jsem tu s koněm; yes, I am here with the horse.

To je dobrý kůň, that is a good horse.

Tuže dobrý; a také není na prodej; very good; and he is not for sale.

Máte nový vůz? have you a new wagon?

I ne; to je starý vůz; o no; that is an old wagon.

Ale jako nový; but (it looks) like a new one.

Opravdu? really?

Co máte na voze (ve voze)? what have you got in the wagon?

Dříví, wood.

Stavivo, lumber.

Trochu obilí je tam, some grain is in there.

Budete něco kupovati? will you buy something (will you make some purchases?)

Koně pro syna a vůz pro strýce, a horse for my son and a wagon for my uncle.

Chei dáti synovi dobrý potah, I want to give my son a good team.

Chtěl jsem to už dávno; I wanted (to do it long ago.

On je zde se strýcem, he is here with uncle.

Jsou tu spolu, they are here together.

Jak dlouho jsou tu? how long are they here?

Od večera, since evening.

A jak dávno vy jste tu? and how long are you here?

Od poledne, since noon.

Tam ten muž má koně na prodej, that man there has a horse to sell.

Cheete vidět toho (tého) muže? do you want to see that man.

Chei mluvit s tím (s tím) mužem; I want to speak with that man.

Je na koni, he is on horseback.

Dobře že je tu s tím koněm; it is well he is here with that horse.

Je to velký kůň; it is a big horse.

Note 2. In the English language the noun remains nearly unchanged in all its relations, there being only a slight change in the genitive or possessive case: *brother, brother's*, (of the brother); but this form of the possessive case is being more and more limited. The relations of one person or thing to another are expressed by separate words, called prepositions: *of a brother; to a brother; with a brother.*

In Bohemian these relations are expressed by changes in the termination of the noun, which process is called declension: **bratr**, *brother*; **-bratra**, *of a brother*; **bratru**, *to a brother*; **bratrem**, *with a brother.*

This is a heavy encumbrance which the Bohemian language shares with the German and Latin. The declension of the nouns is followed by that of the adjectives joined to the nouns, which are subject to corresponding changes in their terminations. Pronouns also have declensions, and these continue to exist even in the English tongue.

Note 3. The declension of Bohemian nouns varies according to their gender and the termination of their nominative; there is, besides, a slight variation between animate and inanimate nouns of the masculine gender.

The following table will bring before the student's eyes the different changes of the termination of Bohemian masculine nouns, in the singular, omitting the vocative case. A glance over the same now and then may assist him to become more rapidly familiar with the different endings and their signification in English; but only frequent use in common sentences during the further progress of these lessons will make them handy to him.

Inanimate nouns:

Dollar,	vůz	<i>dolár,</i>	<i>vooz</i>	the dollar, the wagon;
dollaru,	vozu	<i>dolárů,</i>	<i>vůžů</i>	of the dollar, the dollar's; of the wagon, the wagon's; (v dollaru, in the dollar; ve voze, in the wagon; etc.)
dollarem,	vozem	<i>dolářem,</i>	<i>vůzem</i>	(or s dollarem, s vozem), with the dollar, with the wagon.

Animate nouns:

Syn,	muž	<i>syn,</i>	<i>moož</i>	the son, the man;
syna,	muže	<i>syně,</i>	<i>moože</i>	{ of the son; the son's: of the man, the man's; also in the <i>accusative</i> : the son, the man);
synu,	muži	<i>syně,</i>	<i>mooži</i>	
—ovi,	—ovi	<i>synůvi,</i>	<i>moožůvi</i>	{ to the son, to the man; (v synu, v synovi, in the son; etc.)
synem,	mužem	<i>synem,</i>	<i>moožem</i>	(or se synem, s mužem), with the son, with the man.

Note 4. It will be observed that the letter **ů** in the nominative case of a monosyllable changes into **o** in the inflected cases:

vůz ,	the wagon;	vozu ,	-e of the wagon;
kůň ,	the horse;	koně ,	of the horse;
nůž ,	the knife;	nože ,	of the knife;

Nůž and similar nouns (masculine inanimate and ending in a soft consonant) are declined just like **muž**; only in the dative and locative case we cannot use the long form like **mužovi**, **v mužovi** (to the man, in the man), but must always employ only the short form: **noži**, **v noži**, **nůži**, **v nůži** (to the knife, in the knife); and the accusative agrees with the nominative: **nůž** — **nůž**.

Note 5. Prepositions consisting of a single consonant (**v**, **s**, **k**, simply abbreviations of **ve**, **se**, **ke**, — in, with, to) are always joined in pronunciation to the succeeding syllable; hence we write: **v synu**, **s koněm**; and pronounce *vsynů* (or *fsinů*, *skoňem*; in the son, with the horse.

It may hardly be necessary to mention that the locative case does not always appear with the preposition **v** or **ve**, but employs also different other prepositions. For instance: **ve voze**, in the wagon; **na voze**, on the wagon; **o voze**, about the wagon.

LESSON XIII.

Museti <i>mŭset'ŭi*</i>	} must, to have to	jíti	<i>yeet'i</i>	} to go, to come,
<i>mŭset</i>			<i>yeet</i>	
musiti <i>mŭsi'ti</i>				
musím <i>mŭseem</i>	I must	jdu	<i>dŭ</i>	I go
musíš <i>mŭseesh</i>	thou must	jdeš	<i>děsh</i>	thou goest
musí <i>mŭsee</i>	he must	jde	<i>dě</i>	he goes
musíme <i>mŭseemě</i>	we must	jdeme	<i>děmě</i>	we go
musíte <i>mŭseetě</i>	you must	jdete	<i>dětě</i>	you go
musí <i>mŭsee</i>	} they must	jdou	<i>doŭ</i>	they go
musejí <i>mŭsě-yee</i>				

(* The letter **s** has the same sharp sound as in *must*,

muset platit	to have to pay	šel	<i>shell</i>	he has gone;
budu muset	<i>būdū mūset</i> , I shall have to; I shall be obliged.	půjdu	<i>pūydā</i>	(colloquially <i>pūdū</i> , I shall go
musel jsem	<i>mūsell sēm</i> I was obliged	půjdeš, půjde, půjdeme, půjdete,		
musel	<i>mūsell</i> he was obliged	půjdou; <i>pūydesħ, pūydě, pūy- dēmě, pūydětě, pūydoŭ</i> ;		
muset	to have to go, to be obliged to go	quially: <i>pūdesħ, pūdě, pūdēmě, pūdětě, pūdoŭ</i> ;		
šel jsem	<i>shell sēm</i> I have gone; I went	jdi	<i>d'i</i>	go (thou)
		jděte	<i>d'etě</i>	go (you)

Note 1. All Bohemian verbs in the infinitive (as stated in Lesson XI. Note 1) end in **ti**, which becomes a simple **t** in ordinary discourse:

dělati, to do, to make; **platiti**, to pay; **kupovati**, to buy, to be buying; **prodávati**, to sell, to be selling; **museti**, must.

Note 2. Leaving out **ti** and putting **l** in its place (**la** for the feminine, **lo** for the neutre gender), we get the past tense of every regular verb, using the auxiliary **jsem**, **jsi** in the first and second person singular, **jsme**, **jste** in the first and second person plural, and changing **l** into **li** in the plural (feminine **ly**, neutre **la**, — of no account in ordinary conversation); in the third person singular and plural no auxiliary is used:

dělal	<i>d'elāl</i>	he made;	he has made;
dělali	<i>d'elāli</i>	they made;	they have made;
dělal jsem	<i>d'elāl sem</i>	I made;	I have made;
dělal jsi	<i>d'elāl si</i>	thou madest;	thou hast made;
dělali jsme	<i>d'elāli smě</i>	we made;	we have made;
dělali jste	<i>d'elāli stě</i>	you made;	you have made;
platil	<i>plăt'il</i>	he paid;	he has paid;
kupoval	<i>kūpovāl</i>	he was buying;	he has been buying;
prodával	<i>prodávāl</i>	he was selling;	he has been selling;
musel	<i>mūsell</i>	he had to;	he was obliged.

Ho	<i>hō</i>	him, it; of it;	žena	<i>ženā</i>	woman
ven	<i>ven</i>	} out	služka	<i>slūshkā</i>	servant girl
venku	<i>venkū</i>		země, f.	<i>zemyě</i>	land, earth
prý	<i>pree</i>	} they say; it is said	snídaně, f.	<i>sñeedañe</i>	breakfast
(colloq. prej)prej	<i>prej</i>		oběd, m.	<i>ob-yěd</i>	dinner
náš, m.	<i>nāsh</i>	our, ours	večeře, f.	<i>věcherschě</i>	supper
naší, f.	<i>nāshee</i>	of our	košť, f.	<i>kōst</i>	bone
dobře	<i>dobrshě</i>	well; right	kus, m.	<i>kūss</i>	piece
tuze dobře	<i>toozě dobrshě</i>	very well	oděv, m.	<i>oďef</i>	clothing
časně	<i>chāssñe</i>	early	oblek, m.	<i>oblěk</i>	suit of clothes
nějaký, á, é,	<i>ñeyākee</i>	} some	kabát, m.	<i>kābát</i>	coat
(colloq. ňákej)ňákej	<i>ñákey</i>		kalhoty, pl.	<i>kālhoty</i>	pants
pohromadě	<i>pō-hromāďe</i>	} together	vesta, f.	<i>vestā</i>	vest
najednou	<i>nāyednoū</i>		at once	klobouk, m.	<i>kloboūk</i>
dál	<i>dāl</i>	in, farther	boty, pl.	<i>botty</i>	boots
ať	<i>āť</i>	} let him be, let her be, let it be	škoda	<i>shkōdā</i>	pity
po	<i>pō</i>		after	hotov, a, o,	<i>hōtof</i>
do	<i>dō</i>	tc, before	ke	<i>kě</i>	to

podívat se	<i>pod'eevāt se</i>	to take a look	dělati	<i>d'elā'vi, d'elāt</i>	to make
spáti	<i>spā'vi, spāt</i>	to sleep	myslím	<i>mysleem</i>	I think
státi	<i>stā'vi, stīt</i>	to stand	koupiti	<i>koūpit</i>	to buy
čekati	<i>chekā'vi, čekāt</i>	to wait	kupovati	<i>kūpōvāt</i>	to be buying
viděti	<i>vid'ē'vi vid'et</i>	to see	prodati	<i>prōdāt</i>	to sell
dívati se	<i>d'eevāt sě</i>	to look, to be looking	prodávati	<i>prōdāvāt</i>	to be selling

EXERCISES.

Musím jít ven. I must go out.

Půjdu se podívat ven. I shall go and
look out.

Je někdo venku? Is somebody out
of doors?

Kdo je venku? Who is out of doors?

Nějaká žena je tam. Some woman
is there.

Co chce ta žena? What does that
woman want?

Chece viděti dceru. She wants to see (her) daughter.

Je to matka naší služky. It is the mother of our servant girl.

Ať jde dál. Let her come in,

Proč nejde dál? Why doesn't she come in?

Chece něco jíst? Does she want anything to eat?

Dejte ženě jíst a pít. Give that woman to eat and to drink.

Maso na kosti a pivo. Meat on the bone and beer

Až bude oběd. When dinner is (shall be) ready.

Bude zde spáti? Will she sleep here?

Já myslím, I think so.

Dobře teda. Very well, then,

Musí spáti se služkou. She must sleep with the servant girl.

Chei něco koupit. I want to buy something.

Chei si něco koupit. I want to buy me something.

Co si chcete koupit? What do you want to buy (yourself)?

Myslím že nějaký oděv. I think (that) some clothing.

Už jdu. I am going already.

Jdete taky? Are you going, too?

My taky jdeme. We are going, too.

Oni všichni jdou. They are all going.

Holka má mnoho práce. The girl has much to do.

Bude sotva do večera*) hotova. She will hardly be done before evening.

Myslím že bude s prací hotova. I think she will be done with the work.

Po večeři nemusí dělat nic. After supper she need not do anything.

Ať je večeře brzy hotova. Let supper be soon ready.

Bude zde ta ženská ke snídani? Will that woman be here to breakfast?

Myslím že bude. I think (that) she will.

Budeme mít snídani brzy ráno. We shall have breakfast soon in the morning.

Ano, časně ráno. Yes, early in the morning.

Kabát, kalhoty, vestu, klobouk. A coat, (a pair of) pants, a vest, a hat.

Snad také boty. Perhaps also (a pair of) boots.

Čelý oblek. A whole suit.

Pravda, bude dobře koupit oblek. True, it will be well to buy a suit.

Myslím že sestra půjde taky. I think that sister will go, too.

Ano, půjde s tetou. Yes, she will go with auntie.

*) Do večera, instead of do večeru. — Večer has the same endings in the singular as the animate noun *syn*, excepting *-ovi* in the dative and locative.

Půjdeme všichni pohromadě. We will all go together.	Jděte se tam zase podívat. Go (you) there and see again.
Jdi se podívat zdali jsou hotové. Go (thou) and see if they are ready.	Už jdou; tu jsou. They are coming already; here they are.
My zde nebudeme stát a čekat. We shall not stand here and wait.	Půjdou všichni ujednou. They will all go together.

Ten dům chci prodat. That house I want to sell.	Škoda že museli sme ho prodat. It is a pity we had to sell it.
A proč to? And why?	Náš nový dům nebude na prodej. Our new house will not be for sale.
Je malý; musím ho prodat. It is small, I must sell it.	Není dobře prodávat nový dům. It is not well to sell (to be selling) a new house.
Myslím že je trochu malý. I think it is somewhat small.	Budeme mít u domu kus země. We shall have by (our) house a piece of land.
Ten starý dům byl dost velký. The old house was large enough.	

Note 3. The changes of endings of feminine nouns, excepting the vocative case, are shown in the following exhibit:

1. **Žena** *ženā* the woman;
ženy *ženy*, of the woman;
ženu *ženŭ* the woman, (accusative);
ženě *žeňe* to the woman, (**v ženě**, in the woman, etc.);
ženou *ženou̇*, (or **se ženou**) with the woman.
2. **Země** *zemyě* the earth, of the earth;
zemi *zemi* to the earth, (**v zemi**, in the earth, etc.);
zemí *zemee* (or **se zemí**) with the earth;
3. **Košť** *kōst* the bone;
kosti *kostĭ* of the bone, to the bone, (**v kosti f^{kostĭ}**, in the bone, etc.);
kostí *kost'ee* (or **s kostí skost'ee**) with the bone.

Nouns ending in **e** (like **růže roožě**, the rose) agree with **země**.

Nouns ending in **ka** change the hard consonant **k** into **c ts**, when the final **a** changes into **e** :

matka, služka, mătĕká, slůshka, the mother, the servant girl.

matce, služce, mătĕsě, slůshtsě, to the mother, to the servant girl.

Nouns ending in **st'**, like **kořt'**, are ALWAYS of the feminine gender.

Note 4. The verb **jíti** is irregular. Its future tense is formed by the prefix **pů**, and not by the auxiliary **budu**. The formation of the future by means of prefixes occurs quite often, as will be seen hereafter.

Note 5. The verbs **prodávati, kupovati** (to be selling, to be buying) are in fact reiterative forms of **prodati** (to sell, to make a sale) and **koupiti** (to buy, to make a purchase).

Common indefinite verbs, denoting a continuous action, may, as a rule, be changed into REITERATIVES, denoting a repeated action, by inserting **va** before the final syllable **ti** (or the final **t**) and lengthening the preceding vowel, if it be short. For instance:

dělati, to make; **dělávati, dělávăt'i** or **dělávăt,** to use to make,
to be in the habit of making.

platiti, to pay; **plátivati, plătěevăt,** to use to pay;

spáti, to sleep; **spávati, spávăt,** to use to sleep;

jísti, to eat; **jidávati, yeedávăt,** to use to eat; (irregular verb).

Note 6. In English, verbs are sometimes formed by prefixes joined to other verbs, to vary their signification; for instance:

to deck, — to bedeck	to judge — to prejudge	to sell — to undersell
to grow — to outgrow	to stand — to withstand	to turn — to overturn.

The same rule finds application in Bohemian in a much higher degree. Prefixes may be joined to most of the verbs in order to modify or change their meaning; and it is astonishing how many new verbs are sometimes derived from the original verb by that process. As an example, let us take the verb **jíti**, to go:

dojiti,	<i>dō-yeet'i,</i>	to go (get, reach) somewhere; to make an errand
najíti,	<i>nā-yeet'i,</i>	to find;
nadejítí,	<i>nādě-yeet'i,</i>	to gain, to get ahead, to head off;
obejítí,	<i>obě-yeet'i,</i>	to go around;
odejítí,	<i>odě-yeet'i,</i>	to go away, to leave;
pojítí,	<i>pō-yeet'i,</i>	to perish, to die;
podejítí,	<i>podě-yeet'i,</i>	to deceive, to cheat;
přejítí,	<i>prshě-yeet'i,</i>	to pass over, to pass by;
předejítí,	<i>prshědě-yeet'i,</i>	to come before, to get a'head, to anticipate;
přijítí,	<i>prshi-yeet'i,</i>	to come;
projítí,	<i>pro-yeet'i,</i>	to pass through;
rozejítí se,	<i>rōzě-yeet'i sě,</i>	to part, to disperse;
ujítí,	<i>ū-yeet'i,</i>	to escape;
vejítí,	<i>vě-yeet'i,</i>	to go in, to come in;
vyjítí,	<i>vy-yeet'i,</i>	to go out, to come out;
zajítí,	<i>zā-yeet'i,</i>	to go down, to set, to pass behind;
zajítí si,	<i>zā yeet'i si,</i>	to go out of one's way.

This shows the immense adaptability of the Bohemian verb, and certainly looks somewhat perplexing at first sight; but it is only necessary to fix in one's mind the meaning of a dozen of prefixes, which occur in all such cases, in order to have a key to the whole system. The same is true in English; a knowledge of the signification of the prefixes used in connection with verbs explains the modified meaning. Verbs formed by prefixes are in most cases contained separately in Bohemian dictionaries, the same as in English.

Note 7. An indefinite verb like **jíti**, *to go*, denotes a continuous action. When a new verb is formed by means of a prefix, it is definite, denoting a completed action: **dojiti**, *to go (get, reach) somewhere*; **najíti**, *to find*; etc. The present form of these verbs denotes, in fact, a *future* action: **dojdu**, *I shall go or get somewhere*; **najdu**, *I shall find*. Hence it is actually the future tense, there being no present, and the

auxiliary **buďu** can never be used. Such compound verbs have therefore only a past with the auxiliary **jsem**, and a simple future:

došel jsem , <i>dōshell sem</i> , I went (got, reached) somewhere;	dojdu , <i>doydŭ</i> I shall go (get, reach) somewhere;
našel jsem , <i>nāshell sem</i> , I found;	najdu , <i>nāydŭ</i> I shall find.

LESSON XIV.

Slovo , n. <i>slorō</i> word	teprv <i>tep^orř</i> only, not before
horko , n. <i>horkō</i> heat; hot	vedle <i>vēdlē</i> beside, next to
teplo , n. <i>teplō</i> warmth; warm	nebe , n. <i>nēbē</i> heaven, sky
chladno , n. <i>khlādnō</i> cool	slunce , n. <i>slŭntsē</i> sun
blato , n. <i>blātō</i> mud	měsíc , m. <i>myē-seets</i> moon, month
město , n. <i>myēs-tō</i> city	počasí , n. <i>pōchāsee</i> weather
pšenice , f. <i>pshē-ŭitsē</i> wheat	znamení , n. <i>znāmēnee</i> sign
pole , n. <i>polē</i> field	dešť , m. <i>deshť</i> rain
poupě , n. <i>poŭpyē</i> bud	stín , m. <i>sťeen</i> shade, shadow
dítě , n. <i>ďeeťe</i> child	vítr , m. <i>vee-t^er</i> wind
den , m. <i>den</i> day	pěkný , á, é, <i>pyěk-nee</i> nice, fine
noc , f. <i>nots</i> night	jasný , á, é, <i>yāss-nee</i> clear, bright
týden , m. <i>teeden</i> week	hezky <i>hessky</i> nice
odpoledne <i>ōdpoleānē</i> afternoon	zle <i>zlē</i> bad, badly
půlnoc , f. <i>poolnots</i> midnight	posud <i>pōsŭd</i> till now, still
dnes v noci <i>dness vnotsi</i> to-night	okolo <i>ōkolō</i> about
západ slunce <i>západ slŭntsē</i> sunset	na <i>nā</i> on, in
cesta , f. <i>tsestā</i> way, road	s tím <i>sťeem</i> with that
radost <i>rādost</i> pleasure	za <i>zā</i> behind, beyond
les <i>less</i> forest, timber	zase, zas <i>zāssē, zāss</i> again
	o <i>ō</i> at, on.

vidím <i>viďeem</i> I see	svítiti <i>sweetit</i> to shine
pršetí <i>p^ershēťi</i> to rain	svítí <i>sweetēē</i> shines
prší <i>p^ershēe</i> it rains	už není <i>ŭsh neyŭnee</i> is no more

choditi	<i>khōd'it</i>	to walk	dej mu	<i>dey mû</i> give (hou) him
chodím	<i>khōd'eem</i>	I walk	dejte mu	<i>deytě mû</i> give (you) him
chodí	<i>khōd'ee</i>	he (she, it) walks		

Note 1. Pršetí, pršet, *p^ershet'i*, *p^ershet*; to rain; vítr, *veet^er*; ^e is silent and placed there simply to elucidate the pronunciation. See Sec 4. Part I.

EXERCISES.

Včera byl špatný den. Yesterday was a bad day

Dnes je hezky. To-day is nice.

Opravdu, je pěkné počasí. Truly, it is fine weather.

Myslím že bude tak celý den. I think it will be so all day.

Bude teplo celý den. It will be warm all day.

Odpoledne bude horko. In the afternoon it will be hot.

Rád jsem venku za tepla. I like to be out when (it is) warm.

V horku nerad jdu do města. In the heat I do not like to go to town.

Já také ne. Neither do I.

Je nebe jasné? Is the sky clear?

Bylo, ale už není. It was, but is no more.

Vidím na nebi znamení deště. I see in the sky a sign of rain.

Ale slunce ještě svítí. But the sun is still shining.

Po slunce západu bude snad pršet. After sunset perhaps it will rain.

Je silný vítr. There is a strong wind.

Nebude tak zle s tím horkem. It won't be so bad with the heat.

Cesta je pěkná. The road is fine.

Není žádné blato. There is no mud.

Včera bylo ještě dost blata. Yesterday there was still enough mud.

Nerad chodím v blatě. I do not like to walk in mud.

Náš hoch rád chodí blatem. Our boy likes to walk through mud.

To snad každé dítě. Perhaps every child (likes that).

To je radost dítěte. That is a child's pleasure.

Ano, to dělá radost dítěti. Yes, it makes pleasure to a child.

Je skoro chladno ve stínu. It is almost cool in the shade.

Na slunci je dosud horko. In the sun it is still hot.

Dnes v noci svítí měsíc. To-night the moon shines.

Teprv o půlnoci. Only at (i. e. not before) midnight.

Ano, okolo půlnoci. Yes, about midnight.

Zde je náš dům. Here is our house.
Vedle domu je stodola. Beside the house there is a barn.

Za stodolou máme pole. Behind the barn we have a field.

Na tom poli je pšenice. On that field there is wheat.

Za tím polem máme kus lesa. Beyond that field we have a piece of timber.

Je to dobrý kus lesa. It is a good piece of timber.

Pak je zase kus pole s obilím. Then there is again a piece of a grain-field, (*literally*: of a field with grain).

Jděte na pole. Go to (on) the field.
Jdi s tím dítětem. Go (thou) with the child.

Dej dítěti poupě z růže. Give (thou) the child a rose bud, (*literally*: a bud from the rose).

Otec je na poli. The father is in the field.

Note 2. The following little scheme shows the changes of the endings of *neutre* nouns, which in the nominative always end in **o, e, ě or í**:

slovo, *slůvō* the word;

slova, *slůvā* of the word;

slovu, *slůvū* to the word;

poupě, *poŭpyě,* the bud;

poupěte, *poŭpyetě,* of the bud;

pole, *pōlě,* the field; of the field;

poli, *pōlí,* to the field; (**v poli,** in the field; etc.)

znamení, *znāměňee,* the sign; of the sign; (**ve znamení,** in the sign; etc.);

ve slovu, *vě slůvū* } in the word; (o
 “ **slově,** *vě slůvyě* } **slovu,** about
 the word);

slovem *slōvem,* (or **se slovem**) by or with the word.

poupěti, *poŭpyetī,* to the bud; (**v poupěti,** in the bud, etc.)

poupětem, *poŭpyetem* (or **s poupětem**) with the bud.

polem, *pōlem,* (or **s polem**) with the field.

znamení, *znāměňeem* (or **se znamení,** with the sign).

LESSON XV.

Jeden	<i>yě len</i>	one	můj, m.	<i>mooy</i>	my, mine
jedna, f.	<i>yědnā</i>	"	moji, pl.	<i>moye</i>	my, mine, pl.
dva	<i>dwā</i>	two	mých, pl.	<i>meeekh</i>	of my
dvě, f. & n.	<i>dwyyě</i>	"	mým, pl.	<i>meem</i>	to my
tři	<i>trshī</i>	three	mými, pl.	<i>meemi</i>	with my
čtyry	<i>shtiri</i>	four	ty	<i>ty</i>	those
pět	<i>pyět</i>	five	k těm	<i>k'tem</i>	to those
šest	<i>shěst</i>	six	těch	<i>t'ekh</i>	} of those, from } those
sedm	<i>sedŭm</i>	seven	z těch	<i>s'tekh</i>	
osm	<i>osŭm</i>	eight	v těch	<i>f'tekh</i>	in those
devět	<i>dev-yet</i>	nine	od nás	<i>od nás</i>	from us, from our place
deset	<i>desset</i>	ten			
oba, m.	<i>obā</i>	} both	jaký, á, é,	<i>yákee</i>	what, what kind
obě, f. & n.	<i>obyě</i>			tamhle	<i>tāmlě</i>
pár	<i>pár</i>	} some, a few	hned	<i>hněd</i>	right away
několik	<i>ñekolik</i>			a sice	<i>ā sitsě</i>
mnoho	<i>mnohō</i>	a good deal	možná	<i>mōžná</i>	perhaps, possibly
mnoholi	<i>mnohō-li</i>	how much	dokonce	<i>dōkontsě</i>	perhaps even
kolik	<i>kōlik</i>	how many	ještě něco?	<i>yesh'te ñetso</i>	anything else?
asi tak	<i>āsī tāk</i>	about	pejmín	<i>neymeeñ</i>	at least, least of all
tolik	<i>tōlik</i>	so many, so much	mu, jemu,	<i>mŭ, yēmŭ,</i>	to him
k, ke, ku,	<i>kě, kŭ</i>	to, unto	v, ve,	<i>vě</i>	in
i	<i>e</i>	oh! well	z, ze	<i>zě</i>	from, of
s, se,	<i>sě</i>	with			
Mluviti	<i>mlŭvit</i>	to speak	utratil	<i>ŭtrāvil</i>	spent
mluvil*)	<i>mlŭvil</i>	spoke	prodati	<i>prodāt</i>	to sell
utratiti	<i>ŭtrāvit</i>	to spend	prodal	<i>prodāl</i>	sold

*) See Lesson XIII. Note 2.

koupiti	<i>koŭpit</i>	to buy	hospoda , f.	<i>hŏspodā</i>	saloon, tavern
koupil	<i>koŭpil</i>	bought	mouka , f.	<i>moŭkā</i>	flour
koupím	<i>koŭpeem</i>	I shall buy	cena , f.	<i>tsěná</i>	price, value
rozuměti	<i>rozŭmyet</i>	to understand	podpora , f.	<i>pŏdporā</i>	support
rozuměl	<i>rozŭm'yell</i>	understood	drobné , pl.	<i>drŏbné</i>	change
rozumím	<i>rozŭmeem</i>	understand	výběr , m.	<i>veeb-yer</i>	choice
jezditi	<i>yezďit</i>	to drive, to ride	tucet , m.	<i>tŭtset</i>	dozen
jezdil	<i>yezďil</i>	drove, rode	domu	<i>domŭ</i>	home
jezdím	<i>yezďeem</i>	I drive, I ride	na venku	<i>nā venkŭ</i>	in the country
znám	<i>znām</i>	I know, I am acquainted	spokojen	<i>spŏkŏyem</i>	satisfied
vím to	<i>veem tŏ</i>	I know it	můžete	<i>mŏožětě</i>	you can, you may
dělá	<i>d'elā</i>	makes	počítejme	<i>pocheeteymě</i>	let us count
člověk , m.	<i>chlŏ-vyěk</i>	man	sto ,	<i>stŏ</i>	a hundred
pán	<i>pán</i>	gentleman	víc, více	<i>veets, veetsě</i>	more
farma , f.	<i>farmā</i>	farm	stojí	<i>stŏyee</i>	costs

EXERCISES.

Tady jsme zas. Here we are again.

Jaký pěkný den! What a nice day!

Máte ještě peníze? Have you still (some) money?

I ještě něco mám. Well, I have still something.

Mnoho-li asi máte? About how much have you?

Ne mnoho. Not much.

Mám ještě dva dollarů. I have still two dollars.

Já taky mám pár dollarů. I also have a few dollars.

Kolik dollarů? How many dollars?

Asi tak čtyry dollarů. About four dollars.

Žádné drobné? No change?

Mám také pár centů. I have also a few cents.

Utratil jsem mnoho. I have spent a good deal.

Jak mnoho asi? About how much?

Nejmíň pět nebo šest dollarů. At least five or six dollars.

Já také utratil několik dollarů. I also spent a few dollars.

Víc než já? More than I?

Možná asi sedm dollarů. Perhaps about seven dollars.

Nebo dokonce osm. Or perhaps even eight.

<p>K dollarům počítejme čas. To the dollars let us count the time.</p> <p>Ten má taky cenu v dollarech. It also has a price (value) in dollars.</p>	<p>To dělá mnoho. That makes much.</p> <p>Devět nebo deset dollarů je pryč. Nine or ten dollars are gone.</p>
<p>Co stojí ten vůz? How much is that wagon? (<i>literally</i>: what costs that wagon?)</p> <p>Sto dollarů. A hundred dollars.</p> <p>Za sto dollarů můžete koupit dva vozy. For a hundred dollars you can buy two wagons.</p>	<p>Dost možná. Very likely.</p> <p>Já rozumím vozům. I understand wagons.</p> <p>Je velký rozdíl ve vozech. There is a great difference in wagons.</p> <p>Já jezdím s vozy už dávno. I drive wagons a long time already.</p>
<p>Zde je můj syn. Here is my son.</p> <p>Oba moji synové jsou tu. Both my sons are here.</p> <p>Ano, myslím že jsou. Yes, I think (that) they are.</p> <p>Jeden z mých synů právě šel ven. One of my sons has just gone out.</p> <p>Dejte mým synům oběd; a sice hned. Give (to) my sons a dinner; I mean right away.</p> <p>Ano, dáme pánům dobrý oběd. Yes, we shall give to the gentlemen a good dinner.</p>	<p>V synech (mých) mám nyní podporu. In my sons I have now a support.</p> <p>To je dobře. That is well.</p> <p>Jsem spokojen se syny. I am satisfied with (my) sons.</p> <p>Jsme všichni na farmě. We are all on the farm.</p> <p>Synové jsou rádi na farmě. My sons like it on the farm.</p> <p>Jsme všichni rádi na venku. We all like it in the country.</p>
<p>Koupil jsem mouku. I bought (some) flour.</p> <p>Chteete koupit ještě něco? Do you want to buy anything else?</p> <p>Půjdu a koupím dva nože. I shall go and buy two knives.</p> <p>Já půjdu taky a koupím tučet nožů. I shall go, too, and buy a dozen knives.</p>	<p>Ale k nožům také vidličky. But to the knives also forks.</p> <p>Tamhle mají velký výběr v nožích. Over there they have a large choice in knives.</p> <p>Ano, vím to; mají tuze dobré nože. Yes, I know it: they have very good knives.</p> <p>Máte pravdu. You are right (<i>literally</i>: you have right),</p>

Tamhle v hospodě jsou tři muži.

Over there in the saloon there are three men.

Zuám ty muže. I know those men.

Jeden z těch mužů je od nás. One of those men is from our place.

Prodal jsem mu koně. I sold (to) him a horse.

Jaký je to člověk? What kind of a man is that?

Je dobrý muž. He is a good man.

Jděte k těm mužům. Go to those men.

Půjdu, chci mluvit s těmi muži. I will go; I want to speak with those men.

Myslím že ti mužové půjdou brzy domů. I think that those men will soon go home.

Note 1. The formation of the *plural* of masculine inanimate and animate nouns, and the changes of their endings in different cases, are seen in the following table:

dollar, dollár, the dollar; **vůz, vooz,** the wagon; **syn, syn,** the son; **muž, moož,** the man;

dollary *dolláry* the dollars

vozy *vůzy* the wagons

syni *syni* }
 —**ové** *synové* } the sons

muži *mooži* }
 —**ové** *moožové* } the men;

REMARK. The long termination **ové** belongs to animate nouns; only in poetic language or solemn expressions does it sometimes appear connected with inanimates. —

In the accusative or objective case animate nouns have **syny, muže; Mám syny zde,** I have my sons here; **vidím ty muže,** I see those men. — **S dollary, s vozy, se syny, s muži; sdolláry, svůzy, se syny, s mooži;** with the dollars; with the wagons; with the sons, with the men.

dollarů *dollároo* }
 —**ův** *dollároof* } of the dollars

vozů *vůzoo* }
 —**ův** *—f* } of the wagons

synů *synoo* }
 —**ův** *—f* } of the sons

mužů *můžoo* }
 —**ův** *—f* } of the men

REMARK. Both animate and inanimate nouns use the long termination **ův,** — but never in ordinary discourse and seldom in the spoken language generally.

dollarŭm	<i>dollārŭm</i>	to the dollars	synŭm	<i>synoom</i>	to the sons
vozŭm	<i>vŏzoom</i>	to the wagons	mužŭm	<i>mŭžoom</i>	to the men;
v dollarech	<i>vdollārekh</i>	in the dollars	REMARK. Also with other prepositions: o dollarech , about the dollars; po dollarech , after the dollars or dollar by dollar); etc.		
ve vozech	<i>vĕ vŏzekh</i>	in the wagons			
v synech	<i>vsynĕkh</i>	in the sons			
v mužích	<i>vmŭžĕekh</i>	in the men.			

Note 2. The prepositions **k**, **s**, **v**, **z**, consisting of a single consonant, are simply abbreviations of **ke**, **ku**, **se**, **ve**, **ze**, as before explained. Their use is almost arbitrary, in cases where they can easily be connected and pronounced with the succeeding syllable; hence they are nearly always used when the following word begins with a vowel or with a consonant followed by a vowel: **v obleku**, *vŏ-blĕ-kŭ*, in the suit of clothes; **v dollarech**, *vdol-lā-rĕkh*, in the dollars; **v synech**, *vsy-ĕkh*, in the sons; — **s oblekem**, *sŏ-blĕ-kem*, with the suit of clothes; **s dollarem**, *sdol-lā-rem*, with the dollar; **s mužem**, *smoo-žem*, with the man; — **k obleku**, *kŏ-blĕ-kŭ*, to the suit of clothes; **k vozu**, *k ŏ-zŭ*, to the wagon; etc.

We can never say **v vozu**, **s synem**, **k koni** (in the wagon, with the son, to the horse), because it could not be pronounced; the letter **e** has to be retained and it is ridiculous to leave it out in writing as a silent letter, as it can never be silent. We speak and write: **ve vozu** (or **ve voze**), *vĕ vŏzŭ* (*vŏzĕ*), in the wagon; **se synem**, *sĕ synĕm*, with the son (or with my son); **ke koni**, *ke kŏñi*, to the horse.

On the other hand, the long form **ke**, **ku**, **ve**, **ze** may nearly always be employed, when the following word begins with a consonant; we can say and write **ve dollarech**, **ve synech**; but it is not customary. The sound of **v** connects easily with every other consonant without the help of an **e**. However, the short prepositions **k**, **s**, **z** are being limited in their use and the proper long form **ke**, **ku**, **se**, **ze** is employed wherever practicable.

Note 3. The letters **h**, **ch**, **k**, **r** are called *hard* consonants "par excellence". When they occur in a MASCULINE ANIMATE noun, or

in its ultimate syllable, they are changed or softened in the nominative plural after the following manner:

h	changes into	z		k	changes into	e
ch	“ “	š		r	“ “	ř

The following examples will explain it:

soudruh , <i>soŭdrŭh</i> , (<i>soŭdrŭkh</i>), a comrade;	soudruzi , <i>soŭdrŭzi</i> , comrades;
hoch , <i>hŏkh</i> , a boy;	hoši , <i>hŏ-she</i> , boys;
kluk , <i>klŭk</i> , a boy, an urchin;	kluci , <i>klŭtsi</i> , boys, urchins;
bratr , <i>brat^er</i> , a brother;	bratři , <i>brăt-ršhĭ</i> , brothers;

But whenever the long form of the nominative plural (**ové**) is employed, the hard consonant remains unchanged: **soudruhové**, the comrades; **bratřové**, the brothers. In the other cases (excepting the vocative, which is like the nominative: **o soudruzi!** o comrades!). the hard consonant also retains its place: **soudruhů**, **hochů**, **kluků**, **bratřů**, of the comrades (boys, brothers); **soudruhům**, and so forth.

LESSON XVI.

Líbí se mi <i>leebee sĕ me</i> I like it, (him, her, etc)	dejte <i>deytĕ</i> give, put
nésti <i>nestĭ</i> to bring, to yield	posázím <i>posázeem</i> I shall set out
nesou <i>nessoŭ</i> they bring, they yield (<i>or</i> pay)	povídá <i>poveedá</i> says
přines <i>prshi-ness</i> bring (thou)	letos <i>letoss</i> this year
přinesu <i>prshi-nessŭ</i> I shall bring	v loni <i>vloňi</i> last year
vede se <i>vĕdě sĕ</i> thrives	hodně <i>hodňe</i> } much, many (the same as mnoho) } a good deal
čítám <i>cheetám</i> I read (i. e. I use to read)	třeba <i>trshĕ-bă</i> } it needs, need- ed, necessary
sednu <i>sednŭ</i> I sit down	i třeba <i>e trshĕ-bă</i> I don't care
bavím se <i>băveem sĕ</i> I amuse myself	všeho druhu <i>vshĕhŏ drŭhŭ</i> of all kinds
	krajina , f. <i>krăjĭnă</i> country

soused, m.	<i>sošsed</i>	neighbor	půda, f.	<i>poodā</i>	land, soil
užitek, m	<i>ūžitek</i>	profit	prairie, f.	<i>prairiē</i>	prairie
kukuřice, f	<i>kūkūrshitsē</i>	} corn	bahno, n.	<i>bāhnō</i>	swamp
korna, f.	<i>kornā</i>		řezník, m.	<i>rshēz-ñeek</i>	butcher
brambory, pl.	<i>brānbory</i>	potatoes	knih, f.	<i>kñihā</i>	book
oves, m.	<i>ovess</i>	oats	knihovna, f.	<i>kñihōvnā</i>	library
ječmen, m.	<i>yēchmen</i>	barley	milovník, m.	<i>milōv-ñeek</i>	lover
sklizeň, f.	<i>sklizeň</i>	crop	záliba, f.	<i>zálibā</i>	pleasure
slad,	<i>slād</i>	malt	růže, f.	<i>roože</i>	rose
trh, m.	<i>t^erh</i>	market	pivonka, f.	<i>pivonkā</i>	peony
u cesty	<i>ū tsěsty</i>	} by the road near the road	okno, n.	<i>oknō</i>	window
				poklad, m.	<i>poklād</i>
samý, á, é	<i>sāmee</i>	nothing but	kdykoli	<i>gdī-kolī</i>	whenever
úrodný, á, é	<i>oo-rođnee</i>	fertile	ještě jeden	<i>yeshťe yēden</i>	one more, another
obzvláště	<i>ob-zvláshťe</i>	} especially particularly	před	<i>prshěd</i>	before
zvláštní	<i>zvláshť-ñee</i>		special, particular	bez	<i>běz or bess</i>
zpátky	<i>spátke</i>	back	za	<i>zā</i>	beyond, behind

EXERCISES.

Zde se mi líbí. I like it here.

Zde je pěkná krajina. This is (here is) a nice country.

Každý to povídá. Everybody says so.

My máme zde farmu. We have a farm here.

Strýc je náš soused. Uncle is our neighbor.

On má zde dvě farmy. He has two farms here.

Má velký užitek z těch farem? Has he a large profit from those farms?

Myslím že má. I think (that) he has.

Myslím že nesou mu hodně. I think (that) they yield (i. e. pay) him a good deal.

V loni měl mnoho sklizně (sklíz-ñe, of the c) všeho druhu. Last year he had a large crop of all kinds.

Je to tuze úrodná farma. It is a very fertile farm.

Měl mnoho sena, pšenice, kukuřice i brambor. He had a great deal of hay, wheat, corn and potatoes.

Letos bude mítí také oves, ječmen a žito. This year he will also have oats, barley and rye.

Ječmen na slád má vždycky (dycky *dít-ski*) dobrý trh. Barley for malt has always a good market.

Na farmách zde ječmen vede se dobře. On the farms here barley thrives well.

Za farmami u cesty je kus špatné půdy. Beyond the farms by the road there is a piece of bad land.

Já myslel, že je to úrodná prairie. I thought (that) it was a fertile prairie.

Není; je to skoro samé bahno. It is not; it is almost nothing but swamp.

Knihy jsou poklad. Books are a treasure.

Rád čítám knihy. I like to read books.

Obzvláště když jsem doma. Especially when I am at home.

Jste teda milovník knih. You are then a lover of books.

To je pravda. That is true.

Máte mnoho knih? Have you many books?

Má knihovna je veliká. My library is large.

Jaké knihy máte? What books have you?

Mám knihy všeho druhu. I have books of all kinds.

Sednu ke knihám kdykoli mám čas. I sit down to the books whenever I have time.

Teda máte zálibu ve knihách. Then you have (you find) pleasure in books.

Ano, tuze rád bavím se s knihami. Yes, I like very much to amuse myself with books.

Máte růže před oknem. You have roses before the window.

Máme tam hodně růží. We have many roses there.

K růžím dejte pivoňky. To the roses put peonies.

V růžích mám zvláštní zálibu. In roses I have (I take) particular pleasure.

Posázím ještě jeden záhon růžemi. I shall plant another bed with roses.

Byl jsem u řezníka. I was at the butcher's.

Koupil jsem maso od řezníka. I bought (some) meat from the butcher.

Tu je to maso. Here is that meat.

To je samá kost. That is nothing but bone.

Jsou tu nějaké kosti. There are some bones here.

Ano, kostí je dost. Yes, there are bones enough.

K těm kostim třeba více masa. To the bones (besides the b.) we need more meat.

Na těch kostech není ho mnoho. On these bones there is not much of it.

Co s kostmi? What (can we do) with the bones?

Nechceme tolik kostí. We do not want so many bones.

Přines maso bez kostí. Bring meat without bones.

Půjdu zpátky a přinesu ho. I shall go back and bring it.

Note 1. The formation of the plural of feminine nouns, and the changes of their endings in different cases, are shown in the following table:

cena, *tsěná*, the price; **růže,** *roožě*, the rose; **kost',** *kěst*, the bone;

ceny *tsěny* the prices

růže *roožě* the roses

kosti *kost'i* the bones;

cen *tsěn* of the prices

růží *roožee* of the roses

kostí *kost'ee* of the bones:

cenám *tsěnáám* to the prices

růžím *roožeem* to the roses

kostem *kostem* to the bones;

v cenách *ftsě-nákh* in the prices

v růžích *vroožeekh* in the roses

v kostech *fkěst-těkh* in the bones;

REMARK. When two consonants terminate the noun in the genitive, an e is interpolated: **farmy**, the farms; **farem** (instead of **farm**), of the farms; **matky**, the mothers; **matek** instead of **matk**, of the mothers.

REMARK. Also with other prepositions: **o cenách**, about prices; **při cenách**, at the prices; etc.

cenami	<i>tsěnámi</i>	with the prices	REMARK. Usually with the preposition <i>s</i> (with): <i>s cenami</i> , <i>stsě-námi</i> ; <i>s růžemi</i> , <i>sroo-žemi</i> ; <i>s kostmi</i> , <i>skost-mi</i> .
růžemi	<i>roožemi</i>	with the roses	
kostmi	<i>kostmi</i>	with the bones.	

LESSON XVII.

Vám	<i>vám</i>	to you	bohaectví , n.	<i>bōhāts-tree</i>	richness
jim	<i>yim</i>	to them	štěstí , n.	<i>sh'tess-t'i</i>	happiness, luck, good fortune
mi, mě	<i>me, myě</i>	to me	moudrost , f.	<i>moūdrost</i>	wisdom
moje, mé	<i>moyě, mé</i>	mine, my	váha , f.	<i>váhā</i>	weight
naše	<i>nāshě</i>	our, ours	poupě , n.	<i>poūpyě</i>	bud
vaše	<i>vāshě</i>	your, yours	poupata	<i>poūpātā</i>	buds
s těmi	<i>s'těmi</i>	with those	plot , m.	<i>plōt</i>	fence
tohle	<i>tōhlě</i>	this here	obtíž , f.	<i>ob t'eež</i>	trouble
tam ty	<i>tām ty</i>	those over there	mýlka , f.	<i>meelkā</i>	mistake
tuze	<i>toozě</i>	very much	máte pravdu	<i>máte prāvďū</i>	you are right (<i>literally</i> : you have right)
blíže	<i>bleežě</i>	nearer	není třeba	<i>neñi trshě-bā</i>	it is not necessary
nikoli	<i>ñikoli</i>	no, not at all	obalený, á, é	<i>obālěnee</i>	covered
kolem	<i>kōlem</i>	round	drátěný, á, é	<i>drā-t'enee</i>	of wire
pojďme	<i>poď'me</i>	let us go	hluboký, á, é	<i>hlūbōkee</i>	deep, pro- found.
jde	<i>dě</i>	comes	zdravý, á, é	<i>zdrāvee</i>	healthy, well- sound
hled'te	<i>hled'tě</i>	see, look	děvče	<i>d'ef-chě</i>	gir ^l
vidím	<i>vid'eem</i>	I see	děvčata	<i>d'ef-chātā</i>	girls
vidíte	<i>vid'eetě</i>	you see	dobře	<i>dobrshě</i>	well, all right
znám	<i>znám</i>	I know	slovem	<i>slořvem</i>	in a word
znáte	<i>znátě</i>	you know			
přidám	<i>prshi-dám</i>	I shall add			
řeknu	<i>rshek-nū</i>	I shall tell			
slyšet	<i>slishet</i>	to hear			
postačí	<i>postā-chee</i>	is sufficient			
roste	<i>rostě</i>	grows			

EXERCISES.

- Já vám něco řeknu.** I will tell you something.
- Bohactví není štěstí.** Riches are not happiness.
- To jsou slova moudrosti.** These are words of wisdom.
- Znáte váhu těch slov?** Do you know the weight of those words?
- K těm slovům nic více není třeba.**
To those words nothing more is needed.
-
- Tam ty růže už mají poupata.** The roses over there already have buds.
- Ano, mají mnoho poupat.** Yes, they have many buds.
- Letos jsou obaleny poupaty.** This year they are covered with buds.
- V loni byly skoro bez poupat.** Last year they were almost without buds.
- Pojďme blíže k těm poupatům.** Let us go nearer to those buds.
- Vidím něco na těch poupatech.** I see something on the buds.
- To není nic.** That is nothing.
- Máte pravdu; poupata jsou zdravá.**
You are right; the buds are sound.
- Ano, jsou;** yes, they are.
-
- V těch slovech je hluboká pravda.**
In those words there is a profound truth.
- Chcete slyšet více?** Do you want to hear more?
- Nikoli; ta slova postačí.** Not at all; those words suffice.
- Jsem spokojen s těmi slovy.** I am satisfied with those words.
- Slovem: máte pravdu!** In a word: you are right!
-
- Aha, zde je moje děvče!** Ah, here is my girl!
- Jsou vaše děvčata zdravá?** Are your girls well?
- Obě naše děvčata jsou zdravá.** Both our girls are well.
- Přines děvčeti poupě.** Bring (thou) to the girl a bud.
- Jsou zde dvě děvčata.** There are two girls here.
- Přineste jim několik poupat.** Bring (you to) them some buds.
- Tady jde s těmi poupaty.** Here he comes with the buds.
- Tu je pár poupat.** Here are some buds.
- Dobře.** All right.
-
- Hleďte!** See!
- Ty pole co vidíte jsou moje.** The fields you see are mine.
- Kolem těch polí je nový plot.** Around those fields there is a new fence.

Je to drátěný plot. It is a wire fence.
K těm polím je dobrá cesta. To those fields there is a good road.
Co bude na těch polích? What will there be on those fields?
Na těch polích bude obilí a kukuřice. On those fields there will be grain and corn.

Jste spokojen s těmi poliemi? Are you satisfied with those fields?
Jsem tuze spokojen. I am very much satisfied.
Všechno dobře roste na těch polích. Everything grows well on those fields.

Co je tohle? What is this here?
Nějaká znamení. Some signs.
To jsou moje znamení. These are my signs.
Já něco přidám k těm znamením. I shall add something to those signs.

Není mýlka v těch znameních! Is there no mistake in those signs?
S těmi znameními je někdy obtíž. With those signs there is sometimes trouble.
Pravda, je někdy obtíž. True, there is sometimes trouble.

Note. The formation of the plural of neutre nouns, and the changes of their endings in different cases, will appear from the following table:

slovo	<i>slůvě</i>	the word	pole	<i>polě</i>	the field
poupě	<i>poŭpyě</i>	the bud	znamení	<i>znĕměňěe</i>	the sign;
slova	<i>slůvĕ</i>	the words	pole	<i>polě</i>	the fields
poupata	<i>poŭpĕtĕ</i>	the buds	znamení	<i>znĕměňěe</i>	the signs;
slov	<i>slŏf</i>	of the words	polí	<i>polěe</i>	of the fields
poupat	<i>poŭpĕt</i>	of the buds	znamení	<i>znĕměňěe</i>	of the signs;
slovŭm	<i>slŏvŏom</i>	to the words	polím	<i>polěem</i>	to the fields
poupatŭm	<i>poŭpĕtoom</i>	to the buds	znamením	<i>znĕměňěem</i>	to the signs;
ve slovech	<i>vě slŏvěkh</i>	in the words	REMARK. Also with other prepositions: o polích , about the fields;		
v poupatech	<i>fpoŭpĕtĕkh</i>	in the buds	na polích , on the fields.		
v polích	<i>fpolěekh</i>	in the fields			
ve znameních	<i>vě znĕměňěekh</i>	in the signs;			

slovy *slōvy* with the words
 poupaty *poūpāty* with the buds
 poli (-emi) *poli (-ēmi)* with the fields
 znameními *znāměněemi* with the
 signs.

REMARK. Also with the preposition
 se, s: se slovy, *se slōvy*; s poupaty,
spoūpāty; s polemi, *společmi*; se zna-
 meními, *sě znāměněemi*.—Instead of
 polemi, the short forms polmi and
 poli (*polmi, polli*) are also used.

LESSON XVIII.

Mrak, m. *mrāk* cloud
 mráček, m. *mrá-čuk* little cloud
 žena *ženā* wife
 míle*), f. *meelē* mile
 hodina*), f. *hōd'inā* hour, o'clock
 jízda, f. *ye zdā* drive, ride
 k večeru *kučchērū* toward evening
 za světla *zā swyēt-lā* by daylight
 tma *tmā* dark, darkness
 pozdě *pōzďe* late
 dobrá! *dobrā* very well!
 krásný, á, é *krássneee* beautiful
 s námi *s námi* with us
 brzy *b^er-zy* soon
 po svém *pō svém* after one's
 business
 ještě *yeshťe* still, yet.

já pravil *yá právil* I said
 jářku *yá-rshkū* I said, I say
 (like the colloq. "says I".)
 jeti *yeťi, yet* to drive, to ride
 pojedem *pōyēdem* we shall drive,
 we shall ride
 pojed'me *poyēď'mē* let us drive,
 let us ride
 vyjeti, *ve-yeťi, ve-yet* to drive
 out, to ride out, to start
 vyjeli jsme *ve-yelli smē* we started
 vrátíme se *vrátēemē sē* we shall re-
 turn, we shall come back
 vrátil mi *vrát'il me* he returned
 to me (something);
 půjčené peníze *pūychēné pēněezē*
 the money loaned;

*) Jedna, dvě, tři, čtyry míle, *yednā, dwyē, trshi, shtiri meelē*, one, two, three, four miles; pět mil, *pyēt mill*, five miles; šest mil, *shēst mill*, six miles; and so forth.

Jedna hodina, *yednā hōd'inā*, one hour, one o'clock; dvě, tři, čtyry hodiny, *dwyē, trshi, shtiri hōd'iny*, two, three, four hours; two, three, four o'clock; pět hodin, *pyēt hōd'in*, five hours; five o'clock; šest hodin, *shēst hōd'in*, six hours, six o'clock; — and so forth.

EXERCISES.

Včera byl krásný den; — nebe bylo jasné, — ani mráčku nikde.

Jářku, ženo! dnes pojedem do města.

Ano, pojed'me! pravila žena; — je den tak krásný!

Máme deset mil do města.

Brzy po snídani vyjeli jsme; — bylo právě osm hodin.

Soused pan Rohan byl s námi.

Já pravil: sousede, jak brzy budeme ve městě?

V deset hodin jsme tam! pravil pan Rohan.

A byli jsme.

Je to as dvě hodiny jízdy, když cesta je dobrá.

Ve městě soused šel kupovat něco a my také šli po svém.

Půjčil jsem mu pět dollarů.

Jářku, sousede! kdy se vrátíme?

Myslím pozdě odpoledne, nebo k večeru; — to bude dost času.

Dobrá; vrátíme se asi v sedm hodin večer, — ještě za světla.

Ale bylo už tma, když jsme se vrátili.

Yesterday was a beautiful day; — the sky was clear, — not a cloud anywhere.

I said: wife, to-day we will drive to town.

Yes, let us drive! said (my) wife; — the day is so beautiful!

It is ten miles to town (*literally*: we have ten miles to town).

Soon after breakfast we drove out (we started); — it was just eight o'clock.

(Our) neighbor Mr. Rohan was with us.

I said: neighbor, how soon shall we be in the city?

At ten o'clock we are there! said Mr. Rohan.

And we were.

It is about a two hour's ride, when the road is good.

In the city, the neighbor went to buy something, and we also went after our business.

I loaned (to) him five dollars.

I said: neighbor, when shall we return?

I think late in the afternoon or towards evening; — that will be time enough.

Very well; we shall return about seven o'clock in the evening. — still by daylight.

But it was already dark, when we returned.

Soused šel domu a vrátil mi půjčené peníze.	The neighbor went home and returned to me the money I loaned him.
---	---

Note 1. The noun **mráček** is a diminutive of **mrak**. In English only a few nouns have their proper diminutives; for instance: man, *manikin*; eagle, *eaglet*; river, *rivulet*; goose, *gosling*.

In Bohemian diminutives are exceedingly numerous; and very often a noun has two, sometimes three diminutives, differing in degree. For example:

dům, m. *dům*, a house; **domek**, *děměk*, a small house; **domeček**, *děměček*, a very small house.

hoch, *hōkh*, a boy; **hošík**, *hōsheek*, a small boy; **hošíček**, *hōsheček*, a very small boy.

ruka, f. *rūkă*, a hand; **ručka**, *rūchkă*, a small hand; **ručička**, *rūchich-kă*, a very small hand.

oko, n. *ōkō*, an eye; **očko**, *ōch-kō*, a small eye; **očíčko**, *ōchich-kō*, a very small eye.

Diminutives, however, are often used simply as expressions of fondness and endearment, apart from any relation of size or degree.

Note 2. The genitive or possessive case of **mráček** is **mráčku**, not **mráčeku**. All nouns ending in **ek** drop the letter **e** in their declension. They are all of the masculine gender (as observed in Lesson I, Note 5), and the animate have **ka**, the inanimate **ku** in the genitive:

ptáček, *ptáček*, (colloq. *ftáček*), a small bird; **ptáčka**, *ptáchkă* (*ftáchkă*), a small bird's;

svátek, *swátek*, a holiday; **svátku**, *swát-kă*, a holiday's.

Note 3. Reflexive verbs in English are followed by reflexive pronouns; for instance: to forswear *one's self*; I foreswore *myself*; he forswore *himself*; they forswore *themselves*; etc.

In Bohemian, the reflexive pronoun is always *se*, without any variation. But many verbs, which are reflexive in Bohemian, are not so in English; and vice versa.

Vrátiti se, *vrátit se* (to return, to come back), is a reflexive verb; we say: **vrátím se**, *vrátím se*, I shall return; **vrátíme se**, *vrátíme se*, we shall return; **vrátíte se**, *vrátíte se*, you will return: **vrátí se**, *vrátí se*, they will return.

Note 4. In the foregoing exercises, **sousedé**, **ženo**, are the vocative cases of **soused** (neighbor), **žena** (wife). The noun is put in the vocative case, when the person or thing is addressed: O Lord! o heavens!

In Bohemian, the vocative case in the singular is very often, in the plural *always* like the nominative, as will be seen from the following comparison:

Nominative.			Vocative.		
soused,	<i>sošsed.</i>	the neighbor	sousedé!	<i>sošsedě</i>	o neighbor!
muž,	<i>moož,</i>	the man	muži!	<i>mooži,</i>	o man!
žena,	<i>ženā,</i>	the woman	ženo!	<i>ženě,</i>	o woman!
kost, f.	<i>kōst,</i>	the bone	kosti!	<i>kōstě,</i>	o bone!
růže, f.	<i>roože,</i>	the rose	růže!	<i>roože</i>	o rose!
slovo, n.	<i>slōvō,</i>	the word	slovo!	<i>slōvō,</i>	o word!
pole, n.	<i>pōle,</i>	the field	pole!	<i>pōle,</i>	o field!
znamení,	<i>znāmēñee,</i>	the sign	znamení!	<i>znāmēñee,</i>	o sign!

In the plural number, the nominative and vocative always agree

sousedí*),	<i>sošsed'í,</i>	the neighbors;	o neighbors!
muži (-ové),	<i>mooži,</i>	the men;	o men!
ženy,	<i>žēny,</i>	the women;	o women!
kosti,	<i>kōst'í,</i>	the bones;	o bones!
růže,	<i>roože,</i>	the roses;	o roses!
slova,	<i>slōvā,</i>	the words;	o words!
pole,	<i>pōlē,</i>	the fields;	o fields!
znamení,	<i>znāmēñee,</i>	the signs;	o signs!

*) **Sousedé**, *sošsedé*, is the proper grammatical form, this noun forming an exception: but **sousedí** is the common usage.

Note 5. The Latin noun has six cases; the Bohemian noun has six cases corresponding perfectly with the Latin, and an additional case called "instrumental", because it denotes by whom, with whom or through whom (by means of what or through what) something happens or is done: mužem, s mužem, by the man, with the man; dollarem, s dollarem, with the dollar.

The nature of the six cases of the Bohemian noun apart from the vocative will appear more distinctly by stating the questions to which they respond.

The *nominative* case, of course, responds to the question kdo? co? gďo, tsď; who? what?

dollar, muž, žena, slovo; the dollar, the man, the woman, the word.—
dollary, muži, ženy, slova; the dollars, the men, the women, the words.

The *genitive* or *possessive* case responds to the question čí, čeho? chee, chěhď; whose? of what?

dollaru, muže, ženy, slova; of the dollar; the man's, the woman's, of the word; — dollarů (-ův), mužů (-ův), žen, slov; of the dollars, the men's, the women's, of the words.

The *dative* case responds to the question komu? čemu? kďmă, chěmă; to whom? to what?

dollaru, muži, ženě, slovu; to the dollar, to the man, to the woman, to the word; — dollarům, mužům, ženám, slovům; to the dollars; to the men, to the women, to the words.

The *accusative* or *objective* case responds to the question koho? co? kďhď, tsď; whom? what?

dollar, muže, ženu, slovo; the dollar, the man, the woman, the word; — dollary, muže, ženy, slova; the dollars, the men, the women, the words.

The *locative* case responds to the question v kom? v čem? (na kom? na čem? -- o kom? o čem?), fkďm, fchěm; in whom? in what? (on whom — what? about whom — what?)

v dollaru, v muži, v ženě, ve slovu (-ě); in the dollar, in the man,

in the woman, in the word; — v dollarech, v mužích, v ženách, ve slovech; in the dollars, in the men, in the women, in the words.

The *instrumental* case responds to the question kým? čím? — s kým? s čím? *keem, cheem, skeem, scheem*; by whom? by what? with whom? with what?

dollarem, mužem, ženou, slovem; with the dollar, with the man, with the woman, with the word; — dollary, muži, ženami, slovy; with the dollars, with the men, with the women, with the words.

LESSON XIX.

Pan	<i>păn</i>	Mr (mister)	blížký, á, é	<i>bleskee</i>	near
pán	<i>pán</i>	gentleman	hodný, á, é	<i>hodnee</i>	nice, good
paní	<i>pănēēē</i>	Mrs. (missis); lady	jiný, á, é	<i>ye-nee</i>	another
člověk	<i>chlovýěk</i>	man; one;	letný, á, é	<i>letnee</i>	aged
Karel	<i>kărell</i>	Charles	bohatý, á, é	<i>bôhâtee</i>	rich
Anna	<i>ănă</i>	Anna	chudý, á, é	<i>khûdee</i>	poor
Marie	<i>marîē</i>	Mary	poctivý, á, é	<i>pots-tīvee</i>	honest
dceraška	<i>tserûshkă</i>	little daughter	mladý, á, é	<i>mlădee</i>	young
hošík	<i>hôsheek</i>	little boy	četný, á, é	<i>chetnee</i>	numerous
sousedka	<i>soûsedkă</i>	female neighbor	pilný, á, é	<i>pillnee</i>	industrious
vdova	<i>vdôvă</i>	widow	poslušný, á, é	<i>poslûshnee</i>	obedient
vovec	<i>vdô-věts</i>	widower	ještě tři	<i>yesh'te trshi</i>	} three other } three more
domov, m.	<i>dômovf</i>	home	usazen	<i>ûssâzen</i>	
rok, m.	<i>rôk</i>	year	jmenuje se	<i>menûyě sě</i>	is called
leta	<i>letă</i>	} years*)	v skutku	<i>fskût-kû</i>	} indeed, in } fact, really
let	<i>let</i>		opravdu	<i>oprăvdû</i>	
náklonnost, f.	<i>năklônnost</i>	inclination	má být	<i>mă beet</i>	ought to be
několik	<i>ňekolîk</i>	several, some, a few	máte rád	<i>mătě rád</i>	you like

*) Dvě leta, *dvýě letă*, two years; tři leta, *trshi letă*, three years; čtyry leta, *shtiri letă*, four years; pět let, *pyět let*, five years; šest let, *shěst let*, six years; sedm let, *sědûm let*, seven years; and so forth.

Máte to rád? <i>mátě tě rád?</i> do you like it?	nesklame se, <i>nessklámě se,</i> will not be disappointed;
mám vždycky rád, <i>mám dit-ski rád,</i> I always like;	jednám, <i>yed-nám,</i> I deal;
dávno, <i>dávně,</i> a long time;	jedná, <i>yed-ná,</i> deals;
jak dávno, <i>yak dávně</i> how long;	váš, <i>vásh,</i> your, yours;
	její, <i>yěyee,</i> her, hers.

EXERCISES.

Tak zde je váš domov!
 Kdo je váš soused?
 Pan Hodan je můj soused.
 On je náš blízký soused.
 Je pan Hodan hodný muž?
 Ano, je hodný muž; a paní Hodanová je hodná žena.
 Mají děti?
 Mají jednu dcerušku.
 Jak se jmenuje?
 Myslím že jmenuje se Marie; je to hodné dítě.
 Jiný soused náš je pan Braun.

Jak dávno je zde usazen?

Je zde usazen asi rok nebo dvě leta.

Je pan Braun bohatý?
 Není; on je chudý člověk.

Je chudý a tuze poctivý.
 Je letný muž?

Ne, pan Braun je mladý muž a paní Braunová je mladá žena.

Ale rodina je už četná.
 Mají několik dětí.

So here is your home!
 Who is your neighbor?
 Mr. Hodan is my neighbor.
 He is our near neighbor.
 Is Mr. Hodan a nice man?
 Yes, he is a nice man; and Mrs. Hodan is a nice woman.
 Have they children?
 They have one little daughter.
 What is her name?
 I think she is called Mary; she is a nice child.
 Another neighbor of ours is Mr. Brown.
 How long is he (has he been) settled here?
 He has been settled here about a year or two (years).
 Is Mr. Brown rich?
 He is not; he is a poor man.
 He is poor and very honest.
 Is he an aged man?
 No; Mr. Brown is a young man, and Mrs. Brown is a young woman.
 But the family is already numerous.
 They have several children.

Karel je asi deset let a pak mají ještě tři děti.

Karel je poslušný a pilný hoch.

Anna je také poslušná a pilná.

Je jí asi osm let.

Dítě má být poslušné a pilné.

Ano, má být; ale někdy není.

Vdova Borošová je také naše blízká sousedka.

Její bratr, pan Blech, je také vdovec.

Charles is about ten years, and then they have three more children.

Charles is an obedient and industrious boy.

Anna is also obedient and industrious.

She is (*literally*: it is to her) about eight years.

A child should be obedient and industrious.

Yes, it ought to be; but sometimes it is not.

The widow Borosh is also our near neighbor.

Her brother, Mr. Bloch, is also a widower.

Teda máte rád pana Hodana? (*pěňň hoděňň*),—accusative).

Mám vždycky rád hodného muže, a hodnou ženu také.

K hodnému muži a k hodné ženě máme vždy náklonnost.

A je také pravda, že v hodném muži a v hodné ženě se člověk nikdy nesklame.

S hodným mužem a hodnou ženou každý rád jedná.

Těž rád jednám s hodným dítětem.

Pana Brauna hošík je v skutku hodné dítě.

So you like Mr. Hodan?

I always like a nice man, and a nice woman too.

Toward a nice man and a nice woman we always have an inclination. And it is also true, that in a good man and in a good woman one is never disappointed.

With a nice man and a nice woman everybody likes to deal.

I also like to deal with a nice child. Mr. Brown's little boy is really a good child.

Note 1. In Lesson VI. Note 2, it was explained that the termination of adjectives changes according to the gender of the nouns which they qualify:

hodný muž,	<i>hodnee moož,</i>	a nice man;
hodná žena,	<i>hodná ženā,</i>	a nice woman;
hodné dítě,	<i>hodné d'eeťe,</i>	a nice child (in ordinary discourse hodný dítě , like the masculine).

Adjectives, also, are declined and agree in number and case with the nouns. The changes of termination in the singular number appear in the following table:

hodný muž,	<i>hodnee moož,</i>	a nice man;
hodné dítě,	<i>hodné d'eeťe,</i>	a nice child;
hodného muže,	<i>hodného moožě,</i>	of a nice man,
“ dítěte,	“ <i>d'eeťete,</i>	of a nice child;

REMARK. The accusative or objective agrees with the possessive in the masculine, and with the nominative in the neutre gender:

vidím **hodného muže**, *vid'eem hodného moožě*, I see a nice man;
vidím **hodné dítě**, *vid'eem hodné d'eeťe*, I see a nice child.

hodnému muži,	<i>hodněmũ mooži,</i>	to a nice man,
“ dítěti,	“ <i>d'eeťeti,</i>	to a nice child;
v hodném muži ,	<i>vhodněm mooži,</i>	in a nice man,
“ “ dítěti,	“ <i>d'eeťeti,</i>	in a nice child;
s hodným mužem ,	<i>shodneem moožem,</i>	with a nice man,
“ “ dítětem,	“ <i>d'eeťetem,</i>	with a nice child.

hodná žena,	<i>hodná ženā,</i>	a nice woman;
hodné ženy,	<i>hodné ženy,</i>	of a nice woman;
“ ženě,	“ <i>žeñe,</i>	to a nice woman;
v “ ženě,	v “ “,	in a nice woman;
hodnou ženu,	<i>hodnoũ ženũ,</i>	a nice woman (<i>accusative</i>);
s hodnou ženou ,	<i>shodnoũ ženou,</i>	with a nice woman.

Note 2. In common discourse no distinction whatever is made between the masculine and neutre gender, and the terminal *ý* does not change. We hear:

hodný muž,	hodný dítě;	a nice man,	a nice child;
hodného muže,	hodného dítěte;	of a nice man,	of a nice child;
hodnému muži,	hodnému dítěti;	to a nice man,	to a nice child;
hodného muže,	hodný dítě;	((<i>accusative</i>); a nice man,	a nice child;
v hodným muži,	v hodným dítěti;	in a nice man,	in a nice child;
s hodným mužem,	s hodným dítětem;	with a nice man,	with a nice child.

In the feminine gender, we hear: *hodná žena, hodnou ženu* (accus.), *s hodnou ženou*; but in the other cases:

hodný ženy,	of a good woman;
hodný ženě,	to a good woman;
v hodný ženě,	in a good woman;

The ordinary usage of the people evidently rejects all artificial, and unnecessary grammatical distinction, always tending to simplicity; and it will be noticed that there is much more consistency in this common rule as applied to the declension of adjectives, when we come to treat of their plural number.

Note 3. In Bohemian, the adjective may be placed either before or after the noun, according to the speaker's pleasure;

pan Hodan je hodný muž;	}	Mr. Hodan is a nice man;
pan Hodan je muž hodný;		
je to letný muž;	}	he is (<i>literally</i> , it is) an aged man.
je to muž letný;		

It is usually placed after the noun when the speaker wishes to lay particular stress upon the adjective (*hodný, letný*) qualifying the noun.

LESSON XX.

Sousedstvo, n. <i>soŭsedstvŏ</i>	neighborhood	vejde	<i>veydě</i>	enters, calls
celý, á, é	<i>tselee</i>	rád vejde	<i>rád veydě,</i>	likes to call
milý, á, é	<i>millee</i>	rád promluví,	<i>rád promlŭvee,</i>	likes to talk (to have a chat)
přijemno, f. <i>prshee-yěmnŏ</i>	agreeable, pleasant	má rád	<i>má rád</i>	he likes
nehodný	<i>ně hodnee</i>	má ráda	<i>má rádĎ</i>	she likes
bydleti	<i>bidlet</i> to live, to reside	doufám	<i>doŭfám</i>	I hope
vše	<i>fshě</i>	ba právě	<i>bĎ právyě</i>	that is so;
všechno	<i>fshekh-nŏ</i>			to be sure;
však	<i>fshĕk</i>	ba věru	<i>bĎ vyěrŭ</i>	certainly; no doubt of it;
však je	<i>fshĕk yě</i>	v pořádku	<i>fpo-rshád-kŭ</i>	right;
				all right;
nad	<i>nĕd</i>	dobrá vůle	<i>dobrá voolě</i>	good will
není nad	<i>něni nĕd</i>	na štěstí	<i>nĕ shěstěi,</i>	happily, fortunately;
		je na to čas,	<i>yě nĕ tŏ chĕss,</i>	there is time for it.
velmi	<i>velmi</i>	že ne? žě ně?	}	isn't it so? is it not? are they not?
jich	<i>yikh</i>			
nám	<i>nám</i>	to víš	<i>tŏ veesh</i>	thou knowest
vám	<i>vám</i>	to víte	<i>tŏ veetě</i>	you know

REMARK. When standing alone and used as a rejoinder, **to víš** and **to víte** signify; *of course, to be sure.*

EXERCISES.

Myslím že všichni vaši sousedé jsou
hodní.

Pravda; celé sousedstvo je hodné.

Pak je příjemno bydlet zde.

Opravdu, velmi příjemno.

A jaké je sousedstvo vaše?

My také máme pár hodných sou-
sedů.

Myslím že je vám to také milé.

Je nám to tuze milé.

Člověk rád vejde k hodným sou-
sedům.

Každý má rád hodné sousedy.

Ba právě; a v hodných sousedech
vždycky (*dit-ski*) má podporu.

Když je na to čas, člověk rád pro-
mluví s hodnými sousedy.

Není nad hodné sousedy!

Má žena je zde velmi spokojena.

Vaše sousedky jsou všechny hodné,
že ne?

Naše sousedky jsou hodné.

To víte, že mezi hodnými soused-
kami je dobrá vůle.

Není nad dobrou vůli v sousedstvu.

To víte.

Když sousedé také mají hodné děti,
všechno je v pořádku.

I think that all your neighbors are
nice.

True; the whole neighborhood is
nice.

Then it is agreeable to live here.

Truly, very agreeable.

And what kind is *your* neighbor-
hood?

We also have some nice neighbors
(i. e. some *of* the nice neighbors).

I think (that) it is also agreeable to
you.

It is very agreeable to us.

One likes to call on nice neighbors;
(*literally*:) one likes to enter to
nice neighbors).

Everybody likes good neighbors.

To be sure; and in good neighbors
one always has (finds) a support.

When there is time for it, one likes
to have a chat with good neighbors.

There is nothing like good neighbors!

My wife is very much satisfied here.

Your female neighbors are all nice,
are they not?

Our female neighbors are nice.

You know that among nice female
neighbors there is good will.

There is nothing like good will in a
neighborhood.

Of course (i. e. you know).

When the neighbors also have nice
children, everything is all right.

Máme opravdu mnoho hodných dětí v sousédstvu.	We have indeed many nice children in the neighborhood (i. e. many of the nice children)*).
Však je také několik nehodných.	But there are also a few naughty (ones).
Doufám že není jich mnoho.	I hope (that) there are not many of them.
Na štěstí není jich mnoho.	Fortunately there are not many of them.
Je jich jen pár; ale je to dost.	There are only a few; but it is enough.
Ba věru.	No doubt of it.

Note 1. In the plural, the masculine gender of an adjective changes the terminal *ý* into an *í*;

hodný muž, *hodnee moož*, a nice man; hodní muži, *hodñee mooži*, nice men.

The feminine gender changes the terminal *á* into an *é* :

hodná žena, *hodná ženě*, a nice woman; hodné ženy, *hodné ženy*, nice women.

The neutre gender changes the terminal *é* into an *á* :

hodné děcko, *hodné d'et-sko*, a nice child; hodná děcka, *hodná d'et-ská*, nice children.

Dítě, *d'eet'e*, (child,) follows the feminine in the plural: hodné děti, *hoané d'eti*, nice children.

Note 2. Adjectives containing in their last syllable the hard consonants **h, ch, k, r**, change these consonants in the plural of the masculine animate gender into **z, š, c, ř**, in the same manner as stated in Lesson XV. Note 3. For example:

*) **Mnogo, málo, pár, kolik, několik**, (many, few, a few, how many, some', as well as all numbers after "four" (see foot-notes in Lessons XVIII and XIX) govern the *genitive or possessive* case; hence the noun, or pronoun, adjective, which follows them, must always appear in that case.

dlouhý had, *dloūhee hād*, a long snake; **dlouzí hadi**, *dloūzee hād'i*, long snakes;
hluchý muž, *hlūkhee moož*, a deaf man; **hluší muži**, *hlūshee mooži*, deaf men;
velký hoch, *velkee hōkh*, a big boy; **velcí hoši**, *veltsee hō-shi*, big boys;
dobrý soused, *dobree soūsed*, a good neighbor; **dobří sousedi**, *dobr-shee soūsed'i*, good neighbors.

Note 3. The following table presents a complete view of the plural number of adjectives ending in *ý* (*á*, *é*).

The *nominative* and *accusative* cases:

hodní muži (*accus. hodné muže*), *hodnēe mooži*, *hodné moožě*, nice men;

hodné ženy, *hodné ženy*, nice women;

hodná děcka, *hodná d'etskā*, nice children.

The *genitive* or possessive case :

hodných mužů, žen, děcek, *hodneekh moožoo. žen, d'etsek*, of the nice men, women, children.

The *dative* case :

hodným mužům, ženám, děckům, *hodneem moožoom, ženám d'etskoom*, to the nice men, women, children.

The *locative* case:

o hodných mužích, ženách, děckách, *o hodneekh moožeeekh, ženákh, d'etskákh*, about the nice men, women, children.

The *instrumental* case:

s hodnými muži, ženami, děcky, *shodneemi mooži, ženāmi, d'etski*, with the nice men, women, children.

Note 4. In common discourse, however, the grammatical distinction of gender in the nominative plural of this class of adjectives is treated as perfectly useless, which in fact it is. The Bohemian language, as it lives in the daily intercourse of millions, employs the masculine singular form of the adjective in all three genders of the plural, recognizing only one form of declension :

hodný muži, hodný ženy, hodný děti (or děcka); the nice men, women, children;

hodných mužů, žen, dětí; of the nice men, women, children:
and so forth.

LESSON XXI.

Sousedův, m. *soŭsedom* } the
sousedova, f. *soŭsedovã* } neigh-
sousedovo, n. *soŭsedovø* } bor's.
sousedovi, pl. *soŭsedovi* }

bratrův, m. *brãtroof*, the brother's
plný, á, é *pl-nee* full

nový; á, é *nøvee* new

falešný, á, é *fãleshnee* false

co nového? *tsø nøvøhø*, what is
the news?

noviny, pl. *nøviny* news, news-
paper

tiskárna, f. *tiskãrnã* printing office

list *list*, paper, sheet, leaf

hlas, m. *hlãss* voice

sloupec, m. *sloŭpets* column

sloupee *sloŭp-tsø* columns

čísti, *cheest'i*, *cheest*, to read

čteme *chtømø* we read

v tom, m & n. *ftøm*) in that

v té, f. *ftø*)

proto *prøtø* hence, therefore

proto ale přece, *prøtø ãlø prshø-tsø*,
in spite of that, notwith-
standing that

denní *dønnee* daily

týdenní *teedønnee* weekly

denník, m. *dønneek*, daily paper

týdenník, m. *teedønneek*: weekly "

dnešní *dnesh-nøe* today's

včerejší *fchøreyshee* yesterday's

poslední *pøslednøe* last

volba, f. *volbã* election

zpráva, f. *sprãvã* advice

den co den, *den tsø den*, day by day

co, něco *tsø, nøtsø* something

brzo hotovi, *børzo hotøvi*, soon done

přinesl *prshì-nessl* he brought

dopadnouti, *døpãdnoŭt*, to come

out, to result

podívej se, *pød'eevey sø*, look thou

podívejte se, *pød'eeveytø sø*, look

(you)

pokaždé, *pøkãždø* every time

též *tøž* also

věřiti, *vyø-rhivì*, *vyø-rshit*, to be-

lieve

nesmíte *nøsmøetø* you must not

pracovati *prãtsøvãt* to work

pracuje *prãtsøvyø* work

EXERCISES.

Kdo to byl?	Who was it?
To byl sousedův syn.	That was (our) neighbor's son.
Přinesl něco?	Has he brought something?
Přinesl nám noviny.	He brought (to) us a newspaper.
Sousedovy noviny?	Our neighbor's newspaper?
Ano, sousedovy noviny.	Yes, our neighbor's paper.
Jsou to denní nebo týdenní noviny?	Is it a daily or a weekly newspaper?
Je to denník.	It is a daily.
Jaký je to denník?	What daily is it?
Je to Denní Hlas.	It is the Daily Voice.
Bratrův hoch pracuje v té tiskárně, myslím.	My brother's boy works in that printing-office, I think.
Ano, a sousedova dcera též.	Yes, and (our) neighbor's daughter also.
Bratrova dcera chce tam pracovat též.	My brother's daughter wants to work there also.
A Hodanova Marie také.	And Mary Hodan too.
Je to dnešní list?	Is it to-day's paper?
Je dnešní; ale sousedův Jan také přinesl včerejší list.	It is to-day's; but (neighbor's) John also brought yesterday's paper.
Co je nového? Podívej se do dnešního listu.	What is the news? Look (thou) into to-day's paper.
Ve dnešním listu není mnoho nového; — jen něco o poslední volbě.	In to-day's paper there is not much news; only something about the last election.
Jak dopadla poslední volba?	How did the last election come out?
Hned to budu čísti.	I shall read it right away.
Budeme brzy hotovi s dnešním listem.	We shall soon be done with to-day's paper.
Denní listy vždycky (<i>dit-ski</i>) mají něco nového.	Daily papers always have something new.
Pravda, v denních listech je pekažď každé co čísti,	To be sure, in daily papers there is every time something to read.

<p>Ale nesmíte vždy věřiti denním listům.</p> <p>S denními listy je to tak : sloupce musí býti plné den co den.</p> <p>Proto jsou někdy falešné zprávy v denních listech.</p> <p>Proto ale přece rádi čteme denní listy.</p> <p>Čteme několik denních listů (<i>genit. case</i>, — “of the daily papers”).</p>	<p>But you must not always believe the daily papers.</p> <p>With the daily papers it is so; the columns must be full day by day.</p> <p>Hence there are sometimes false advices in daily papers.</p> <p>In spite of that we like to read the daily papers.</p> <p>We read several daily papers.</p>
--	---

Note 1. Adjectives ending in *i*, like *denní*, *duešní*, *poslední*, *včerejší*, have the same termination in all genders and both numbers; and in the singular of the feminine gender they remain unchanged in all cases: in the masculine and neutre gender the genitive case is characterized by the termination *ího*, the dative by *ímu*, the locative and instrumental by *ím*, — corresponding with *ého*, *ému*, *ém* & *ým* of the main order of adjectives.

In the plural, their declension is the same in all three genders, showing the termination *ích* in the genitive and locative, *ím* in the dative, and *imi* in the instrumental case.

Note 2. There is also a class of adjectives derived from nouns denoting persons or animals, by means of the suffixes *ův*, *ova*, *ovo*, according to gender. They are called “possessive adjectives”, and their sense is rendered in English by the “possessive case” of the noun :

<i>sousedův syn,</i>	<i>sošsedoof syn,</i>	the neighbor's son;
<i>sousedova dcera,</i>	<i>sošsedová tsěrá,</i>	the neighbor's daughter;
<i>sousedovo dítě,</i>	<i>sošsedově d'etě,</i>	the neighbor's child;
<i>sousedovi synové,</i>	<i>sošsedovi synově,</i>	the neighbor's sons;
<i>sousedovy dcery (děti),</i>	<i>sošsedovi tsěry (d'ěti),</i>	the neighbor's daughters (children).

From feminine nouns they are derived by the suffixes *in*, *ina*, *ino* (*iny* in the plural, in colloquial usage).

ženin klobouk, *žeňin kloboŭk*, the woman's (or wife's) bonnet;
ženiny šaty, *žeňiny šháty*, the woman's (or wife's) clothes or dress.

Grammatically, these adjectives have their own mode of declension; but colloquially, they are declined just like adjectives of the main order: **hodný, á, é.**

Note 3. A few more examples of such possessive adjectives as are commonly in use, in connection with nouns of different gender, will make the student sufficiently familiar with them:

Otec, *ŏtšts*, the father :

otecův klobouk, m. *ŏtsoof kloboŭk*, the father's hat;
otecova čepice, f. *ŏtsovã chěpitsě*, the father's cap;
otecovo místo, n. *ŏtsovŏ meestŏ*, the father's place;

Matka, *mãtkã*, the mother:

matčín pokoj, m. *mãtchin pôkoy*, the mother's room;
matčina stoliice, f. *mãtchinã stolitsě*, the mother's chair;
matčino slovo, n. *mãtchinŏ slovŏ*, the mother's word.

Sestra, *sestrã* the sister :

sestrín šál, m. *sest-rshin shawl*, the sister's shawl;
sestrina taška, f. *sest-rshinã táshkã*, the sister's satchel;
sestrino piano, *sest-rshinŏ piãno*, the sister's piano.

Hoch, *hŏkh*, the boy :

hochův míč, m. *hŏkhooŏf meečh*, the boy's ball;
hochova mapa, f. *hŏkhovã mãpã*, the boy's map;
hochovo pero, n. *hŏkhovŏ perŏ*, the boy's pen;

Holka, *holkã*, the girl :

holčín kufr, m. *holchin kŭff^er*, the girl's trunk;
holčina postel, f. *holchinã postell*, the girl's bed;
holčino prádlo, n. *holchinŏ prádlŏ*, the girl's linen.

REMARK. It will be noticed that in the derivatives from feminine nouns ending in **ka, ra**, the hard consonants **k, r**, change into the soft consonants **č, ř**: **matka, matčin; sestra, sestřin.**

LESSON XXII.

Mladý, á, é	<i>mládee</i>	young	přítel, m.	<i>prshee-tel</i>	friend
mladší	<i>mlád-shee</i>	younger	obchod, m.	<i>ob-hkôd</i>	business
nejmladší	<i>ney-mlád-shee</i>	youngest	obchodník, m.	<i>ob-khôd-ñeek</i>	mer-
starý, á, é	<i>stáree</i>	old			chant, business man;
starší,	<i>stár-shee</i>	older	krám, m.	<i>krám</i>	store
nejstarší	<i>ney-stár-shee</i>	oldest	sklad, m.	<i>sklád</i>	warehouse
bohatší	<i>bohát-shee</i>	richer	zboží, n.	<i>zbožee</i>	goods, stock
nejbohatší	<i>ney-bohát-shee</i>	richest			of goods;
chudší	<i>khúd-shee</i>	poorer	železný, á, é	<i>želěznee,</i>	of iron;
nejchudší	<i>ney-khúd-shee</i>	poorest	železné zboží,	<i>želězné zbožee,</i>	hard-
nejposlednější	<i>ney-posled-ñeyshee</i>	last of all, the very last			ware;
jak se jmenuje?	<i>yák sě menüyě,</i>	what is his name?	konkurent, m.	<i>concurent,</i>	compet-
buď jak buď, būď yák būď,		as it may; no matter how it is;			itor;
není-li pravda?	<i>neyñi-li právdā,</i>	isn't it so?	lidi, lidé,	<i>līdi, lidé,</i>	people
je-li možná!	<i>yelli mōžná,</i>	is it possible!	jeden z (ze),	<i>yěden z (zě),</i>	one of
já myslel,	<i>yá mis-lel,</i>	I thought	jeho	<i>yěhō</i>	his
oni myslí,	<i>oñi mislee,</i>	they think	zatím	<i>zāteem</i>	} on the contrary
bydlíte,	<i>bidleetě</i>	you live (reside)	naopak	<i>nā-opāk</i>	
známý, á, é	<i>známee,</i>	known; (used as a noun) acquaintance;	mezi	<i>mězi</i>	among
půl leta,	<i>pool letā,</i>	half a year;	přes	<i>prshēs</i>	over, across
			skoupý, á, é	<i>skoūpee</i>	miserly
			štedrý, á, é	<i>sh'edree</i>	liberal
			patří	<i>pātrshee</i>	belongs.
			ze všech,	<i>zě fshěkh,</i>	of all.

EXERCISES.

Jsem rád že jste tu.

Vy bydlíte teda v B.?

Ano; už přes rok.

Já mám přítele*) v B.

Je bohatý obchodník; — má veliký sklad — a krám plný zboží na Washington ulici.

Jaký má obchod?

Železné zboží. (Obchod v železném zboží).

Jak se jmenuje?

Jmenuje se Josef Baldwin; — znáte ho?

Znám ho; — je bohatý, — ale jeho konkurent p. Adams je bohatší, — a pan Fleming je nejbohatší.

Buď jak buď, pan Baldwin patří mezi nejbohatší obchodníky ve městě B.

Ano, jest jeden z nejbohatších obchodníků, — to je pravda.

Ale není pravda, že je skoupý; — naopak, on je tuze štědrý.

Jeho soused přes ulici, pan Wild, je také můj známý; — myslím že je posud chudý muž.

Ano, je prý chudší než lidi myslí; — však není ten nejchudší obchodník ve městě.

I am glad that you are here.

You live, then, in B.?

Yes; already over a year;

I have a friend in B.

He is a rich merchant; — he has a large warehouse — and a store full of goods on Washington street.

What business has he?

Hardware. (A hardware business).

What is his name?

His name is Joseph Baldwin; — do you know him?

I know him; — he is rich, — but his competitor Mr. Adams is richer, — and Mr. Fleming is the richest.

Be it as it may, Mr. Baldwin belongs among the richest business men in the city of B.

Yes, he is one of the richest merchants, — that is true;

But it is not true, that he is miserly; — on the contrary, — he is very liberal.

His neighbor across the street, Mr. Wild, is also my acquaintance; — I think that he is still a poor man.

Yes, he is said to be poorer than people think; — but he is not the poorest business man in town.

*) The noun **přítel** is somewhat irregular in its declension: **přítele**, *prshée-telě*, in the genitive and accusative case (of a friend: a friend); **příteli**, the dative, also the vocative (to a friend; friend!). The plural is **přátelé**, *prshá-telě*, the friends; **přátel**, *prshá-těl*, of the friends.

Váš Robert je klerkem*), není-li pravda?

Ano, je**) klerkem už půl leta.

Myslím že Robert bude dobrý obchodník (or dobrým obchodníkem).

Robert je pilný hoch, — ale Frank je pilnější, — a Edward je nej-pilnější ze všech.

Není Frank starší než Robert?

Ne; Robert je starší a Edward je nejstarší.

Je-li možná! — Já myslel, že Robert je mladší než Frank, — a Frank zatím je nejmladší.

Your Robert is a clerk, is he not?

Yes, he has been a clerk for half-a-year.

I think that Robert will be a good business man.

Robert is an industrious boy, — but Frank is more industrious, — and Edward is the most industrious of all.

Is not Frank older than Robert?

No, Robert is older, and Edward is the oldest.

Is it possible! — I thought that Robert was younger than Frank, — and Frank, on the contrary, is the youngest.

*) The noun *klerk* is here used in the instrumental case, answering the question *čím je?* *cheem yě*, what is he?

This is a common construction. — We may ask: **Co je váš syn?** *what is your son?*—The answer would be: **On je klerk,** *he is a clerk.*

We may also ask: **Čím je váš syn?** (which, in English, is identical with the first question;) the answer would be: **On je klerkem,** *he is a clerk.*

In a similar manner we say in Bohemian, using the instrumental case:

Jsem farmerem,	I am a farmer;
on je farmerem,	he is a farmer;
on je obchodníkem,	he is a merchant;
je generalem,	he is a general; etc.

) **Je, on je, on jest, *he is,* the simple present tense of *býti*, *to be*, is also used in Bohemian for the perfect tense *he has been.* (See Lesson IX. Note 1.) Similarly we say;

jsem tu rok,	I have been here a year;
já jsem tu rok,	“ “ “ “ “ “
jsem farmerem deset let,	I have been a farmer for ten years;
jsme doma týden,	we have been at home a week; etc.

Máte také dcery?

Mám dceru; je ještě mladší než
hoch Frank.

To je nejposlednější dítě.

To je má celá rodina.

Have you also daughters?

I have a daughter; she is still younger than the boy Frank.

That is the very last child.

That is my whole family.

Note 1. In the English language, the comparative degree of adjectives is formed either by adding **er**, or by placing **more** before them. young, *younger*; industrious, *more industrious*.

The superlative degree is formed either by adding **est (st)**, or by placing **most** before the adjective: *youngest*; *most industrious*.

In Bohemian, the comparative degree is formed by adding **ší** or **ější** (sometimes **ejší**) in place of the final **ý** (**á**, **é**):

mladý, **á**, **é** *mládee*, young; mladší, *mládshee*, younger;

pilný, **á**, **é** *pillnee*, industrious; piln-ější, *pillneyshee*, more industrious.

The superlative degree is always formed by prefixing **nej**, *ney*, to the comparative degree:

nej-mla dší, *neymládshee*, youngest;

nej-pilnější, *neypillneyshee*, most industrious.

Note 2. Some adjectives, in Bohemian as well as in English, have an irregular comparison. The most common of them are the following:

dobrý, *dobree*, good; lepší, *lepshee*, better;

zlý, *zlee*, bad; horší, *horshee*, worse;

malý, *málee*, small; menší, *menshee*, smaller;

velký, *velkee*, large; větší, *vyětšhee*, larger;

dlouhý, *dloūhee*, long; delší, *delshee*, longer;

vysoký, *visōkee*, high; vyšší, *vishee*, higher;

hluboký, *hlūbokee*, deep; hlubší, *hlūbshee*, deeper;

široký, *shīrokee*, wide; širší, *shīrshee*, wider;

daleký, *dālekee*, far; další, *dālshee*, farther;

blízký,	<i>bleskee,</i>	near;	bližší,	<i>blishee,</i>	nearer;
hezký,	<i>hesskee,</i>	pretty, (nice);	hezčí,	<i>hess-chee,</i>	prettier;
lehký,	<i>lěhkee,</i>	light;	lehčí,	<i>lěh-chee,</i>	lighter;
měkký,	<i>myěkee,</i>	soft;	měkčí,	<i>myěk-chee,</i>	softer.

The superlative is formed without exception by prefixing *nej* to the comparative.

LESSON XXIII.

Já jel,	<i>yá yell,</i>	I rode, I went;	domov, m.	<i>dómof,</i>	a home;
čekal,	<i>chekál,</i>	(he) waited;	obydlí, n.	<i>óbidlee,</i>	dwelling;
pravil,	<i>právil,</i>	(he) said;	světnice, f.	<i>swyětñitsě</i>	} room
vešel,	<i>věshell</i>	went in;	sednice, f.	<i>sedñitsě</i>	
psala,	<i>psálá,</i>	(she) wrote;	ložnice, f.	<i>lož-ñitsě,</i>	bedroom;
neviděl jsem,	<i>něviděl sem,</i>	I did not see;	dráha, f.	<i>dráhá,</i>	road, railroad;
milujém se,	<i>milüyem se,</i>	we love each other;	po dráze,	<i>pō drázě,</i>	by railroad;
postavím si,	<i>postáveem si,</i>	I shall build for myself;	nádraží, n.	<i>nádrá-žee,</i>	depot;
ať to stojí,	<i>ať tō stoyee,</i>	let it cost;	pohodlí, n.	<i>pōhodlee,</i>	comfort;
řka,	<i>rshká,</i>	saying;	pohodlný, á, é	<i>pōhod^elnee,</i>	comfortable;
řekl jsem,	<i>rshěkl sem,</i>	I said, I told;	švagrová,	<i>shwāgrová,</i>	sister-in-law;
I have said (told);			dítko, n.	<i>dēetkō,</i>	child, baby;
mluvil jsem,	<i>mlúvil sem,</i>	I have spoken; I spoke;	nemoc, f.	<i>němots,</i>	sickness;
slyšel jsem,	<i>slúshell sem;</i>	I have heard; I heard;	všelico,	<i>fshellitsě,</i>	different things;
sednouti si,	<i>sednoút si,</i>	to sit down;	dlouho,	<i>dloúhō,</i>	long, a long time;
tázati se,	<i>tízát sě,</i>	to ask, to inquire;	onehdy,	<i>ōněh-de,</i>	the other day;
			zdráv, a, o,	<i>zdráv,</i>	well, healthy;
			unaven, a, o,	<i>únáven,</i>	tired;
			takový, á, é,	<i>tākovee,</i>	such;
			vedle,	<i>vě-dlě,</i>	next to; side by side;
			věru,	<i>vyěřú,</i>	indeed;

zůstatí, <i>zoostát</i> , to stay, to remain;	pro	<i>prō</i>	for.
svlékni se, <i>svlékñi sě</i> , undress!	napřed,	<i>nāprshed</i> , first, ahead;	
lehl jsem si, <i>lě-hl sem si</i> , I lay down;			
se, sebe, <i>sě, sěbě</i> , oneself; myself	thysel, himself, herself, itself;		
	ourselves, yourselves, themselves;		
si, sobě, <i>si, sěbyě</i> , to oneself: to myself, etc. etc.			
sebou, <i>sěboŭ</i> , by or with oneself; etc. etc.			

EXERCISES.

Já jel*) onehdy do Chicago; — mám tam bratra; — chtěl jsem ho vidět, — též jeho obydlí; — on čekal na mě v nádraží. — Já přijel po dráze C. & NW.

Pravil mi: “Rád tě vidím, bratře! — Čekal jsem tebe; — ukážu ti můj domov. — Dáme tobě naši největší ložnici.

Musíš zůstatí u mě aspoň týden; — tak teda p jď se mnou.”

Řekl jsem mu, že já také rád ho vidím. — Jsi zdrav? tázal jsem se ho.

“Ano, jsem tuze zdrav”, pravil on; “má žena je také zdráva

I went the other day to Chicago; — I have a brother there;—I wanted to see him,— also his dwelling;— he waited for me at the depot.—I came by the C. & NW. railroad.

He said to me: “I am glad to see thee, brother!—I have been expecting thee; — I will show to thee my home.— We shall give (to) thee our largest bedroom.

Thou must stay with me (i. e. at my house) at least a week; — so, then, come with me.”

I told him that I also was glad to see him?— Are you well? I asked him.

“Yes, I am very well”, said he; “my wife is also well and the baby

*) *Jeti, yet'i* (commonly *yet*), to ride, to go by railroad or otherwise. Já jem jel, *yá sem yell*, I rode, I went, — I have gone; já jel, *yá yell*, is the past tense with the auxiliary *jsem* left out, as explained in Lesson X. The same applies to *já přijel, yá prshi-yell* I came (by train or other means of conveyance). From the verb *jeti, yet'i*, (or *yet*) to ride, or to go by some conveyance, about as many new verbs can be derived by prefixes as from *jíti, yet'i*, (or *yeet*) to go. See Lesson XIII, Note 6.

a dítě je také zdravo. — Jsme spokojeni a milujem se.”

A věru, na něm neviděl jsem žádnou nemoc. — Švagrová psala pravdu o něm, že je zdrav.

Šel jsem s ním. — Za půl hodiny byli jsme u něho. — Já šel napřed, on za mnou. — Jeho žena též ráda mě viděla; — ona také mě čekala.

Přinesl jsem jí všelico; — něco pro ní, něco pro její dítě. — Mluvil jsem s ní dlouho o všelichem, — a slyšel jsem od ní mnoho nového. — Ono bylo skoro všecko nové pro mě.

Myslil jsem si: Mají pěkný dům, — pohodlný domov. — Tolik světnic! — Já si postavím takový dům; — malou ložnici pro sebe a dvě veliké ložnice pro rodinu. — Postavím sobě též vedle písárnu.

Ať to stojí něco; — postavím to pro sebe. Anebo koupím si pěkný dům.

Sedl jsem si na sofa, řka: Jsem unaven!

“Udělej si pohodlí, — svlékni se,” — pravil bratr.

Já se svlékl a lehl jsem si.

is well, too.—We are contented and we love each other.”

And indeed, on him I didn't see any sickness.—Sister-in-law wrote the truth about him that he was well.

I went with him.— In half an hour we were at his house.—I went in first, he (followed) after me. — His wife also was glad to see me; — she also expected me.

I brought to her different things; — something for her, something for her baby.—I spoke with her long about different things,—and I heard from her many news.—It was nearly all news to me.

I thought to myself: They have a nice house,—a comfortable home.—So many rooms!—I shall build me such a house;—a small bedroom for myself, and two large bedrooms for the family. — I shall build myself also next to it an office.

Let it cost something; — I shall build it for myself.—Or, I shall buy me a nice house.

I sat down on the sofa, saying: I am tired!

“Make thyself comfortable,— undress (thyslf),” — said my brother.

I undressed and lay (myself) down.

Note 1. The personal pronouns **já, ty, on (ona, ono)**, show the following variation :

Já,	<i>yá,</i>	I;	ty,	<i>te,</i>	thou;
mě,	<i>myě,</i>	me;	tě tebe,	<i>tě, těbě,</i>	thee;
mi, mně,	<i>me, mñe,</i>	to me;	ti, tobě,	<i>ti, tobbyě,</i>	to thee;
se mnou,	<i>sě mnoŭ,</i>	with me;	s tebou,	<i>stěboŭ,</i>	with thee;
on, ono,	<i>ŏn, ŏnŏ,</i>	he it;			
ho,	<i>hŏ,</i>	him it;	ona,	<i>ŏnă,</i>	she;
jeho,	<i>yěhŏ,</i>	his, its;	ji, jí,	<i>ye, yee,</i>	her, to her;
mu, jemu, němu,	<i>mŭ, yěmŭ, ñěmŭ,</i>	to him, to it;	její,	<i>yěyee,</i>	her, hers;
		in him, in it;			
v něm,	<i>vñěm,</i>	in him, in it;	v ní,	<i>vñee,</i>	in her;
s ním,	<i>sñim,</i>	with him, with it;	s ní,	<i>sñee,</i>	with her.

Note 2. Adjectives sometimes take an indefinite form:

on je zdrav, *ŏn yě zdrav,* he is well (or healthy);

ona je zdráva, *ŏnă yě zdrávă,* she is well;

ono je zdravo, *ŏnŏ yě zdrávŏ,* it is well;

but when placed before a noun, the adjective must always have its definite form: **zdravý muž,** *zdrávee moož,* a healthy man; **zdravá žena,** *zdrávă ženă,* a healthy woman; **zdravé dítě,** *zdrávě d'etě,* a healthy child.

The followi g indefinite adjectives are of common occurrence:

nemocen,	<i>němotsen,</i>	instead of	nemocný,	<i>němotsnee,</i>	sick;
mrtev,	<i>m^ertev,</i>	“ “	mrtvý,	<i>m^ertvee,</i>	dead;
stár,	<i>stár,</i>	“ “	starý,	<i>stăree,</i>	old;
mocen,	<i>mŏtsen.</i>	“ “	mocný,	<i>motsnee,</i>	capable;
znám,	<i>znám,</i>	“ “	známý,	<i>známee,</i>	known;
vesel,	<i>vě-sell,</i>	“ “	veselý,	<i>vesslee,</i>	cheerful;
práv,	<i>práv,</i>	“ “	pravý,	<i>prăvee,</i>	just;
bos,	<i>bŏs,</i>	“ “	bosý,	<i>bosee,</i>	barefoot,

Adjectives ending in **vý** and **ný** frequently take the indefinite form in the nominative case, changing their termination into **v** and **eu** (**va, na** in the feminine, **vo, no** in the neutre gender).

Note 3. As observed in Note 2. Lesson XIII, the past tense of regular Bohemian verbs is formed from the infinitive by an **l** in place of the usual termination **ti** :

jeti,	<i>yeťi</i> or <i>yet,</i>	to ride;	jel,	<i>yell,</i>	rode;
čekati,	<i>chekăt,</i>	to wait;	čekal,	<i>chekăl,</i>	waited;
mluviti,	<i>mlüvit,</i>	to speak;	mluvil,	<i>mlüvil,</i>	spoke;

But some verbs ending in **outi** show a slight deviation from this rule, changing **outi** into **ul**, and having besides a short form of the past tense, in which the letter **l** is substituted for the whole termination **nouti**, being attached immediately to the stem of the verb :

lehnouti,	<i>leĥ-noŭťi</i> (or <i>leĥ-noŭt</i>),	to lie down;	lehnul,	<i>leĥ-nŭl,</i>	<i>lĕ-hl,</i>	lay down;
sednouti,	<i>sednoŭt,</i>	to sit down,	sednul,	<i>sednŭl,</i>	<i>sedl,</i>	sat down;
svléknouti,	<i>svlék-noŭt,</i>	to undress;	svléknul,	<i>svléknŭl,</i>	<i>svlékl,</i>	undressed.

The verb **svléknouti** has also an irregular form of the infinitive : **svléci,** *svléti-si.* In common conversation we hear **sliknout,** *slikl,* **slečeny,** *sleeknoŭt,* (to undress), *sleekl,* *slĕchĕnee* (undressed, — as past participle and adjective).

LESSON XXIV.

Ať jde,	<i>ăt dě,</i>	let him (her, it) come, or go;	to je škoda,	<i>tŏ yĕ shkořă,</i>	that is a pity;
zůstanem,	<i>zoostănem,</i>	we shall stay;	pohostění, n.	<i>pohŏstĕĕnee,</i>	hospitality;
zůstaň,	<i>zoostăň,</i>	stay (thou);	návštěva, f.	<i>năfshĕeva,</i>	visit;
ukaz,	<i>ŭkăsh,</i>	show (thou), let see;	často,	<i>chăstŏ,</i>	often;
přijeti,	<i>prshi-yet,</i>	to come (by railway, etc);	buď nebo,	<i>bŭď...nebŏ,</i>	either...or;
přijedem,	<i>prshi-yĕdem,</i>	we shall come (by some conveyance);	nemám co,	<i>nemăm tsŏ,</i>	I have nothing (to...);

líbí se mi, <i>leebec se me</i> , I like it (him, her); it pleases me;	přijedou, <i>prshi-yědoŭ</i> , they will come;
bude se jim líbit, <i>bŭdĕ se yim leebit</i> , they will like it; it will please them;	povídal jsem, <i>poveedĕl sem</i> , I said,
bude jim milé, <i>bŭdĕ yim milé</i> , it will please them;	slíbiti, <i>sleebit</i> , to promise;
doufám, <i>doŭfám</i> , I hope;	tajiti, <i>tĕyit</i> , to hide;
v Chicago*), <i>ſchicago</i> , in Chicago;	ukrývati, <i>ŭkreevĕt</i> , to cover up: to hide, to conceal;
	nemůžem, <i>nemoožem</i> , we can not;

EXERCISES.

My zůstanem v Chicago, — pravil bratr; — pro nás je to dobré místo; — ukaž nám lepší! — Ať rodina jde sem, — a zůstaň zde s námi.

Já pravil: Vy máte zde pěkný domov; — líbí se mi u vás; — myslím že často přijedem k vám, —

We shall stay in Chicago, — said (my) brother: — for us it is a good place; — show (to) us a better one! — Let (your) family come here. — and stay here with us.

I said: You have here a nice house; — I like it here (i. e. at your house, with you, — u vás); — I think that we

*) If we insist upon declining **Chicago** like a Bohemian noun of the neutre gender (ending in *o*), we should say in the locative case; **v Chicagu**, *ſchicagŭ*. However, this is rather an exception among the Bohemians in America, names of places of foreign origin being usually left unchanged, the same as in English. This may not exactly satisfy unyielding grammarians but it is a rule dictated by common sense, the inflection of such proper names being not only useless, but in many cases perfectly absurd, and often impossible. Hence we say: **do Milwaukee**, **v Milwaukee**, **za Milwaukee** (to Milwaukee, in M., beyond M.); **do Kewaunee**, **do Spring Valley**, **do Dubuque**, **do Des Moines**, etc. To attempt an inflection of such names, according to the rules of some declension of Bohemian nouns, would be an intolerable absurdity. The name of **Chicago**, indeed, yields easily to the Bohemian declension, and hence it is now and then declined, the same is true of some other names. There are also a few names of places well known throughout the world, which are always declined in Bohemian, presenting no difficulty to such a process; such are for instance: **New York**, — **v New Yorku**, **do New Yorku**, **za New Yorkem** (in New York, to N. Y., beyond N. Y.); **Boston**, — **v Bostonu**, **do Bostonu**, **za Bostonem**; **Washington**, **do Washingtonu**; and some others. — These names are masculine by force of their termination.

buď já, nebo jeden z nás. — Ale zůstatí s vámi nemůžem. — Náš domov je na venku.

Oni oba pravili: To je škoda!

Tázal jsem se jich, kdy přijedou k nám na návštěvu;—povídal jsem, že dáme jim také hezkou světnici; — že se jim bude líbit u nás, — jako se mně líbí u nich.

Slíbili přijeti na návštěvu. — Doufám že pohostění od nás bude milé jim, jako je milé mně od nich.

Ten den mluvil jsem s nimi dlouho; — nemám co tajiti před nimi; — nemám co ukrývati. — Tak mluvili jsme, až nebylo už co mluvíti.

shall often come to you, — either I, or one of us. — But to stay with you we can not. — Our home is in the country.

They both said: That is a pity!

I asked them, when they would come to us on a visit; — I said, that we should give (to) them also a nice room;—that they will like it at our place (u nás, — as I like it at their house (u nich).

They promised to come on a visit. — I hope that hospitality from us will be pleasing to them, as it is pleasing to me from them.

That day I spoke with them a long time; — I have nothing to hide from them;—I have nothing to conceal.— So we spoke, until there was no thing further to speak about.

Note. The personal pronouns **my, vy, oni** (ony f., ona, n.) show the following variation, which has already become somewhat familiar to the student from the preceding lessons :

my,	me,	we;	vy,	ve,	you;
nás,	nás,	us;	vás,	vás,	you;
nám,	nám,	to us;	vám,	vám,	to you;
s námi,	snámi,	with us;	s vámi,	svámi,	with you;

oni, (ony, ona,)	oňi, (šne, šnã),	they;
jich,	yikh,	of them, them;
jim,	yim,	to them;
je,	yě,	them:
v nich,	vñikh,	in them, (o nich, about them; od nich, from them; etc.)
s nimi,	sñime,	with them; (za nimi, behind or after them, etc.)

LESSON XXV.

Státi,	<i>státv (stát),</i> to stand; to cost;	tisíc, m.	<i>tíseets,</i>	thousand;
stojí,	<i>stoyee,</i> stands; costs;	stát, m.	<i>stát,</i>	state;
stál,	<i>stál,</i> stood; cost;	úcta, f.	<i>ootstá,</i>	respect;
mluví,	<i>mlůvee,</i> speaks;	rozprávka, f.	<i>roz-práfka</i> }	talk, con-
půjčil,	<i>půychil,</i> (colloquially : <i>půchil,</i> lent, loaned,	hovor, m.	<i>hůvor,</i> }	versation, discourse;
snáší se,	<i>snáshee sě,</i> agrees;	zoubek, m.	<i>zůbek,</i>	little tooth;
smál se,	<i>smál sě,</i> he laughed;	něco,	<i>ñetsů,</i>	some;
podívej se,	<i>poděevey sě,</i> look (thou):	než,	<i>nesh,</i>	than;
podívejte se,	<i>poděeveytě sě,</i> look (you);	rozen, a, o	<i>růzen</i> }	born
sejde se,	<i>seydě sě,</i> (he, she, it) will meet;	narozen, a, o	<i>nărăzen</i> }	born
		právě jako,	<i>právyě yáků,</i>	same as;
		nebyla u nás,	<i>nebillá ůnás,</i> she was not at our house; she has not been to see us.	

EXERCISES.

Můj bratr je posud mladý; — je mladší než já. — Já jsem o dvě leta starší než on.

Dům mého bratra stojí teprv rok; — stál pět tisíc*) dollarů; — soušel půjčil něco peněz mému bratru.

On má rád mého bratra; — on mluví o mém bratru s úctou. — S mým bratrem každý se snáší dobře.

My brother is still young; — he is younger than I. — I am (by) two years older than he.

The house of my brother stands only a year; — it cost five thousand dollars:—the neighbor loaned some money to my brother.

He likes my brother: — he speaks of my brother with respect.— With my brother everybody agrees well.

*) Jeden tisíc, *yěden tíseets*, one thousand; dva, tři, čtyry tisíce, *dwá, trshi, shtiri tíseetsě*, two, three, four thousand; pět tisíc, *pyět tíseets*, five thousand; šest tisíc, *shěst tíseets*, six thousand; and so forth.

Moje švagrová je ze státu Indiana*), — rozena v Terre Haute; — má žena je z Ohio.

Mojí švagrové**) líbí se v Chicagu tuze; — mé ženě líbí se více na venku.

Rozprávka neb hovor s mojí švagrovou jest milý, — velmi milý, — právě jako s mojí ženou. — Nevím kdy sejde se s mou ženou zas; — nebyla u nás dávno.

Podívejte se na moje dítě, — má už zoubek! — pravila švagrová a smála se. — Hošík také smál se na mě. — To je mé dobré dítě! pravila matka.

My sister-in-law is from the state of Indiana, — born in Terre Haute; my wife is from Ohio.

My sister-in law likes it in Chicago very much: — my wife likes it more in the country.

A conversation or discourse with my sister-in-law is pleasant, — very pleasant,—the same as with my wife. —I don't know when she will meet (with) my wife again;— she has not been to see us a long time

Look at my baby, — he has already a tooth!— said my sister-in-law and laughed.—The little boy also smiled at me.—That is my good baby! said (his) mother.

Note 1. The so-called possessive pronoun **můj**, *mŭy* (my, mine), takes in the feminine gender the form **moje**, *má*, and in the neutre gender **moje**, *mé*. Hence we say: **můj bratr**, my brother; **moje sestra**, or **má sestra**, my sister; **moje dítě** or **mé dítě**, my child — The variation of this pronoun is shown in the following table:

můj , m.	<i>mŭy</i> ,	moje , <i>má</i> , f.	<i>moyě, má</i> ;	my, mine;
mého ,	<i>méhě</i> ;	mojí , <i>mé</i> ,	<i>moyee, mé</i> ;	of my;
mému ,	<i>mémě</i> ;	mojí , <i>mé</i> ,	“ “ ;	to my;
v mém ,	<i>vmém</i> ;	v mojí , <i>v mé</i> ,	<i>v “ v “</i> ;	in my;
s mým ,	<i>smeem</i> ;	s mojí , <i>s mou</i> ,	<i>smoyee, smou</i> ,	with my;

*) Or **Indiany**. See foot-note in Lesson XXIV.

) **Mojí švagrové, *mé ženě*, is the dative case, responding to the question **komu?** (to whom?; **Komu se líbí?** to whom is it pleasing? (whom does it please?) — **Líbí se mé švagrové**; — **líbí se mé ženě**; — it pleases (to) my sister-in-law; it pleases (to) my wife.

The neutre gender **moje, mé**, shows in the other cases the same variation as the masculine **můj**, excepting the accusative (or objective) and the vocative case, which are like the nominative: **to je mé dítě**, this is my child; **vidím mé dítě**, I see my child; **ó mé dítě!** oh my child!

Note 2. The possessive pronoun **tvůj**, m., *tvůy* (*tvoje* or *tvá*, f., *tvůyě*, *tvá*; *tvoje* or *tvé*, n., *tvé.*, thy, thine, — agrees in its declension perfectly with **můj** (*moje, má, mé*).

The same is true of the possessive pronoun **svůj**, (*svoje, svá*, f.; *svoje, své*, n.), *svůy*, (*svůyě*, *svá*, *své*), which means "one's own", but frequently stands for **můj, tvůj, jeho, její** (my, thy, his, her), **náš, váš, jejich** (our, your, their).

Moji lidé,	<i>moye lidé,</i>	my folks;	radši jsem,	<i>rāchi sem,</i>	I like better
půda, f.	<i>poodā,</i>	ground, soil;			to be;
krov, m.	<i>krof,</i>	roof;	nejradši jsem,	<i>nejrāchi sem,</i>	I like
příbuzný,	<i>ā prshee-būznee,</i>	relative,			best to be;
		kinsman, relation;	nerad jsem,	<i>nerād sem,</i>	I do not
vlastní,	<i>vlast-nēe,</i>	own;			like to be;
šťasten,	<i>sh'āsten,</i>	happy:	sejdu se,	<i>seydū sē,</i>	I meet;
nazpět,	<i>nāspyēt,</i>	back;	kolem sebe,	<i>kolem sēbě,</i>	around me
spěchám,	<i>spyē-khām,</i>	I hasten, I			(him, her, us, etc.)
		hurry;			

EXERCISES.

Mí přátelé*) v Chicagu všichni rádi mě viděli; — škoda že moji lidé nebyli se mnou.

Nerad jsem pryč od mých lidí; — pokaždé spěchám nazpět k mým lidem.

Rád vidím své přátele; — rád se sejdu se svými příbuznými — ale

My friends in Chicago all liked (were glad) to see me; — it is a pity that my folks were not with me.

I do not like to be away from my folks; — every time I hasten back to my folks.

I like to see my friends; — I like to meet (with) my relatives; — but I like

*) See foot-note in Lesson XXII.

radši jsem doma. — Opravdu, nejradši jsem doma s mými lidmi.

Nejradši vidím kolem sebe své lidi. — Jsem šťasten se svými lidmi ve svém vlastním domově, — na své vlastní půdě, — pod svým vlastním krovem.

better to be at home. — Truly, I like best to be at home with my folks.

I like best to see around me my folks. — I am happy with my folks in my own home, — on my own ground, — under my own roof.

Note 2. The plural of **můj** m. **moje** or **má** f., and **moje** or **mé** n., is as follows : **moji**, **mí**, *moyi*, *mee*, m
moje, **mé**, *moyě*, *mé*, f.
moje, **má**, *moyě*, *má*, n.

In common discourse **moje**, **mé** is used in the neutre as well as in the feminine gender. In English, we invariably employ *my* and *mine*.

In the plural number the following variation takes place :

moji, **mí**; **moje mé**. *moyi*, *mee*; *moyě*, *mé*; — *my*, *mine*;
mých, *meeekh*, of *my* (**od mých**, from *my*; **v mých**, in *my*; etc.), of *mine*;
mým, *meem*, to *my*, to *mine*;
s mými, *smeeme*, with *my*, with *mine*; (**za mými**, after or behind *mine*, etc.)

The plural of **tvůj** m., **tvoje**, **tvá** f., **tvoje**, **tvé** n. (*thy*, *thine*) is perfectly analogous: **tvoji**, **tví** m., *twoji*, *twee*; **tvoje**, **tvé** f. & n. *twoyě*, *twé* (*thy*, *thine*); **tvých**, *tweekh*, of *thine*; **tvým**, *tweem*, to *thine*; **s tvými**, *stweemi*, with *thine*.

LESSON XXVI.

Základ , m. <i>záklád</i> ,	foundation;	zahrada , f. <i>zähráďď</i> ,	garden
kolik světnic , <i>kólik swyět-nīts</i> ,	how	zahrádka , f. <i>zähráďka</i> ,	small garden
	many rooms;	strom , m. <i>strom</i> ,	tree
kuchyně , f. <i>kůkhñe</i> ,	kitchen	stromy , pl. <i>stromy</i> ,	} trees
sklep , m. <i>sklep</i> ,	cellar	stromoví , n. <i>stromövee</i> ,	

patro, n.	<i>pátrǒ,</i>	story	ovoce, n.	<i>ǒvotsě,</i>	fruit
studně, f.	<i>stǔdňe,</i>	well	ovocné,	<i>ǒvotsné,</i>	fruit-bearing
cisterna, f.	<i>tsisternǎ,</i>	cistern	nesou,	<i>nesoŭ,</i>	they bear
altán, m.	<i>áltán,</i>	bower	mrva, f.	<i>m^ervǎ,</i>	manure
plot, m.	<i>plot,</i>	fence	v letě,	<i>vletě,</i>	in summer
docela,	<i>dotselǎ,</i>	quite	v zimě,	<i>vzimyě,</i>	in winter
úplně,	<i>oop^elňe,</i>	perfectly	z jara,	<i>zyřǎ,</i>	in the spring
dříve, <i>drshee-vě</i> (or <i>drsheev</i>))		} be- fore	půda, f.	<i>poodǎ,</i>	land
prve, <i>p^ervě,</i>			akr, m.	<i>ǎk^er,</i>	acre
je-li pravda?	<i>yelli prǎvdǎ</i>	} isn't it so?	zbytek, m.	<i>zby-tek,</i>	remainder
že ne?	<i>žě ně?</i>		je, jest, <i>yě,</i> <i>yest,</i>		there is, there are;
			pouze,	<i>použě,</i>	only.

EXERCISES.

Váš dům je nový, je-li pravda?
Ano, náš dům je docela nový.
Základ našeho domu je dobrý.

Ten velký lot patří k vašemu do-
mu, že ne?

Ten lot patří k našemu domu; —
je to zbytek akru půdy co jsme
měli dříve.

Co je ve vašem domě? kolik
světnic máte?

V našem domě je kuchyně, pět
světnic a dobrý sklep, — studený
v letě, teplý v zimě.

Doufám že jste spokojeni s va-
ším domem (or se svým domem).

Ano, jsme úplně spokojeni s na-
ším domem.

Váš dům má dvě patra, že ne?

Ne; pouze jedno patro.

Your house is new, isn't it?

Yes, our house is quite new.

The foundation of our house is
good.

That large lot belongs to your
house, does it not?

That lot belongs to our house; —
it is a remainder of the acre of land
(what) we had before.

What is in your house? how many
rooms have you?

In our house there is a kitchen,
five rooms and a good cellar, — cold
in summer, warm in winter.

I hope that you are satisfied with
your house.

Yes, we are perfectly satisfied
with our house.

Your house has two stories, hasn't
it?

No; only one story.

Myslím že máte u vašeho domu malou zahradu a za vaším domem studni, též cisternu.

Ano, naše místo je pěkné; — na naší zahradě máme altán; — kolem naší zahrady je vysoký plot. — Je to příjemná zahrádka.

I think that you have by your house a small garden and back of your house a well, also a cistern.

Yes, our place is nice; — in our garden we have a bower; — around our garden there is a high fence. — It is a pleasant little garden.

Naši lidé mají rádi stromoví*). — Naše stromy jsou ovocné. — Z jara dáváme**) mrvu k našim ovocným stromům. — Rád sedám**) s našimi lidmi ve stínu našich stromů.

Our folks like trees. — Our trees are fruit-bearing. — In the spring we put manure to our fruit-trees. — I like to sit with our folks in the shadow of our trees.

Note 1. The possessive pronoun **náš**, (**naše**, f. and n.) shows the following variation:

(*Masculine and neutre gender.*)

náš , m. naše , n	<i>násh, năshĕ,</i>	our, (ours),
našeho ,	<i>năshĕhĕ,</i>	of our; our (in the accus. or objective case);
našemu ,	<i>năshĕmĕ,</i>	to our;
v našem ,	<i>vnăshĕm,</i>	in our, (o našem, about our; etc);

(*Feminine gender.*)

naše ,	<i>năshĕ,</i>	our, ours;
naši ,	<i>năshi,</i>	our (in the accus. or objective case);
naši ,	<i>năshee,</i>	of our, to our; (v naši, in our: s naši, with our; etc.)

*) **Stromoví**, *stromĕvee*, is a collective noun and means trees (**stromy**) in general.

) **Dáti, *dát'i*, to give: **dávati**, *dávăt'i*, to give repeatedly, to use to give; **dáváme**, *dávámĕ*, we use to give; we are giving. See Lesson XIII, Note 5. — **Seděti**, *sedĕt'i*, to sit; **sedáti**, *sedăt'i*, to sit repeatedly, to use to sit; **sedám**, I use to sit.

(Plural of all genders.)

naši, m. naše, f. & n. *nāshi, nāshě*, our, ours;

našich, *nāshikh*, of our; (v našich, in our; etc.)

naším, *nāshim*, to our;

s našimi, *snāshimi*, with our: (za našimi, beyond or back of our; etc.)

Note 2. The pronoun *váš* (*vaše*, f. and n.) is perfectly analogous with *náš* in its declension. (Instrumental case m. & n. gender singular, omitted above: s naším, s vaším, *snāsheem, svāsheem*, with ours, with yours.)

The English words *their* and *theirs* are both expressed by **jich**, — in common discourse nearly always **jejich**; *yikh, yěyikh*. This is in fact the genitive of the personal pronoun **oni** (*ony, ona*), *they*, and naturally remains unchanged. For instance:

Jich dům, jich domy, or jejich dům, jejich domy; *yikh dům, dōmi; yěyikh dům, dōmi;* their house, their houses.

Ten dům jest jejich, ten dům yest yěyikh, that house is theirs. — **Ty domy jsou jejich, ty dōmi sou yěyikh,** those houses are theirs.

LESSON XXVII.

The student is already somewhat acquainted with the indicative pronouns **ten, ta, to**, this *or* that; plural: **ti, ty, ta, t'i, ty, t'á**, these *or* those (in common discourse **ty** for all genders). Hence, in a short practical review of their variations he will only meet old acquaintances.

Lidé,	<i>lidé</i> }	people		kuželna,	<i>kůželnā,</i>	bowling-alley;
lidi,	<i>lid'i</i> }			zábava,	<i>zábāvā,</i>	amusement;
stavěti,	<i>stāv'yēt,</i>	to build		bydlí,	<i>bidlee,</i>	lives; they live;
stavení,	<i>stāvě'nee,</i>	building		co bydlí,	<i>tsō bidlee,</i>	who lives
zděný dům,	<i>zd'enee dům</i> }	} brick				(lit. what lives);
cihelný dům,	<i>tsihelnee dům</i> }			house	nic nechybí,	<i>ñits někhibee,</i>
střecha,	<i>strshě-khā,</i>	roof				is wanting.

šindel,	<i>shindell,</i>	shingle	může,	<i>moožě,</i>	can, may;
učitel,	<i>učitell,</i>	teacher	býti za dobré,	<i>bee'ti za dobré,</i>	to be
pokojný, á, é,	<i>pőkoynee,</i>	quiet			on good terms;
prázdný, á, é,	<i>práznee,</i>	vacant	na pravo,	<i>ně prāvě,</i>	to the right;
jistě,	<i>yistě,</i>	surely, certainly;	na levo,	<i>ně lěvě,</i>	to the left.

EXERCISES.

Ten dům je věru pěkný; — je to zděný dům.

Střecha toho domu je ze šindele, není?

Myslím že je. — Nic nechybí tomu domu; — jest příjemno bydleti v tom domě; — s tím domem každý může býti spokojen.

That house is indeed nice; -- it is a brick house.

The roof of that house is of shingle (i. e. covered with shingles), is it not?

I think it is. — Nothing is wanting to that house; — it is agreeable to live in that house; — with that house everybody can be satisfied.

Ta zahrada má velkou cenu. — V té zahradě je mnoho ovocného stromoví.

Tu zahradu mám radši než park. — Máme také kuželnu v té zahradě, pro naši (or pro svou) zábavu.

To místo s tím stavením a s tou zahradou má vysokou cenu.

That garden has a large value. — In that garden there are many fruit-trees.

That garden I like better than a park. — We have also a bowling-alley in that garden, for our amusement.

That place with the building and garden has a high value.

Ti lidé co bydlí vedle nás, jsou pokojní sousedé; — žádný z těch lidí není zlý; — se všemi těmi lidmi jsme za dobré.

Viděl jsem doktora jíti k těm lidem na pravo od nás; — jistě někdo je nemoceu.

The people who live next to us, are quiet neighbors; — nobody (not one) of those people is bad; — with all those people we are on good terms.

I saw the doctor go to those people to the right of us; — surely somebody is sick.

Kdo jsou ti lidé na levo? — Na levo od nás bydlí učitel, pan Stanton, se svou (i. e. s jeho) rodinou.

Ty loty za námi jsou prázdné; — ale budou prý stavět na těch lotech.

Kolik těch lotů je? — Myslím že je šest těch lotů.

Who are those people to the left? — To the left of us lives a teacher, Mr. Stanton, with his family.

Those lots back of us are vacant, — but, it is said, they will build on those lots.

How many of those lots are there? — I think that there are six of those lots.

Note 1. The variation of the indicative pronouns employed in the foregoing is shown to be as follows :

ten, m. to, n. <i>těn, tě</i> , this, that;	ta, f. <i>tā</i> , this, that;
toho, <i>těhō</i> , of this, of that;	tu, <i>tū</i> , this, that (accus. or objec. case);
tomu, <i>těmū</i> , to this, to that;	té, <i>té</i> , to this, to that; v <i>té</i> , in that; o <i>té</i> , about that, etc.
v tom, <i>ftōm</i> , in this, in that; (o tom, about that; etc).	s tou, <i>stōū</i> , with this, with that;
s tím, <i>sťeem</i> , with this, with that; (za tím, beyond that; etc.	za tou, behind that; etc.

Plural:

ti, ty, ta,	these, those;
těch,	<i>ťekh</i> , of those; v <i>těch</i> , <i>ftekh</i> , in those; etc.
těm,	<i>ťem</i> , to those;
s těmi,	<i>sťemi</i> , with those;
za těmi,	behind those; etc.

These indicative pronouns often occur in a compound form: *tento, tato, toto*, always meaning "this one"; in the plural: *tito, tyto, tato*, "these ones". Their inflection remains the same, with the suffix *to* attached to the original pronoun in every case: *tohoto*, to this one; *tomuto*, of this one; and so forth.

Note 2. The numeral **jeden** (f. and n. **jedna, jedno**), *yěden, yědnā, yědnō*, one, — agrees perfectly with **ten**, (**ta, to**) in its inflection:

jeden člověk tam byl, one man was there;

viděl jsem jen jednoho (accus. or objective case) I saw only one;

dal jsem to jednomu z nich (*zñíkh*), I gave it to one of them;

v jednom z nich se mejlím*, in one of them I am mistaken;

šel jsem s jedním z nich, I went with one of them.

Jedna žena je zde, one woman is here; — **vidím jednu ženu**, I see one woman; — **mám to od jedné z nich**, I have it from one of them f.); — **mluvil jsem s jednou**, I spoke with one (f.).

LESSON XXVIII.

Sem ,	<i>sēm</i> ,	hither, here;	lék , m.	<i>lěk</i> ,	medicine;
sám ,	<i>sám</i> ,	alone;	lahev , f.	<i>lāhev</i> ,	bottle;
čekáte ,	<i>chekátě</i> ,	you expect, you await (or you wait);	v lahvi ,	<i>vlāh-vi</i> ,	in the bottle;
nečekám ,	<i>něchekám</i> ,	I do not expect;	dávka , s.	<i>dáfká</i> ,	dose;
že přijde ,	<i>žě prshiy-dě</i> ,	that he will (or would) come;	po dávkách ,	<i>pō dáfkákh</i> ,	in doses;
na ulici ,	<i>nā ūlitsi</i> ,	on the street,	nastuzen ,	<i>nāstūzen</i> ,	having a cold;
že jste?	<i>žě stě?</i>	you say you are?	jste nastuzen ,	<i>stě nāstūzen</i> ,	you have a cold;
že s nikým?	<i>žě sñikeyem</i> ,	(literally: that with nobody?) you say with nobody?	nastuzení , n.	<i>nāstūzeñee</i> ,	a cold;
			kašel , m.	<i>kāshell</i> ,	cough;
			dáti vinu ,	<i>dátvi vinū</i> ,	to charge to; to blame (for);
			myslití ,	<i>mysliti</i> ,	to think;

*) **Mejliti se, mýliti se**, *meylit sě, meelit sě*, to be mistaken; **mejlím se, meyleem sě**, I am mistaken. — **Zmejliti se, zmýliti se**, *zmeylit sě, zmeelit sě*, to make a mistake; **zmejlil jsem se, zmejlil sem sě**, I made a mistake.

neotevru.	<i>něo-lev-rů,</i>	I shall not	mazati se, <i>mázat'í sě,</i> to rub oneself;
		open;	užívat, <i>ůžeevat,</i> to take medicine,
jindy,	<i>yindy,</i>	before; at other	'otherwise: to use);
		times;	mazat se, <i>mázat sě,</i> to rub one's
tohle,	<i>těhlě,</i>	this here:	self.

EXERCISES.

Myslím že někdo jde sem; — kdo je to?

Nevím; — koho čekáte?

Neč-kám nikoho; — dnes chci býti sám; nechci viděti nikoho.

Komu poslal jste to pozvání? — Nikomu.

O kom myslil jste včera, že přijde?—O nikom.

S kým mluvil jste dnes ráno na ulici?—S nikým.

Že s nikým? — Vy se mejlíte. — Viděl jsem vás státi s někým na ulici.

Pravda; ale dnes nečekám nikoho.— Je někdo zde; opravdu?

I ne; žádný tu není. — Nevidím žádného a neotevru žádnému. — Já vím, že dnes nechcete mluvit se žádným.

I think that somebody is coming here; who is it?

I do not know; — whom do you expect?

I do not expect anybody; — to-day I want to be alone; — I do not want to see anybody.

To whom did you send that invitation? — To nobody.

Of whom did you think yesterday, that he would come? — Of nobody.

With whom did you speak this morning on the street? — With nobody.

You say, with nobody?—You are mistaken.—I saw you standing with somebody on the street.

That is true; but to day I do not expect anybody. — Is somebody here, really?

O no; nobody is here. — I do not see anybody, and I shall not open to anybody. — I know that to-day you do not want to speak with anybody.

Zde něco máte; — co to je?
 To je lék.
 Jste nemocen?
 Mám nastuzení a zlý kašel.
 Že jste nastuzen? — od čeho to je?

Nevím čemu dáti vinu.

K čemu je ten lék?
 Budu ho užívat po dávkách.
 A co je v tom? — V čem? — V té malé lahvi. — To je liniment.

Co s tím budete dělat? — S čím?
 S tím linimentem.

Tím se budu mazat.
 Čím jste se jindy mazal? — Ničím.

Here you have something;—what is it?

That is medicine.

Are you sick?

I have a cold and a bad cough.

You say you have a cold?—what is it from?

I do not know, to what I should charge it.

What is that medicine for?

I shall take it in doses.

And what is in that?—In what?—In that small bottle. — That is a liniment.

What will you do with that? — With what?—With that liniment.

With that I shall rub myself.

With what did you rub yourself before?—With nothing.

Note. The student is, by this time, quite familiar with the interrogative pronouns **kdo, co, gďď, tsď**, (who, what). This lesson is designed simply to serve as a review of their variation, already shown in Note 5, Lesson XVIII.

Kdo, co, *gďď, tsď*, who, what;

koho, čeho, *kďhď, čěhď*, whose, whom; of what; **od koho, (čeho),** from whom (what);

komu, čemu, *kďmď, čěmď*, to whom, to what; **k čemu, kčěmď**, what for;

v kom, v čem, *fkom, fčem*, in whom, in what; **o kom, o čem**, about whom (what); etc.

kým, čím, *keem, cheem*, by whom, by what; **s kým, s čím**, with whom, with what.

LESSON XXIX.

Číslo, n.	<i>cheeslō,</i>	number;	zdálo se,	<i>zdálō sě,</i>	it seemed;
pověra, f.	<i>povyěřā,</i>	superstition;	stěhovat se,	<i>sťehovāt sě,</i>	to move:
u stolu,	<i>ústolū,</i>	at (or by) the table;	vystěhovat se,	<i>vy-sťehovāt sě,</i>	to emigrate;
roku,	<i>rōkū,</i>	in the year;			
po roce,	<i>pō rotsě,</i>	after a year;	přestěhovat se,	<i>prshě-sťehovāt sě,</i>	to remove;
		in a year;			
všecko,	<i>fshětsko,</i>	everything, all;	usadit se,	<i>ūsād'it sě,</i>	to settle;
nynější,	<i>nyñeyshee,</i>	present;	odtud,	<i>ōtūd</i>	} from here,
sousední,	<i>soūsedñee,</i>	neighboring;	odsud,	<i>ōtsūd</i>	
společně,	<i>spolechñe,</i>	jointly,	odtamtud,	<i>ōtām'tūd,</i>	from there;
		together;	kolik je,	<i>kōlik yě,</i>	how many
pres,	<i>prshēs,</i>	over;			are; how much is;
před,	<i>prshěd,</i>	before, ago;	vám je,	<i>vām yě,</i>	you are;
teda,	<i>tědā,</i>	therefore;	že je,	<i>žě yě,</i>	(that) there is,
o to více,	<i>ō tō veetsě.</i>	so much more;			(that) there were;
pouhý, á, é,	<i>poŭhee,</i>	pure, mere;	to prý je,	<i>tō pree yě,</i>	that is said
nešťastný, á, é	<i>něshťástnee,</i>	unlucky, unfortunate;			to be.

Jedenáct,	<i>yědenátst,</i>	eleven	čtyrycet,	<i>shtiritsēt,</i>	forty
dvanáct,	<i>dwānátst,</i>	twelve	padesát,	<i>pādēsāt,</i>	fifty
třináct,	<i>trshinátst,</i>	thirteen	šedesát,	<i>shědēsāt,</i>	sixty
čtrnáct,	<i>sht^ernátst,</i>	fourteen	sedmdesát,	<i>sedūmdēsāt,</i>	seventy
patnáct,	<i>pātnátst,</i>	fifteen	osmdesát,	<i>osūmdēsāt,</i>	eighty
šestnáct,	<i>shěstnátst.</i>	sixteen	devadesát,	<i>děvādēsāt,</i>	ninety
sedmnáct,	<i>sedūmnátst,</i>	seventeen	sto jeden,	<i>stō yěden,</i>	one hundred
osmnáct,	<i>osūmnátst,</i>	eighteen			and one

devatenáct, <i>děvátěnáct</i> , nineteen	sto dva, <i>stě dvě</i> , one hundred
dvacet, <i>dváctset</i> , twenty	and one
dvacet jeden, <i>dváctset yěden</i> , twenty	sto dvacet, <i>stě dváctset</i> , one hundred
one	and twenty
dvacet dva, <i>dváctset dvě</i> , twenty two	dvě stě, <i>dvoyě stě</i> , two hundred
třicet, <i>trshitset</i> , thirty	tři sta, <i>trshi stá</i> , three hundred
třicet jeden, <i>trshitset yěden</i> , thirty	čtyry sta, <i>shtiri stá</i> , four hundred
one	pět set, <i>pyět set</i> , five hundred
třicet dva, <i>trshitset dvě</i> , thirty two	šest set, <i>shest set</i> , six hundred; etc.

tisíc, <i>tiseets</i> , a thousand	čtyry miliony, <i>shtiri milliōny</i> , four
tisíc jedno sto, <i>tiseets yedně stě</i> , one thousand one hundred;	millions;
tisíc pět set, <i>tiseets pyět set</i> , one thousand five hundred;	pět milionů, <i>pyět milliōnoo</i> , five mil-
dva tisíce, <i>dvá tiseetsě</i> , two thousand;	lions;
tři tisíce, <i>trshi tiseetsě</i> , three thousand;	šest milionů, <i>shest milliōnoo</i> , six
čtyry tisíce, <i>shtiri tiseetsě</i> , four thousand;	millions; etc.
pět tisíc, <i>pyět tiseets</i> , five thousand; etc.	—
tisíc osm set devadesát, <i>tiseets osům set děvāděsát</i> , one thousand eight hundred and ninety;	Jednotka, <i>yědnōtkā</i> , a unit;
milión, <i>milliōn</i> , a million;	dvojka, <i>dvoykā</i> , a two; the figure two;
dva milióny, <i>dvá milliōny</i> , two millions;	trojka, <i>troykā</i> , a three;
tři milióny, <i>trshi milliōny</i> , three millions;	čtyrka, <i>čtverka</i> , <i>shtirkā</i> , <i>shtverka</i> , a four;
	pětka, <i>pyětškā</i> , a five;
	desítka, <i>dě-seetkā</i> , a ten;
	dvacítká, <i>dváctsetkā</i> , a twenty;
	třicítka, <i>trshitsetkā</i> , a thirty;
	čtyřicítka, <i>shtiritsetkā</i> , a forty;
	padesátka, <i>pāděsátkā</i> , a fifty; etc.
	stovka, <i>stofkā</i> , a hundred;
	tisícovka, <i>tiseetsofkā</i> , a thousand.

EXERCISES.

Kolik je nás u stolu? — Je nás dvanáct. — To je dobře; já myslel že je nás třináct a to prý je nešťastné číslo.

I, to je pouhá pověra!

How many are we at the table? — There are twelve of us. — That is right; I thought there were thirteen of us, and that is said to be an unlucky number.

O, that is a mere superstition.

Kolik akrů má vaše farma? — Sto šedesát akrů. — A farma vašeho otce? — Otec má tři čtyřicítky; já mám o čtyřicet akrů více.

Moje farma stála o tisíc dollarů více, nežli farma otcova.

Oba máte dobré farmy; — obě farmy jsou dobré. — To jsou dvě pěkné farmy.

Jaká je asi nynější cena těch dvou farem? — Asi devět tisíc dollarů.

Nám dvoum*) také patří osmdesátka lesa v sousedním townshipu.

Vám oboum*)? — Ano, nám dvoum*) společně.

Kdy jste se tu usadili?

Otec usadil se tu před čtyřmi lety; — já též; strýc před dvoama*) nebo třemi lety.

How many acres has your farm? — One hundred and sixty acres.—And the farm of your father? — Father has three forties; I have forty acres more.

My farm cost one thousand dollars more than my father's farm.

Both of you have good farms; — both farms are good. — Those are two nice farms.

What is about the present price of those two farms?—About nine thousand dollars.

To us two also belongs an eighty of forest in the neighboring township.

To both of you?— Yes, to us two jointly.

When did you settle here?

Father settled here four years ago; — I also; uncle two or three years ago.

*) In ordinary discourse always : *dvoum, oboum, dvořm, obořm*, to the two, to both; *před dvouma, před obouma, prshěd dvořmā, prshěd obořmā*, before two, before both. — The precise grammatical form is: *dvěma, oběma, dwyřmā, obyřmā; před dvěma, před oběma*.

Nám třem zdálo se, že musíme
bydleti pohromadě.

My vystěhovali se z Evropy²⁾ do
Ameriky²⁾, — usadili se v Ohio, —
po roce přistěhovali jsme se do stá-
tu Illinois, odtud po dvou nebo
třech letech do Nebrasky²⁾, a od-
tud po pěti letech do Kansasu.

Kdy jste narozen? — Roku tisíc
osm set padesát dva. — Teda je
vám třicet osm let.

Jak starý je váš otec? — Můj otec
je přes šedesát; můj strýc je sko-
ro sedmdesát let stár; — je o pět
let starší než můj otec.

Já jsem jen o rok starší než má
sestra a o tři leta starší než můj
bratr.

To us three it seemed that we
must live together.

We emigrated from Europe to A-
merica, — settled in Ohio, — after a
year we removed to the state of Illi-
nois, from there after two or three
years to Nebraska, and from there
after five years to Kansas.

When were you (“are you”) born?
— In the year one thousand eight
hundred fifty-two. — Then you are
thirty eight years.

How old is your father? — My
father is over sixty; — my uncle is
nearly seventy years old;—he is five
years older than my father.

I am only one year older than my
sister and three years older than my
brother.

Note 1. We have seen that the numeral **jeden** is declined (Note 2, Lesson XXVII). The same is true of the numerals **dva**, **tři**, **čtyry** and **oba**. The feminine and neutre gender of **dva** and **oba** is **dvě**, **obě**; but the inflected cases are the same in all three genders. **Čtyry** is used in the feminine and neutre gender, and in connection with *inanimate* nouns of the masculine gender: **čtyry ženy**, **čtyry děti**, **čtyry domy** (four women, four children, four houses); whereas the masculine inanimate use **čtyři**; for instance: **čtyři muži**, **čtyři hoši** (four men, four boys). Colloquially, however, **čtyry** is used without any discrimination.

²⁾ **Evropa**, **Amerika**, *ěvropă*, *ămerikă*; **z Evropy do Ameriky**, *zěvropy dăămeriky*, from Europe to America. **Nebraska**, **do Nebrasky**, *to Nebraska*. **Kansas**, **do Kansasu**, *to Kansas*. — **Evropa**, **Amerika**, **Nebraska**, are feminine, **Kansas** is masculine, by reason of their termination. See also foot-note in Lesson XXIV.

The variation of these numerals is set forth in the following exposé:

dva, oba m., dvě, obě, (f. & n.) *dvā, obā, dvyě, obyě*, two, both;

dvou, obou, *dvoŭ, oboŭ*, of two, of both;

dvěma, oběma, (colloq. dvoum, oboum), dvyěmā, obyěmā, (dvoŭm, oboŭm),
to two, to both; **se dvěma, s oběma, (se dvouma, s obouma)** with two, with both; etc.

tři, čtyři (čtyry), *trshi, stírshi (shírí)*, three, four;

tří, třech; čtyř, čtyrech; *trshee, trshekh, shtir, shtírekh;* of three, of four; **ve třech, ve čtyrech,** in three, in four; etc.

třem, čtyřem, *trshem, shtírem*, to three, to four;

se třemi, se čtyřmi, sě trshěmi, sě shtírmi (colloq. **se třema, se čtyřma,**
with three, with four.

Note 2. The adverbial numerals *once, twice, three times, four times*, etc., are formed in Bohemian by adding the suffix **krát** to the cardinal number: **jedenkrát, dvakrát, třikrát, čtyřkrát**, etc.

In place of **jedenkrát, yědenkrát**, (once), the shorter form **jednou, yědnoŭ**, is generally employed:

Kolikrát jste tam byl? how many times have you been there? — **Jen jednou;** only once.

Kolikrát se to stalo? how many times has it happened? — **Myslím že dvakrát;** I think (that) twice.

Note 3. The ordinal numbers are as follows:

první,	<i>p^ervñee,</i>	first	šestý,	<i>shěstee,</i>	sixth
druhý,	<i>drŭhee,</i>	second	sedmý;	<i>sedmee,</i>	seventh
třetí,	<i>trshěťee,</i>	third	osmý,	<i>osmee,</i>	eighth
čtvrtý,	<i>shťv^ertee,</i>	fourth	devátý,	<i>děvátée,</i>	ninth
pátý,	<i>pátée,</i>	fifth	desátý,	<i>dessátée,</i>	tenth

From eleven to nineteen they are formed by appending *ý* to the cardinal number (corresponding with the English *th*): **jedenáctý**, *yědenáctee*, eleventh; etc.

Dvacet, **třicet**, **čtyrycet** have **dvacátý**, **třicátý**, **čtyřecátý**, *dwátsátý*, *trshítsátée*, *shtírítsátée* (twentieth, thirtieth, fortieth). The rest of the tens are regular: **padesátý**, *păděsátée*, fiftieth, etc. — **Stý**, *stee*, one hundredth; **tisící**, *tšiseetsee*, one thousandth.

Dvacátý první, twenty first; **dvacátý druhý**, twenty second; etc. Both tens and units take the ordinal form.

There is also a distinction of gender, the feminine terminating in **á** and the neutre in **é** (in place of the masculine *ý*), corresponding exactly with the adjectives: **dobrý**, **á**, **é** (see Note 2, Lesson VI).

Hence we say: **druhý muž**, **druhá žena**, **druhé dítě**, the second man, the second woman, the second child;

The plural form **druzí**, **druhé**, *drůžee*, *drůhé*, means "the others".

První, **třetí**, have the same termination in every gender, like adjectives ending in **í**. (See Note 1, Lesson XXI.)

Ordinal numbers are declined like adjectives of a corresponding termination: **prvního muže**, of the first man; **druhého dne**, of the second day (or: on the next day); **druhé ženy**, of the second woman (or wife); **druhého dítěe**, of the second child; **druhému**, to the second; **v druhém**, in the second; **s druhým**, with the second.

Note 4. The adverbs formed from cardinal numbers by means of the suffix **fold**, denoting multiplication, are in Bohemian called special numerals and formed as follows:

dvoji ,	<i>dwoyee</i> ,	twofold	paterý ,	<i>pătěree</i> ,	fivefold
trojí ,	<i>troyee</i> ,	threefold	šesterý ,	<i>shěštěree</i> ,	sixfold
čtverý ,	<i>shtwěree</i> ,	fourfold	sedmerý ,	<i>sedměree</i> ,	sevenfold;

and so forth, always appending **erý** to the cardinal number (in the feminine gender **erá**, in the neutre **eré**).

From these there is derived a distinct class of multiplicative numerals by changing *erý* into *ero* and appending *násobný* (which in English also means *fold*), only the first three forming an exception:

dvojnásobný,	<i>dvoy-násobnee,</i>	twofold (double);
trojnásobný,	<i>troy-násobnee,</i>	threefold (treble);
čtvernásobný,	<i>shcer-násobnee,</i>	fourfold (quadruple);
pateronásobný,	<i>päterö-násobnee,</i>	fivefold (quintuple): etc.

LESSON XXX.

Všecek,	<i>fshětsck, m.</i>	} all, whole)	silný,	<i>silnee,</i>	strong
všecka,	<i>fshětská, f.</i>		silně,	<i>silně,</i>	strongly
všecko, vše,	<i>fshětsko. fshě, n.</i>		silněji,	<i>silněyi,</i>	more strongly
prodej, m.	<i>proděy,</i>	sale	nejsilněji,	<i>neysilněyi,</i>	most strongly
výprodej, m.	<i>veeproděy,</i>	selling out;	pěkně,	<i>pyčkňe,</i>	nicely
zásoba, f;	<i>zásobá,</i>	stock	hluboký,	<i>hlūbokee,</i>	deep
látka, f.	<i>látká,</i>	stuff	hluboko,	<i>hlūbōkō</i>	} deeply
látka na šaty,	<i>látká nā shāte,</i>	dress-goods;	hluboce,	<i>hlūbotsě</i>	
známka, f.	<i>známkā,</i>	label	velice,	<i>vělitsě,</i>	greatly
kupec, m.	<i>kūpets,</i>	buyer, purchaser,	hezký,	<i>hesskee,</i>	nice, pretty, fine;
(kupci, pl. kúptsi)			hezky,	<i>hesske,</i>	nicely, prettily, finely
odkupník, m.	<i>odkūpñeek,</i>	customer	český,	<i>chesskee,</i>	Bohemian
věc, f.	<i>vyěts,</i>	thing, article;	česky, (adv.),	<i>chesske,</i>	“
výdělek, m.	<i>veedělek,</i>	profit	po česku,	<i>pō chesskū,</i>	in Bohemian
vůle, f.	<i>voolě,</i>	will	anglicky, (adv.),	<i>ānglitske,</i>	English
základ, m.	<i>zákłād,</i>	foundation	francouzsky,	<i>frāntsoūške,</i>	French
základní,	<i>zákłādñee,</i>	fundamental	španělsky,	<i>shpāñelski,</i>	Spanish
kámen, m.	<i>kámen,</i>	stone	německy,	<i>ñemetske,</i>	German
zármutek, m	<i>zármutek,</i>	sorrow	pozdě,	<i>pozďe,</i>	late
			později,	<i>pozďeyi,</i>	later

psáti,	<i>psáti, psát,</i>	to write	dal jsem,	<i>dal jsem,</i>	I gave, I put;
učiti se,	<i>učit se,</i>	to learn	ručím (za),	<i>ručím</i>	I warrant;
vyprodán, a, o,	<i>veprodán, a, o,</i>	sold out	dojat,	<i>dojät,</i>	moved
kladli jsme,	<i>kládli smě,</i>	we were laying:	trápilo*),	<i>trápilš,</i>	it grieved
položili jsme,	<i>přložili smě,</i>	we laid;	zbylo*),	<i>zbylš,</i>	remained, was left
			zemřel,	<i>zmršel,</i>	died
			vál,	<i>vál,</i>	blew

EXERCISES.

Měl jsem výprodej. — Můj krám je všecek vyprodán; — všecka zásoba je vyprodána; — prodal jsem všecko zboží lacino. — Vyprodal jsem všecko za hotové.

Ze všeho zboží zbylo jen něco látky na šaty.

Ke všemu zboží dal jsem ceny; — známky byly na všem. — Jsem teď hotov se vším.

Všichni kupci, doufám, budou spokojeni; — všechny věci byly dobré; — na všech věcech měl jsem jen malý výdělek.

Všem svým odkupníkům ručím za zboží; — chci míti se všemi dobrou vůli.

I had a selling out. — My store is all sold out; — the whole stock is sold out; — I sold all goods cheaply. — I sold out every thing for cash.

Of all the goods there only remained some dress goods.

To all the goods I put (i. e. attached) prices; — labels were on every thing. — I have now done with every thing.

All the buyers, I hope, will be satisfied; — all articles were good; — on all articles I had only a small profit.

To all my customers I warrant my goods; — I want to have with all a good will.

*) Trápiti, *trápiti* (*trápit*), to grieve, to trouble, to torment: trápil, a, o, (he, she, it) grieved, troubled, etc.

Zbýti, *zbeeti* (*zbeet*), to remain, to be left;
zbyl, a, o, (he, she, it) remained, was left;
zbylo, there remained. — See Note 2, Lesson IX.

Dnes je hezký den. — Ano, dnes je hezky;— slunce svítí hezky.

Doufám že zítra bude také pěkný den a že slunce bude pěkně svítit.

Včera byl silný vítr. — Ráno vítr vál silně, odpoledne ještě silněji a nejsilněji k večeru.

Váš dům má hluboký základ. — Ano, položili jsme základy hluboko.

Když jsme kladli základní kamen, náš hošík zemřel a byl jsem hluboce dojat.

Byl to veliký zármutek; — trá-pilo nás to velice.

Kolik let mu bylo?*) — Bylo mu dvanáct let.

Mluvil anglicky i česky, — také psal po anglicku i po česku.

Později chtěl učit se též francouzsky, španělsky i německy, — aspoň čísti a psátí trochu.

Note 1. Grammarians call *všecek* (all) an indefinite numeral; it also takes the form of *všechen* or *všecken* (feminine, *všechna*, *všeckna*, neutre, *všechno*, *všeckno*). The plural is *všickni*, *všecky*, *všecka*, *všětskňi*, *všětski*, *všětská*. In common discourse *všecky* or *všeci* is used in the plural in all three genders.

*) **Kolik let mu bylo?** (*literally*: how many years was it to him?) the same as: **jak byl stár?** how old was he? **Bylo mu**, the same as **byl**, he was.

To-day is a fine day.—Yes, 'o-day it is nice;—the sun is shining nicely.

I hope that to-morrow will be also a nice day, and that she sun will shine nicely.

Yesterday there was a strong wind. — In the morning the wind blew strongly, in the afternoon more strongly yet, and most strongly toward evening.

Your house has a deep foundation. —Yes, we laid the foundations deep.

When we were laying the foundation stone, our little boy died, and I was deeply moved.

It was a great sorrow;— it grieved us greatly.

How old was he?—He was twelve years

He spoke English and Bohemian. —He also wrote in English and in Bohemian.

Later he wanted to learn also French, Spanish and German, — at least to read and write a little.

This numeral is also declined and presents the following variation of form :

Singular :

všeho, m. & n *fshěhǒ*, (**vší**, f. *fshee*) of all (of the whole, of everything);
všemu, *fshěmǎ*; to all; **ve všem**, *vě fshěm*, in all; **se vším**, *sě fsheem*,
 with all.

Plural :

všech, *fshěkh*, of all; **ve všech**, *vě fshěkh*, in all; **všem**, *fshěm*, to all;
se všemi, *sě fshěmi* with all.

Note 2. Adverbs (qualifying verbs) are often derived from adjectives, qualifying nouns. This rule obtains in Bohemian as well as in English.

Such adverbs are formed in English by adding **ly** to the adjective : *strong, strongly; nice nicely*. In Bohemian, the terminal **ý** of the adjective is changed into an **ě** :

silný, silně; pěkný, pěkně.

In some cases, however, the final **ý** changes into an **o**, or the final syllable **ký** into **ce**: **hluboký, hluboko, hluboce**, *deep, deeply*; **veliký, velice**, *great, greatly*. In a few cases the formation of adverbs is wholly irregular : **dobrý, good; dobře, well**.

Sometimes the long **ý** simply changes into a short **y** : **hezký, hezky**, *nice, nicely*. This is generally the case, when the adjective is derived from the name of a nation : **anglický národ**, *the English nation*; **mluvím anglicky**, *I speak English*;—**český jazyk**, *the Bohemian tongue*; **mluvím česky**, *I speak Bohemian*. In these cases we can also use the form: **po anglicku, po česku**.

In common discourse, the distinction between such adjectives and adverbs as **hezký — hezky, český — česky**, etc., is obliterated, their pronunciation being the same.

Note 3. Many adverbs of quality have a comparison, like adjectives, in order to express various degrees of quality. In regular com-

parison, the second degree is formed by adding **ji** to the adverb, and the third degree by prefixing **nej** to the second degree: **silně**, *strongly*; **silněji**, *more strongly*; **nejsilněji**, *most strongly*. Some adverbs have an irregular comparison, which must be learned and remembered. The following are mostly in use:

- dobře**, *doʹrshĕ*, well; **lépe**, *lépĕ*, better; **nejlépe**, *neylépĕ*, best;
líp, *leep*, “; **nejlíp**, *neyleep*, “;
- zle**, *zlĕ*, bad!y; **hůře**, *hoorshĕ*, worse; **nejhůře**, *neyhoorshĕ*, worst;
hůř, *hoorsh*, “; **nejhůř**, *neyhoorsh*, “;
- brzo**, *b^e rzĕ*, soon; **dříve**, *drsheevĕ*, sooner; **nejdříve**, *neydrsheevĕ*, soonest;
dřív, *drsheef*, “; **nejdřív**, *neydrsheef*, “;
- dlouho**, *dlouhĕ*, long; **déle**, *délĕ*, longer; **nejdéle**, *neydélĕ*, longest;
dýl, *deel*, “; **nejdýl**, *neydeel*, “;
- blízko**, *bleeskĕ*, near; **blíže**, *bleežĕ*, nearer; **nejblíže**, *neybleežĕ*, nearest;
blíž, *bleež*, “; **nejblíž**, *neybleež*, “;
- daleko**, *dálĕkĕ*, far; **dál**, *dál*, farther; **nejdál**, *neydál*, farthest;
- vysoko**, *vysĕkĕ*, high; **výše**, *veeshĕ*, higher; **nejvýše**, *neyveeshĕ*, highest;
- hluboko**, *hlübĕkĕ*, deep, deeply; **hloub**, *hloüb*, deeper; **nejhloub**, *neyhloüb*,
 deepest;
- snadno**, *snădnĕ*, easily; **snáz**, *snáz*, more easily; **nejsnáz**, *neysnáz*, most
 easily;
- mnoho**, *mndĕhĕ*, much. **víc**, *více*, *veets*, *veetsĕ*, more; **nejvíc**, *nejvíce*, *ney-*
veets, *neyveetsĕ*, most;
- málo**, *mălĕ*, little; **méně**, *míň*, *mĕňe*, *meeň*, less; **nejméně**, *nejmíň*, *ney-*
mĕňe, *neymeeň*, least;
- draho**, *drăhĕ*, *drăžĕ*, dear, dearly; **dráže**, *drážĕ*, dearer; **nejdráže**,
neydrážĕ, dearest.

LESSON XXXI.*)

Nesti (or **nésti**), *to carry, to bear*, is a verb denoting a CONTINUOUS action.

By means of prefixes numerous other verbs are derived from it (see Note 6, Lesson XIII), denoting a FINITE or finished action, or a solitary act of that nature :

přinesti,	<i>prshinest'i,</i> or <i>prshinest,</i>	to bring, to fetch;
přenesti,	<i>prshě-nest,</i>	to carry over, to transplace;
nanesti,	<i>nānest,</i>	to bring a heap; to pile on;
odnesti,	<i>ōdnest,</i>	to carry away; to take away;
donesti,	<i>dōnest,</i>	to carry to a place; to carry to somebody;
podnesti,	<i>pōdnest,</i>	to carry under;
přednesti,	<i>prshed-nest,</i>	to carry before; (hence: to lay before, to submit, to deliver;)
pronesti,	<i>prōnest,</i>	to carry through; pronesti se, to grow heavy, to tire out (said of a burden which is carried);
roznesti,	<i>rōznest,</i>	to carry round; to scatter or spread; to deliver;
unesti,	<i>ūnest,</i>	to carry off, to kidnap; (also: to be able to carry);
vynesti,	<i>vinest,</i>	to carry out;
zanesti,	<i>zānest,</i>	to carry behind, away, i. e. out of sight; (also: to enter in a book or list).

*) We bespeak the student's particular attention for this Lesson, designed as a systematic but easy and popular introduction to a complete mastery of the Bohemian verb, which is the most important and the most complicated part of the language. To a great extent, this introduction will not appear as a review of what has already been learned about the verb in the preceding lessons, and hence will be the more readily mastered by the student. There being only a few hundred verbs used in the ordinary intercourse of any language, their acquisition for practical every-day purposes is, after all, only a matter of a few weeks' application.

As before observed, the meaning of these derivatives becomes in most cases self-evident, when we bear in mind the signification of the prefixes, which constantly recur in this process of formation of new verbs:

do , <i>dě</i> , to;	pře , <i>prshě</i> , over;	pod , <i>přd</i> , under;
od , <i>ďd</i> , from, off;	při , <i>prshi</i> , to, by, at;	nad , <i>nād</i> , over, up, above;
na , <i>nā</i> , on;	před , <i>prshed</i> , before;	pro , <i>prě</i> , through;
ve , <i>vě</i> , in;	ob , <i>ďb</i> } round,	roz , <i>rěz</i> , apart, asunder;
vy , <i>vy</i> , out;	o , <i>o</i> } about;	za , <i>zā</i> , behind, away, into;

The prefix **za** very often denotes a solitary action or sudden manifestation; for example :

pěti, *zpívati*, *pyěti*, *speevati*, to sing; **zapěti**, *zazpívati*, *zāpyět*, *zāspeerāt*, to sing a song.
zvoniti, *zvodňit*, to ring; **zazvoniti**, *zāzvodňit*, to give a ring; to pull the bell once.

The prefix **u** denotes: 1. an action separating a part from the whole: **seknouti**, *seknouti*, to make a cut; **useknouti**, *šseknouti*, to cut off; — 2. a diminutive, momentary, or solitary action: **šklebiti se**, *šklebiti se*, to frown; — **ušklebiti se**, to make a frown; 3. a progressive destruction or disappearance: **páliti**, *páliti*, to burn; **upáliti**, to burn up. to burn at the stake; — 4. a completion or carrying out of something: **dělati**, *dělāt*, to do, to make, to work: **udělati**, to make or finish something; to do a certain act.

These are the main modifications due to the prefix **u**, connected with verbs; there are, besides, two or three minor or incidental ones, which it is not necessary to mention.

The principal parts of a Bohemian verb, from which the entire conjugation may easily be formed by means of the proper endings, are the following:

The infinitive: nesti , to carry;	the perfect indicative: nesl , carried;
the present indicative: nesu , I carry;	the imperative: nes , carry (thou),

Nesu,	<i>nessŭ,</i>	I carry,	nesl*) jsem,	<i>nessl sem,</i>	I carried,
neseš,	<i>nessesh,</i>	thou carriest,	nesl jsi,	<i>nessl si,</i>	thou carriedst,
nese,	<i>nessě,</i>	(he, she, it) carries,	nesl,	<i>nessl,</i>	he carried,
neseme,	<i>nessěmě,</i>	we carry,	nesli**) jsmě,	<i>nessli smě,</i>	we carried,
nesete,	<i>nessětě,</i>	you carry,	nesli jste,	<i>nessli stě,</i>	you carried,
nesou,	<i>nessoŭ,</i>	they carry;	nesli,	<i>nessli,</i>	they carried:
nes,	<i>ness,</i>	carry (thou),			
ať nese,	<i>áčť nessě,</i>	let him (her, it) carry,			
nesme,	<i>nessmě,</i>	let us carry,			
neste,	<i>nesstě,</i>	carry (you),			
ať nesou,	<i>áčť nessoŭ,</i>	let them carry.			

Note 1. The future tense of **nesti** is usually not formed by means of the auxiliary **býti** (to be) in connection with the infinitive: **budu nesti**, **budeš nesti**, etc.; but by means of the prefix **po**, connected with the present tense: **ponesu**, *pñnessŭ*, I shall carry; **poneseš**, *pñnessesh*, thou wilt carry; and so forth.

The derivatives mentioned above, formed by means of prefixes, have in fact no present, but only a past and a simple future tense; for example:

přinesti, to bring; **přinesl jsem**, I brought; **přinesu**, I shall bring; — **odnesti**, to carry away; **odnesl jsem**, I carried away; **odnesu**, I shall carry away. (See Notes 4 and 7, Lesson XIII.)

*) Feminine **nesla**, *nesslá*; neutre **neslo**; — see Note 2, Lesson IX. — **Já jsem nesl**, **já nesl**, I carried; **ty jsi nesl**, **ty's nesl**, thou carriedst; **vy jste nesli**, you carried. See Lesson X.

As already mentioned in Note 1, Lesson IX, the distinction between the perfect tense, so difficult and puzzling for the student of the English language, does not exist in Bohemian. **Nesl jsem** means both *I carried* and *I have carried*; it also means *I did carry* and *I was carrying*, — when the latter relates to a separate action.

Likewise the present, **nesu**, means not only *I carry*, but also: *I am carrying*, *I do carry*; or, if used interrogatively: **nesu?** *do I carry?*

The same observations apply to all other verbs, there being *only one form* of the present tense, and of the past tense, in Bohemian.

) Feminine **nesly; neutre **nesla**; see Note 2, Lesson IX.

The verbs **lezu**, I crawl; **vezu**, I carry; **jedu**, I ride; **kvetu**, I blossom; **rostu**, I grow, — and some others, usually form their future in the same way as **nesu**, I carry. Hence we do not say **budu lezti**, etc: but we say :

polezu, *polěžů*, I shall crawl; **povezu**, *pověžů*, I shall carry; **pojedu**, *pojědů*, I shall ride; **pokvetu**, *pokvetů*, I shall blossom; **porostu**, *porostů*, I shall grow.

In the sequel we shall give the principal parts of every verb, from which the student can form the whole conjugation without any difficulty. There being a slight irregularity in the formation of the present tense from the infinitive in some cases, this course will obviate any confusion which might arise therefrom, for a beginner.

Vezi , <i>vězt'i, vezt'*)</i> , to carry (in a vehicle);	plesti se , <i>p. sě</i> , to be mistaken, confused; etc.**)
vezti se , <i>vězt'i sě</i> , to ride;	másti , <i>mást'i</i> , to confuse;
vesti , <i>vest'i</i> , to lead;	másti se , <i>másti sě</i> , to be mistaken;
lezti , <i>lězt'i</i> , to crawl, to climb;	mésti , <i>mést'i</i> , to sweep;
kvesti , <i>kvest'i</i> , to blossom;	klásti , <i>klást'i</i> , to lay;
čísti , <i>čest'i</i> , to read;	krásti , <i>krást'i</i> , to steal;
růsti , <i>roost'i</i> } to grow;	pásti , <i>pást'i</i> , to herd, to tend, to pasture.
rosti , <i>rost'i</i> }	pásti se , <i>p. sě</i> , to graze, to browse;
plesti , <i>plesst'i</i> , to twist, to knit;	
	to confuse, to mix up;
vezu , <i>věžů</i> , I carry; vezl jsem , <i>vězl sem</i> , I carried, or I have carried;	vez , <i>věz</i> , carry (thou,***);

*) See Note 1, Lesson XI.

**) This and many other verbs have a variety of significations, which cannot here be explained. We refer the student to the Dictionary of the Bohemian and English languages, by Charles Jonas, *second edition*.

***) The reflexive form of a verb is conjugated in the same way as the ordinary form, with **se** added: **vezu se**, I ride; **vezl jsem se**, I rode; **povezu se**, I shall ride; **vez se**, ride (thou)!

The student is already well aware that negation is always expressed by the prefix **ne**, which stands for the English *do not, does not, did not*: **nevezu**, I do not carry; **nevezl jsem**, I did not carry; **nepovezu**, I shall not carry; **nevez!** do not carry!

vedu, *vědū*, I lead; vedl jsem, *vědl sěm*, I led; ved', *ved'*, lead;
 lezu, *lězū*, I crawl; lezl jsem, *lězl sem*, I crawled; lez, *lěz*, crawl;
 kvete, *květě*, it blooms; kvetl, *květl*, it bloomed; kvet', *kvěť*, bloom;
 čtu, *čtū*, I read; četl jsem, *čětl sem*, I read; čti, *čtvi*, read;
 rostu, *rostū*, I grow; rostl jsem, *rostl sem*, I grew; rost', *rost'*, grow;
 pletu, *pletū*, I knit; (pletu se, I get mixed up, etc.); pletl jsem, I knit-
 ted; plet', *plet'*, knit;
 matu, *mătū*, I confuse; matl jsem, *mătł sem*, I confused; mat', *măt'*, con-
 fuse;
 metu, *metū*, I sweep; metl jsem, *metł sem*, I swept; met', *met'*, sweep;
 kladu, *klādū*, I lay; kladl jsem, *klādł sem*, I laid; klad', *klād'*, lay;
 kradu, *krādū*, I steal; kradl jsem, *krādł sem*, I stole; krad', *krād'*, steal;
 pasu, *pāsū*, I herd; pasl jsem, *pāsl sem*, I herded: pas, *pās*, herd.

Pasák, m.	<i>pāsák</i> ,	the cowboy,	datum, n.	<i>dătŭm</i> ,	the date
		the herdsman;	škola, f.	<i>shkolā</i> ,	the school
dobytek, m.	<i>dōbytek</i> ,	the cattle	novela, f.	<i>novellā</i>	} the novel
chodník, m.	<i>khodñeek</i> ,	the sidewalk	román, m.	<i>rōmán</i>	
zloděj, m.	<i>złoděy</i> ,	the thief	zem, f.	<i>zem</i>	} the floor
červ, m.	<i>cherf</i> ,	the worm	podlaha, f.	<i>podlāhā</i>	
jabloň, m.	<i>yābloň</i> ,	the apple tree	pastva,	<i>pāstwā</i> ,	the pasture
ptáci, pl.	<i>ptātsi</i> ,	the birds	ruka, f.	<i>rŭkā</i> ,	the hand
dějepis, m.	<i>děyēpis</i> ,	the history	noha, f.	<i>nōhā</i> ,	the foot
cestopis, m.	<i>tsestōpis</i> ,	the book of travels;	mléko, n.	<i>mlékō</i> ,	the milk
stádo, n.	<i>stādō</i> ,	the herd	zeleniny, f. pl.	<i>zělēñiny</i> ,	the vege- tables;
ovce, f. s & pl.	<i>oftsě</i> ,	the sheep	zaméstí,	<i>zāmésťi</i> ,	to sweep up;
sotva,	<i>sotwā</i> ,	hardly, scarcely;	dočístí,	<i>dōcheest'vi</i> ,	to finish reading;
snadno,	<i>snādno</i> ,	easily	může,	<i>moožě</i> ,	he (she, it) can
nikam,	<i>ñikām</i> ,	nowhere	zábavný, á, é,	<i>zábāvnee</i> ,	entertaining.

EXERCISES.

Co neseš? (co to neseš?)

Nesu oběd pro otce*).

Co vezete na trh? — Vezu trochu obilí.

Co veze váš soused? — On veze brambory.

Kam vedete toho chlapce*? — Vedu ho do školy. — Ze školy povedu ho zas domu.

Nelez na strom! — Já nelezu. — Nelezl jsem nikam. — Viděl jsem tě lezti.

Co to zde leze? — Červi zde lezou.

Všecko kvete. — Stromy už kvetou. — Loni náš jabloň kvetl krásně;— nevím jak pokvete letos.

Co to čteš? — Já čtu zábavnou knihu; — a co vy čtete? — Dějepis Spojených Států**).

What doest thou carry? (what is it thou carriest?)

I carry dinner for my father.

What do you carry to market? — I carry some grain.

What does your neighbor carry? — He carries potatoes.

Where do you lead (or "take") that boy? — I lead him to school. — From school I shall lead him home again.

Do not climb (on) the tree! — I do not (climb). — I did not climb anywhere. — I have seen thee climb.

What is that crawling here? — Worms are crawling here.

Everything blossoms. — The trees are blooming already.—Last year our appletree blossomed beautifully: — I don't know how it will bloom this year.

What is it thou readest? — I read an entertaining book;— and what do you read? — A history of the United States.

*) The rule stated in Note 2, Lesson XVIII, applies also to nouns ending in *ec* (declined like *muž*), the vowel *e* being dropped in the inflected cases: *otec*, *otets*, the father (or "my father"); *otce*, *otse*, of the father; *pro otce*, for the father; *otcové*, *otcůvé*, the fathers; — *chlapec*, *khlāpets*, the boy; *chlapce*, *khlāptse*, of the boy (or "the boy", in the objective case).

** *Spojené Státy*, *spoyěné státy*, the United States: *Spojených Států*, *spoyěneekh států*, of the United States; *ve Spojených Státech*, *vě spoyěneekh státech*, in the United States.

Včera četl jsem román; — večer jsem ho dočetl; — zítra budu čísti nějaký cestopis.

Když je teplo, všecko roste rychle. — Ty zeleniny rostou rychle; — po dešti porostou ještě rychleji.

Já často se pletu v datum. -- Člověk snadno se plete; — já také často se matu.

Zameř krám. — Zametl jsem ho už; — chodník zametu hned.

Ptáci nyní kladou vejce.

Zloděj kradе kde může. — Zloději kradou vše.

Pasák pase stádo. -- Dobytek se pase. — Ovce se pasou.

Rád pasu krávy, kde je dobrá pastva.

Yesterday I read a novel; — in the evening I finished reading it; — to-morrow I shall read some book of travels.

When it is warm, everything grows fast.—Those vegetables grow fast; — after a rain they will grow still faster.

I am often mistaken in the date. — One is easily mistaken; -- I also am frequently mistaken.

Sweep the store. — I have swept it already; — the sidewalk I shall sweep presently.

The birds now lay eggs.

The thief steals where he can. — Thieves steal everything.

The cowboy tends the herd. — The cattle are grazing --The sheep are browsing.

I like to pasture cows where there is a good pasture.

Bíti,	<i>beeťi</i> ,	to beat, to strike;
píti,	<i>peeťi</i> ,	to drink;
líti,	<i>leeťi</i> ,	to pour;
síti,	<i>seeťi</i> ,	} to sow, to seed;
seti,	<i>seťi</i> ,	
mýti,	<i>meeťi</i> ,	to wash;

krýti,	<i>kreeťi</i> ,	to cover;
tříti,	<i>trsheeťi</i> ,	to rub;
příti se,	<i>prsheeťi se</i> ,	to dispute;
šíti,	<i>sheeťi</i> ,	to sew;
žíti,	<i>žeťi</i> ,	to live*).

*) Notes 1 and 2, Lesson XIII, explain that in common discourse the final *i* of the infinitive is nearly always dropped. Consequently we hear: *beat*, instead of *beeťi*; *peet*, instead of *peeťi*; and so forth. *Mýti* is often pronounced *meyt*, *krýti* — *kreyt*. (See Note 3, Lesson VI.)—There is no difference of pronunciation between *bíti* (to beat), and *býti* (to be), except when the latter is vulgarly pronounced *beyt*.

biju (or **biji**), *biyǔ*, I beat; **bil jsem**, *bill sem*, I beat (have beaten);
bij, *biy* or *be*, beat (thou);
piju (or **piji**), *piyǔ*, I drink; **pil jsem**, *pill sem*, I drank; **pij**, *piy*
(or *pee*), drink;
iju or **leju**, *liyǔ* or *leyǔ*, I pour; **lil jsem**, *lil sem*, I poured; **lij** or
lej, *liy*, *ley*, pour;
siju or **seju**, *siyǔ*, *seyǔ*, I sow; **sil jsem**, *sil sem*, I sowed; **sej**, *sey*, sow;
myju*, *miyǔ*, I wash; **myl jsem**, *mill sem*, I washed; **myj**, *miy*, wash;
kryju, *kriyǔ*, I cover; **kryl jsem**, *krill sem*, I covered; **kryj**, *kriy*, cover;
tru*, *trǔ*, I rub; **třel jsem**, *trshell sem*, I rubbed; **tři**, *trshi*, rub;
pru se*, *prǔ sě*, I dispute; **přel jsem se**, *prshell sem sě*, I disputed; **při se**,
prshi sě, dispute;

šiju, *she-yǔ*, I sew; **šil jsem**, *shil sem*, I sewed; **šij**, *shiy* (or *she*), sew;
žiju, *žiyǔ*, I live; **žil jsem**, *žil sem*, I lived; **žij**, *žiy*, (or *ži*), live;

Note 2. The paradigm of the present indicative of **bíti** would be: **biju**, **biješ**, **bije**, **bijeme**, **bijete**, **bijou** (I beat, thou beatest, he beats, we beat, you beat, they beat). In the written language, the forms **biji** and **bijí** (*biye*, *biyee*) are frequently employed in the first person singular and third person plural, in place of **biju**, **bijou** (*biyǔ*, *biyǔoŭ*), which are always used in conversation. The same is true of the other verbs of this class.

EXERCISES.

Proč biješ to dítě? — Nebij ho! — Já ho nebiju. Hodiny**) bijou deset. — Už bilo deset.	Why do you beat that child? — Do not beat him!—I do not beat him. The clock strikes ten. — It has al- ready struck ten.
--	--

*) Colloquially also **meju**, **kreju**, **třu**, **přu se**, *meyǔ*, *kreyǔ*, *trshǔ*, *prshǔ sě*; **mej**, **krej**, *mey*, *krey*, (do) wash, (do) cover.

) **Hodiny (the clock) is a plural noun; the following verb must therefore be put in the plural: **bijou** or **bijí** (they strike).

Co piješ? — Piju pivo; — co vy pijete? — Pijeme víno; — děti pijou vodu. — Ráno všichni pili jsme mléko.

Lijeme mléko do kávy.

Služka myje zem. — Kryjeme podlahu kobercem.

Lil jsem liniment na ruku a třel jsem nohu.

Seju pšenici; — soused sil ječmen. — Sejeme časně. — Cojste vy se-li? — Nic ještě; — budeme síti oves.

What doest thou drink? — I drink beer;—what do you drink? — We drink wine; — the children drink water. — In the morning we all drank milk.

We pour milk in coffee.

The servant-girl washes the floor. — We cover the floor with a carpet.

I poured the liniment on (my) hand and rubbed (my) foot.

I sow wheat;—(my) neighbor sowed barley. — We sow early. — What have you sowed? — Nothing as yet;— we shall sow oats.

Note 3. All verbs consisting of a simple *root* or *stem*, to which the termination **ti** is directly attached, belong to the first conjugation.

They may be divided in two leading classes, slightly diverging in their inflection, but following the same general principle, as shown in the preceding two groups of examples; namely, 1. those terminating generally in **sti**, and 2. those terminating generally in **íti** :

1. **nesti**, to carry (**nes** in the root or stem); — **nesu, neseš, nese**, I carry, thou carriest, he carries; **neseme, nesete, nesou**, we carry, you carry, they carry; — **nesl jsem**, I carried; — **nes**, carry;
2. **píti**, to drink (**pí** is the root or stem); — **piju, piješ, pije**, I drink, thou drinkest, he drinks; **pijeme, pijete, pijou**, we drink, you drink, they drink; — **pil jsem**, I drank; — **pij**, drink.

Note 4. A few exceptional verbs of this conjugation, with the grammatical termination of **ei** (but popularly **eti**) in their infinitive, show a slight deviation from the above paradigms. For instance:

peci, *petsi*, to bake; — **peku**, **pečeš**, **peče**, **pečeme**, **pečete**, **pekou**, *pěklů, pěchesh, pěchě, pěchěmě, pěchětě, pěkoů* (I bake, thou bakest, he bakes, we bake, you bake, they bake; **pekl jsem**, *pěkl sem*, I baked; **peč**, *pěch*, bake;

teci, *tetsi*, to flow; **teče**, **tekou**, **tekl**, **teč**, *těchě, těkoů, tekl, těch* (it flows, they flow, it flowed, flow).

But colloquially, the forms **peču**, **pečou**, **tečou** (I bake, they bake, they flow) are used in place of **peku**, **pekou**, **tekou**.

LESSON XXXII.

Minouti, *minouti*, to pass by; — **minu**, *minů*, I pass by; (**mineš**, *mine, mineš*, *mině*, thou passest by, he passes by; **mineme**, *minete, minou*, *miněmě, minětě, minoů*, we, you, they pass by; — **minul*) jsem**, *minul sem*, I passed by or I have passed by; **miň**, *miň*, pass (thou) by.

hynouti, *hynouti*, to perish (or rather: to be perishing; -- **hynu**, *hynů*, I am perishing; **hynul jsem**, I was perishing; **hyň**, *hyň*, perish.

zdvihnouti, *zdvihnouti*, to pick up, to raise; — **zdvihnu**, *zdvihnů***, I shall pick up; I shall raise; **zdvihnul jsem** (also **zdvihl jsem**, like the first conjugation), *zdvihnul sem (zdvihl sem)*, I picked up, I raised; **zdvihni**, *zdvihni*, pick up, raise.

kopnouti, *kopnouti*, to kick; — **kopnu****, I shall kick; **kopnul jsem** (also **kopl jsem**), *kopnul sem*, I kicked; **kopni**, *kopni*, kick.

Dálka , f. <i>dálka</i> ,	the distance		osení , n. <i>osseňee</i> ,	growing crops;
planina , f. <i>pláňině</i> ,	the plain		takto ,	<i>taktě</i> , in this way;

*) Feminine **minula**, *minulá*; neutre **minulo**, *minulě*; — see Note 2, Lesson IX.

) The present tense having a *future* meaning, **zdvihnu, **kopnu**, is in fact the simple future tense of these verbs. See Note 7, Lesson XIII.

hruška, f. <i>hrůškā</i> ,	the pear	než,	<i>nesh</i> ,	before;
jablko, n. <i>yǎblkŏ</i> , (colloq. <i>yǎbkŏ</i>),	the apple	hleděti,	<i>hled'et</i> ,	to look;
sucho, n. <i>sůkhŏ</i> ,	drought (as an adverb: dry);	pes, m.	<i>pass</i> , the dog; <i>psa</i> , <i>psā</i> ,	of the dog, the dog (obj. case).

EXERCISES.

Než hodina mine, budu zde, — pravil.

Hodina minula, — dvě hodiny minuly, — pět hodin minulo (i. e. *it* passed), — den minul, — a nebyl zde.

Až mineme ten les, budeme viděti více.

Jak brzy minuli jste les?

Minuli jsme ho za hodinu; — pak viděli jsme celou planinu.

Ti lidé nás brzy minou*). — Mineš mnoho lidí (*lid'ee*, gen. case).

Je sucho; — všechno hyne; — osení hyne; — zeleniny hynou.

Bylo sucho a všechno hynulo.

Takto všechno bude hynouti.

Zdvihni to jablko. — Už jsem ho zdvihnul (or zdvihl). — Zdvihnula (or zdvihla) jsem dvě jablka a hrušku.

Before an hour passes by, I shall be here, — he said.

An hour passed, — two hours passed, — five hours passed, — the day passed by, — and he was not here.

When we pass that forest, we shall see more.

How soon did you pass the forest?

We passed it in an hour; — then we saw the whole plain.

Those people will soon pass us. —

Thou wilt pass many people.

It is dry; — everything is perishing; — the crops are perishing; — the vegetables are perishing.

There was a drought, and everything was perishing.

In this way everything will be perishing.

Pick up that apple. — I have picked it up already. — I picked up (*fem.*, two apples and a pear.

*) It is self-evident that this present tense of the verb *minouti* also has a *future* meaning, denoting an action which is expected to take place.

Zdvihli jsme se a hleděli do dálky.

— Zdvihni se! — Zdvihněte se!

— Zdvihněte ruku (plural *ruce*,
růžě).

Kopni toho psa! — Kopnul jsem ho
trochu.

We raised ourselves and looked into
the distance. — Raise thyself! —
Raise yourself!—Raise your hand
(your hands).

Kick that dog! — I kicked him a
little.

Note 1. The root or stem of the verb **minouti** is **min**, to which the termination **outi** is attached. All verbs ending in **outi** belong to the second conjugation.

Some of the verbs of this class are derived from adjectives, and their imperative is always formed like that of **zdvihnouti**: **zdvihni**. For example :

bled-ý, *bledee*, pale; **bled-nouti**, *blednoŭti*, to grow pale; (**bledau**, I grow
pale: **blednul jsem**, I grew pale; **bledni**, do grow pale);

bohat-ý, *bohatee*, rich; **bohat-nouti**, *bohätnoŭti*, to grow rich;

chud-ý, *khüdee*, poor; **chud-nouti**, *khüdnoŭti*, to grow poor;

mlad-ý, *mlädee*, young; **mládnouti**, *mládnouŭti*, to grow young;

star-ý, *stäre*, old; **stár-nouti**, *stárnouŭti*, to grow old;

slab-ý, *släbee*, weak; **sláb-nouti**, *slábnouŭti*, to grow weak;

měk-ký, *myěkee*, soft; **měk-nouti**, *myěknoŭti*, to grow soft;

tvrd-ý, *tw^erdee*, hard; **tvrd-nouti**, *tvrdnoŭti*, to grow hard.

Viděti, *vid'eti*, to see;

seděti, *sed'eti*, to sit;

běžeti, *byžeti*, to run, to go
hurriedly;

držeti, *d^eržeti*, to hold;

mlčeti, *m^elčeti*, to be silent;

hořeti, *horsheti*, to burn;

pršeti, *p^ersheti*, to rain:

slyšeti, *slisheti*, to hear;

slušetí, *slüsheti*, to fit, to become;

styděti se, *stüd'eti se*, to be ashamed;

uměti, *ümyeti*, to know; can;

rozuměti, *rozümyeti*, to understand;

házeti, *házetí*, to throw (con-
tinually);

poroučeti, *porouchetí*, to command.

Vidím,	<i>vid'eem</i> , I see; — vidíš, vidí , <i>vid'eesh, vid'ee</i> , thou seest, he sees; vidíme, vidíte, vidí , (colloq. also vidějí) <i>vid'eemě, vid'eeťě, vid'ee</i> , colloq. <i>vid'eyee</i> , we (you, they) see; — viděl jsem , <i>vid'el sem</i> , I saw, or I have seen; viz , see (being an irregular imper.).	
sedím,	<i>sed'eem</i> , I sit; seděl jsem , <i>sed'el sem</i> , I sat; sed' , sit.	
běžím,	<i>byž'eem</i> , I run; běžel jsem , <i>byž'el sem</i> , I ran; běž , <i>byž'</i> , run;	
držím,	<i>d'rž'eem</i> , I hold; držel jsem , <i>d'rž'el sem</i> , I held; drž , <i>d'rž'</i> , hold;	
mlčím,	<i>m'čheem</i> , I am silent, mlčel jsem , <i>m'čhel sem</i> , I was silent; mlč , <i>m'čh</i> , be silent;	
hoří,	<i>horshee</i> , it burns; hořel , <i>horshel</i> , burned; hoř , <i>horsh</i> , burn;	
prší,	<i>p'rshee</i> , it rains; pršelo , <i>p'rs'hěľ</i> , it rained; prš , <i>p'rs'h</i> , rain;	
slyším,	<i>slisheem</i> , I hear; slyšel jsem , <i>slishel sem</i> ; I heard; slyš , <i>slish</i> , hear;	
sluší,	<i>slüşhee</i> , it fits; slušelo , <i>slüşhěľ</i> , it fitted.	
stydím se,	<i>stid'eem sě</i> , I am ashamed; styděl jsem se , <i>stid'el sem sě</i> , I was ashamed; styď se , shame on thee!	
umím,	<i>űmee.n</i> , I know, I can; uměl jsem , <i>űmyěľ sem</i> , I knew; uměj , <i>űmyěy</i> , know;	
rozumím,	<i>rozűmeem</i> , I understand; rozuměl jsem , <i>rozűmyěľ sem</i> , I understood; rozuměj , <i>rozűmyěy</i> , understand;	
házím,	<i>házeem</i> , I throw (I am throwing); házel jsem , <i>házel sem</i> I was throwing; házej , <i>házey</i> , throw;	
poroučím,	<i>poroűcheem</i> , I command; poroučel jsem , <i>poroűchel sem</i> , I commanded; poroučeť , <i>poroűchey</i> , command.	
Vlak, m.	<i>vľäk</i> , the train;	pevně , <i>pevňe</i> , tightly, fast;
opratě, f. pl.	<i>oprătě</i> , the lines;	silně , <i>silňe</i> , strongly, hard;
povyk, m.	<i>pűvik</i> , the cry;	výborně , <i>veeborňe</i> , very well, excellently;
jazyk, m.	<i>yăzik</i> , the tongue;	špinavý, á, é <i>shpinăvee</i> , dirty;
prádlo, n.	<i>prădlű</i> , the linen;	jiný, á, é <i>yinee</i> , other, different;
šaty, pl.	<i>shătý</i> , suit of clothes;	zapomněl jsem , <i>zăpom-ňel sem</i> , I forgot;
kamení, n.	<i>kămeňee</i> , stones (collectively);	

před tím, *prshed veem*, before that;
za něj, *zã něj*, for him, of him,
(for it, of it);

hráti, *hrátí*, to play;
už ne, *už ně*, not any more.

Vidíš něco? — Co vidíš? — Nevidím nic*).

Doest thou see something? — What doest thou see?—I do not see anything.

Vidíte dobře? — Ano, vidím všecko. — Oni to vidí dobře.

Do you (*or* can you) see well? Yes, I can see all. — They see it well.

Viděli jsme vlak; — viděli jste ho také?

We have seen a train; — have you seen it too?

Neviděli jsme ho; — děti ho viděly.

We have not seen it;— the children saw it.

Zde budeme viděti všecko. — Naši přátelé budou viděti nás hned.

Here we shall see all.— Our friends will see us immediately.

Kdo tu sedí? — To jsem já. — Proč tu sedíš? — Běž ven; — běžte oba ven.

Who sits here?—It is I.—Why doest thou sit here?—Run out:— go out both (of you).

Seděli jste pořád; — večer budete seděti zas.

You have been sitting all the time; —in the evening you will sit again.

Drž koně a mlč. — Držte opratě a mlčte. — Držíte pevně? — Držíme pevně.

Hold (thou) the horse and keep still. — Hold (you) the lines and keep still. — Do you hold fast? — We hold fast.

Oni nás slyší. — Žádný nás neslyší. — Ta holka nás slyšela. — Slyšeli nás.

They hear us.—Nobody hears us.— That girl has heard us. — They have heard us.

Prší; slyším to; — Slyšíte dešť?

It rains; I hear it.—Do you hear the rain?

Neprší ještě; ale bude pršeti. — Včera pršelo silně; — před tím nepršelo už dávno.

It does not rain yet; but it will rain —Yesterday it rained hard; — before that it had not rained for a long time.

*) There is a double negation in Bohemian, similar to the vulgar English way of speaking: *I don't see nothing*, See Note 1, Lesson V.

Ty šaty sluší vám výborně.
Ten klobouk mi nesluší; stydím se
za něj.

Nestyď se; sluší ti dobře dost.

Tvé prádlo je špinavé; nestydiš se?
Styď se!

Umíš česky? — Ano já umím česky.

Umíte anglicky? — Trochu.

Umíte německy? — Uměl jsem do-
bře; ale zapomněl jsem trochu.

Umíš hráti na piano? — Neumím.
— Umíte zpívati? — Neumím.

Naše děti umějí česky a anglicky,
— a žádný jiný jazyk.

Rozumějí německy? — Nerozumě-
jí.

Házej kamení za plot. — Neházej
kamení na cestu.

Házejte ty pytle dolu. — Neházejte
tak rychle.

Házeli jsme dříví na hromadu. —
a budeme házeti zas. — Otec to
poroučí.

Házejí ty hoši kamení? — Neháze-
jí. — Už neházejí.

Už dávno neházejí.

That suit of clothes fits you very well.
That hat does not fit me; I am a-
shamed of it.

Do not be ashamed; it fits thee well
enough.

Thy linen is dirty; art thou not a-
shamed?—Shame on you!

Doest thou know Bohemian?—Yes,
I know Bohemian.

Do you know English? — A little.

Do you know German?—I knew it
well: but I have forgotten it some-
what.

Doest thou know how to play on
the piano?—I do not. — Can you
sing?—I can not.

Our children know Bohemian and
English, — and no other tongue.

Do they understand German? —
They do not (understand).

Throw (thou) the stones behind the
fence. — Do not throw the stones
on the road.

Throw (you) the sacks down. —
Don't throw so fast.

We have been throwing the wood
on a heap, — and we shall throw
again. — Father commands it.

Are those boys throwing stones? —
They are not. — They are not
throwing any more.

They have not been throwing for a
long time (i. e. they stopped throw-
ing long since).

Note 2. The root or stem of the verb **viděti** is **vid**, to which the termination **ěti** is attached. All verbs ending in **ěti** or **eti** belong to the third conjugation.

The root of the verb is the usual form of the imperative: **běž**, run (thou); **sed'**, sit; **drž**, hold; etc; — The third person singular and plural of the present tense are alike: **vidí**, he (she, it) sees; **vidí**, they see. But in colloquial usage it commonly takes the longer form: **vidějí**, **sedějí** (they see, they sit).

In some cases the imperative is formed by cutting off the terminal **ti** and adding **j**: **uměti**, — **uměj**, know; **házeti**, — **házej**, throw; etc. These verbs always use the long form in the third person plural: **umí**, he (she, it) knows; **umějí**, *umyěyee*, they know, — **házejí**, *házěyee*, they throw.

LESSON XXXIII.

Činiti , <i>chiñiti</i> ,	to do;	souditi , <i>soŭditi</i> ,	to judge;
choditi , <i>khod'iti</i> ,	to walk; to go (frequently).	platiti , <i>plăt'iti</i> ,	to pay; to rule, prevail, be in force;
mluviti , <i>mlüviti</i> ,	to speak, to tell;	svítiti , <i>svet'iti</i> ,	to shine;
věriti , <i>vyěrshiti</i> ,	to believe;	buditi , <i>büd'iti</i> ,	to wake;
učiti , <i>üchi'ti</i> ,	to teach;	blázniti , <i>blázñiti</i> ,	to fool; to be crazy;
učiti se , <i>üchi'ti sě</i> ,	to learn (i. e. to teach one's self);	modliti se , <i>modli'ti sě</i> ,	to pray.

Činím, *chiñeem*, I do; — **činiš**, *chiñeesh*, thou doest; **činí**, *chiñee*, he (she, it) does; **činíme**, **činite**, **činí** (colloquially also **činějí**) *chiñeemě*, *chiñeetě*, *chiñee* or *chiñeyee* we, you, they do; — **činil jsem**, *chiñil sem*, I did, or I have done; **čiň**, do (thou); **čiňte**, *chiñte*, do (you);

chodím, *khod'eem*, I walk; **chodil jsem**, *khod'il sem*, I walked; **chod'**, walk;

mluvím, *mlůveem*, I speak; mluvil jsem, *mlůvil sem*, I spoke; mluv, *mlůf*, speak;
 věřím, *vyěrshem*, I believe; věřil jsem, *vyěrshil sem*, I believed; věř, believe;
 učím, *ůcheem*, I teach; učil jsem, *ůchil sem*, I taught; uč, teach;
 učím se, *ůcheem sě*, I learn; učil jsem se, *ůchil sem sě*, I learned; uč se, learn;
 soudím, *soůďeem*, I judge; soudil jsem, *soůďil sem*, I judged: sud', *sůď'*, judge;
 platím, *plăt'eem*, I pay; platil jsem, *plăt'il sem*, I paid; plat', pay;
 svítím, *sweet'eem*, I shine (I light); svítil jsem, *sweet'il sem*, I shined (lighted); sviť, shine (light);
 budím, *bůďeem*, I wake; budil jsem, *bůďil sem*, I waked; bud', wake;
 blázním, *blázňeem*, I am crazy; bláznil jsem, *blázňil sem*, I was crazy; blázni, *blázňi*, be crazy;
 modlím se, *modleem sě*, I pray; modlil jsem se, I prayed; modli se, pray.

Učitel*), m.	<i>ůchitel</i> ,	the teacher;	kresliti,	<i>kressliti</i> ,	to draw;
učitelka, f.	<i>ůchitelkă</i> ,	a female teacher:	živý, á, é	<i>živee</i> ,	living;
žák, m.	<i>žák</i> ,	the scholar;	nahlas,	<i>năhlăs</i> ,	aloud;
soudec, m.	<i>soůtsě</i> ,	the judge;	pilně,	<i>pilňě</i> ,	diligently;
zákon, m.	<i>zákôn</i> ,	the law;	právě,	<i>právyě</i> ,	rightly;
kostel, m.	<i>kůstel</i> ,	the church;	křivě,	<i>krshivě</i> ,	wrongly;
lampa, f.	<i>lămpă</i> ,	the lamp;	podle,	<i>půdlě</i> ,	according to;
			dříve,	<i>drsheevě</i> ,	formerly.

*) Učitel, the teacher; učitele, *ůchitellě*, of the teacher; učiteli, *ůchitellí*, to the teacher; (plural) učitelé, *ůchitellé*, the teachers; — like přítel, přátelé (see foot-note on page 97).

EXERCISES.

Čiň dobré a budeš šťasten.

Co jsi učinil? Neučinil jsem nic.

— On to učinil.

Chlapec chodí do školy; — obě děti chodí do školy.

Chodíte často do města? — Dříve chodil jsem tam často; — nyní tam nechodím.

Proč nechodíte? — Nemám čas.

Mluv nahlas; já tě neslyším.

Mluvil jsi s učitelem? — Nemluvil; ale mluvil jsem s učitelkou.

Věří ti učitel? — On vždy mi věří, protože mluvím pravdu. — To rád slyším.

Učitel učí nás mluvíti pravdu. — Učil nás tomu vždycky.

Uč se pilně. — Učte se dobře. — Učme se společně.

Co se učíš*? — Zeměpis. — Co vy se učíte? — Kresliti. — Kreslíte dobře. — Žák kreslil pěkně.

Soudil jsem křivě. — Vy jste soudili právě. — Soudce soudil podle zákona.

Do good and thou shalt be happy.

What hast thou done?—I have not done anything. — He has done it.

The boy goes to school. — both children go to school.

Do you often go to town?—Formerly I went there often;— now I do not go there.

Why do you not go? — I have no time.

Speak loud; I do not hear thee.

Hast thou spoken with the teacher? — I have not (spoken); but I spoke with the lady teacher.

Does the teacher believe you?—He always believes me, because I speak the truth. — I like to hear that.

The teacher teaches us to speak the truth. — He has taught us that always.

Learn (thou) diligently.—Learn (you) well. — Let us learn together.

What doest thou learn? — Geography — What is it you learn?—To draw. — You draw well. — The scholar drew nicely.

I judged wrong. — You judged right. — The judge judged according to law.

*) This is the colloquial expression. In the written language, učiti and učiti se govern the dative case, responding to the question čemu? (See page 82). Hence we should write: čemu se učíš? what doest thou learn? čemu učíte? what do you teach? And the answer would be: zeměpisu.

Zákon platí, vždy platil a musí vždy platit.	The law rules, always ruled, and must always rule.
Budil jsem každé ráno celou rodinu časně.	I waked up every morning the whole family early.
Myslím že blázníš. — Ten člověk blázní. — Neblázni! — Bláznil jsi? — Ba bláznil jsem!	I think that thou art crazy. — That man is crazy. — Don't be crazy! Wast thou crazy? — Surely, I was crazy!
Měsíc ještě svítí; svítil celou noc. — Ta lampa svítí špatně; včera svítila dobře.	The moon still shines; it has been shining all night. — That lamp shines badly; yesterday it shined well.
Modli se! — Modleme se! — Lidé modlí se v kostele. — Kněz modlil se za živé*) i za mrtvé.	Pray! — Let us pray! — People pray in church. — The priest prayed for the living and for the dead.

Note 1. The root or stem of the verb **činiti** is **čin**, to which the termination **iti** is attached. All verbs ending in **iti** belong to the fourth conjugation.

The root of the verb is the common form of the imperative: **čiň**, do; **chod'**, walk; **mluv**, speak; etc. In some cases, however, only the final **ti** is thrown off to form the imperative: **blázni**, be crazy; **modli se**, pray.

Note 2. The verbs **bydliti**, **mysliti**, **musiti** (to reside, to think, must) are also written **bydleti**, **mysleti**, **museti**, and in popular language this form is always employed. This does not materially modify the inflection, as the third and fourth conjugation are essentially almost identical. For instance :

*) **Živý**, living; plural: **živí**, in the objective case **živé**. These distinctions, however, disappear in common discourse. This adjective also has an indefinite or short form (see Note 2, Lesson XXIII) : **živ**, a, o, For instance; **je posud živ**, he is still living; **matka je živa**, the mother is living; **dítě je živo**, the child is living. The expression **živ a zdrav**, pronounced *žíf a zdráf*, is frequently heard.

(Third conjugation)			(Fourth conjugation)		
seděti, <i>sed'et'i</i> , to sit			činiti, <i>chiñ't'i</i> , to do		
sedím,	<i>sed'eem</i> ,	I sit	činím,	<i>chiñ'eem</i> ,	I do
seděl jsem,	<i>sed'el sem</i> ,	I sat	činil jsem,	<i>chiñ'il sem</i> ,	I did
sed',	<i>sed'</i> ,	sit (thou)	čiň,	<i>chiñ</i> ,	do (thou)
budu seděti,	<i>büdü sed'et'i</i>	I shall sit	budu činiti,	<i>büdü chiñ't'i</i> ,	I shall do.

The above three verbs, in colloquial discourse, always take in the third person plural the form: **bydľejí, mysľejí, musejí**, *bidľeyee, misľeyee, müsëyee* (they reside, they think, they must); whereas the proper grammatical form is like the third person singular: **bydľí, mysľí, musí**.

LESSON XXXIV.

Volati, <i>volät'i</i> ,	to call;	prodati, <i>prodät'i</i> ,	to sell;
běhati, <i>byěhät'i</i> ,	to run (about);	prodávati *, <i>prodávät'i</i> ,	to be selling;
čekati, <i>chekät'i</i> ,	to wait;		ing;
dělati, <i>d'elät'i</i> ,	to do, to make, to work;	povídati, <i>poveedät'i</i> ,	to say, to tell;
hledati, <i>hlädät'i</i> ,	to seek. to look for;	trestati, <i>trestät'i</i> ,	to punish;
doufati, <i>doüfät'i</i> ,	to hope;	znáti, <i>znät'i</i> ,	to know;
Volám, <i>volám</i> ,	I call; voláš, <i>volášh</i> ,	ptáti se, <i>ptät'i se</i> ,	to ask, to inquire;
voláme, <i>voláte</i> ,	volají, <i>volámě, volátě, voläyee</i> ,	plovati, <i>plovät'i</i> ,	to swim.
voláme, <i>voláte</i> ,	we, you, they call; — volal jsem, <i>voläl sem</i> ,		
voláme, <i>voláte</i> ,	I called; volej, <i>voley</i> ,		
volejte, <i>voleyte</i> ,	call (you);		
běhám, <i>byěhám</i> .	I run; běhal jsem, <i>byěhäl sem</i> ,		
běhám, <i>byěhám</i> .	I was running; běž,		
čekám, <i>chekám</i> ,	I wait; čekal jsem, <i>chekäl sem</i> ,		
čekám, <i>chekám</i> ,	I waited; čekej, <i>chekey</i> ,		
dělám, <i>d'elám</i> ,	I do, I make; dělal jsem, <i>d'eläl sem</i> ,		
dělám, <i>d'elám</i> ,	I did, I made; dělej,		
dělám, <i>d'elám</i> ,	do, make;		

*) Reiterative form of **prodati**; see Note 5, Lesson XIII.

hledám, *hlédám*, I seek; hledal jsem, *hlědál sem*, I sought; hledej, *hlě-
dey*, seek;
doufám, *dořfám*, I hope; doufal jsem, *dořfál sem*, I hoped; doufej,
dořfey, hope;
prodám, I shall sell (having a future meaning; see Note 7, Lesson XIV;
prodal jsem, *prodál sem*, I sold; prodej, *prodey*, sell;
prodávám, I am selling: prodával jsem, *prodávál sem*. I was selling: pro-
dávej, *prodávey*, sell;
povídám, *poveedám*, I say; povídal jsem, *p'veedál sem*, I said; povídej,
poveedey, tell;
trestám (also tresci, *trestsi*), I punish; trestal jsem, *trestál sem*, I pun-
ished; trestej, *trestey*, punish;
znám, I know; znal jsem, *znál sem*, I knew; znej, *zney*, know;
ptám se, I ask; ptal jsem se, *ptál sem se*, I asked; ptej se, *ptey se*, ask.

Květina, f. <i>kvyětina</i> } kvítko, n. <i>kweetko</i> }	flower	spatřiti, <i>spätřšt'i</i> , to see (or to meet);
kytka, f. <i>kitká</i> ,	bouquet;	věděti, <i>vyědeři</i> , to know;
majetek, m. <i>mäyětek</i> ,	property;	poslušný, <i>á, é poslūshnee</i> , obedient;
na přesrok, <i>nä prshěsrok</i> ,	next year	neposlušný, disobedient;
před lety, <i>prshed lety</i> ,	years ago;	tento (f. <i>tato</i> , n. <i>toto</i>), <i>tentō</i> , this
druzí, <i>drūzee</i> ,	the others;	one, this here.
naši, <i>nāshi</i> ,	our folks;	

EXERCISES.

Voláš mě? — Koho voláš? — Koho jsi volal?	Doest thou call me? — Whom doest thou call? — Whom didst thou call?
Volám hochu; kde je? — Běhá ven- ku; všechny děti běhají venku.	I call the boy: where is he? — He is running outside (i. e. out of doors); —all the children are running out- side.
Volal jsem tě; kde's (abbrev. of kde jsi, byl?	I called thee; where hast thou been?

Běhal jsem na zahradě; — čekal jsem až mě budete volati.

Co jsi dělal na zahradě? — Nedělal jsem nic; hledal jsem květiny.

Je tam mnoho květin? — Ano.

Co druzí dělali na zahradě? — Hledali květiny se mnou.

Hledej pěkné květiny a dělej kytky. — Jděte*) oba, ty a Karel, a hledejte kvítka.

Doufám že napřesrok budeme živi a zdraví. — Doufejme!

Doufal jsem spatřiti vás zde. — Všichni doufali sme sejíti se s vámi.

Prodám svůj majetek. — Prodejte ho brzy. — Můj bratr prodal svůj majetek lacino.

Naši prodali farmu a povídají že půjdou do města.

Povídal jsem mu, že mám dům na prodej. — Prodávám všecko co mám.

Tento majetek není na prodej. — Kdo to povídal? — Kdo vám to povídal?

Každý to povídá. — Všichni to povídají.

Znáš mě? — Znáám tě dobře; — znal jsem tě už před lety.

I was running in the garden,—I was waiting until you would call me.

What wast thou doing in the garden? — I was not doing anything; — I was looking for flowers.

Are there many flowers there?—Yes.

What have the others been doing in the garden?— They were looking for flowers with me.

Look for nice flowers, and make bouquets. — Go both of you, — thou and Charles, and look for flowers.

I hope that next year we shall be alive and well. — Let us hope!

I hoped to see (or meet) you here.— We all hoped to meet you.

I shall sell my property. — Sell it soon. — My brother sold his property cheap.

Our folks have sold the farm, and they say that they will go to the city.

I told him that I had a house for sale. — I am selling everything I have.

This property is not for sale. — Who said so? — Who told you so?

Everybody says so. — They all say so.

Doest thou know me?—I know thee weil; — I knew you already years ago.

*) The infinitive is *jíti*, *yect'i*, to go; See Lesson XIII.

Každý mě zná; — všichni mě znají.	Everybody knows me; — they all know me.
Znáte mého otce? — Neznám ho. — Znal jste mou matku? — Neznal jsem ji.	Do you know my father?— I do not know him. -- Did you know my mother? — I did not know her.
Proč se ptáš? — Ptám se, protože chci věděti.*)	Why doest thou ask?—I ask because I want to know.
Ptáte se po mě? — Ptal jsem se kde bydlíte; — povídali mi, že prodal jste svůj dům. — Neprodal jsem ho ještě.	Do you ask for me?—I asked where you lived;—they told me that you had sold your house.—I have not sold it yet.
Neptám se co učitel povídal; já to vím.	I do not ask what the teacher said; I know it.
Věděl jsem, že chlapec je neposlušný; — víte že musel jsem trestati ho.	I knew that the boy was disobedient;—you know that I was obliged to punish him.
To víme. — Všichni víme, že trestal jste ho často.	We know that. — We all know that you punished him often.

Note 1. The root or stem of the verb **volati** is **vol**, to which the termination **ati** is attached. Verbs ending in **ati** belong to the fifth conjugation.

Note 2. Some verbs ending in **áti** form their present like the verbs of the first conjugation ending in **íti**, (**bíti**, to beat; **biju**, **biješ**, **bije**, etc.); for example:

hráti, *hrátí*, to play: **hraju***), **hraješ**, **hraje**, *hráyoš, hráyesh, hráyě*, I play, thou playest, he plays; **hrajeme**, **hrajete**, **hrajou****) *hrájemě, hráyetě, hráyoš* we, you, they play; — **hrál jsem**, *hrál sem*, I played; **hraj**, *hráy*, play.

*) **Věděti** (to know) is one of the thoroughly irregular verbs: **vím**, *víš, ví*, *veem, veesh, vee*, I know, thou knowest, he (she, it) knows; **víme**, *víte, vědí*, *veemě, veetě, vyěd'ee*, we, you, they know; — **věděl jsem**, *vyěd'ěl sem*, I knew; **věz**, *vyěz*, know thou; **vězte**, *vyěžte*, know you.

) **Hraji, **hrají**, (I play, they play) are considered the pure grammatical forms of the first person singular and third person plural; but **hrajou**, are exclusively used in the popular language.

However, this verb also follows the rule of the fifth conjugation in the present tense: **hrám, hráš, hrá; hráme, hráte, hrají** (I play, thou playest, he plays; we, you, they play).

A few verbs modify the letter **á** in the present tense:

Hráti, *hrshát'i*, to warm; — **hřeju** (or **hřeji**) **hřeješ, hřeje; hřejeme, hřejete, hřejou** (or **hřejí**); I warm, thou warmest, he warms; etc.

— **hřál jsem**, *hrshál sem*, I warmed; **hřej**, *hřshyey*, warm;

přáti, *prshát'i*, to wish; — **přeju** (or **přeji**), I wish; **přál jsem**, I wished; **přej**, wish;

smáti se, *smát'i sě*, to laugh; — **směju se** (or **směji se**), *smyěyŷ sě*, I laugh; **smál jsem se**, *smál sem sě*, I laughed; **směj se**, *smyěy sě*, laugh.

Note 3. There are some verbs essentially belonging to this conjugation, which show a considerable deviation in the present tense and imperative. The following are most frequently met with:

bráti, to take; — **beru, bereš, bere, bereme, berete, berou**, *berŷ, beresh, berě, berěmě, berěťě, beroŷ*, (I take, thou takest, etc.); **bral jsem**, *brál sem*, I took; **ber**, take;

práti, to wash; — **peru**, *perŷ*, I wash; **pral jsem**, *prál sem*, I washed; **per**, wash;

psáti, to write; — **píšu**, *peeshŷ*, I write; **psal jsem**, *psál sem*, I wrote; **piš**, *pish*, write;

kázati, to preach (or to command); — **kážu**, *kážŷ*, I preach; **kázal jsem**, I preached; **kaž**, preach;

tázati se, to ask; — **tážu se**, *tážŷ sě*, I ask; **tázal jsem se**, *tázál sem sě*, I asked; **taž se**, ask;

plakati, to weep; — **pláču**, *pláchŷ*, (but also **plakám**), I weep; **plakal jsem**, *plákál sem*, I wept; **plač**, *plách*, weep.

skákati, to jump; — **skáču**, *skáchŷ*, (but also **skákám**), I jump; **skákal jsem**, *skákál sem*, I was jumping; **skákej**, *skákey*, jump;

stonati, to be sick; — **stůňu**, *stooňŷ*, (but also **stonám**; *stōňám*), I am sick; **stůněš**, *stooňesh*, thou art sick; **stůně**, *stooňě*, he is sick, etc.; **stonej**, *stōney*, be sick.

LESSON XXXV.

Milovati , <i>milǔvǎti</i> ,	to love;	pracovati , <i>prǎtsǔvǎti</i> ,	to work;
děkovati , <i>ďekǔvǎti</i> ,	to thank;	radovati se , <i>rǎďďvǎti sě</i> ,	to rejoice;
litovati , <i>litǔvǎti</i> ,	to be sorry, to	opakovati , <i>ǔpǎkǔvǎti</i> ,	to repeat;
	regret;	pamatovati , <i>pǎmǎťǔvǎti</i> ,	to remember;
jmenovati , <i>menǔvǎti</i> ,	to name, to	podporovati , <i>pǔďporǔvǎti</i> ,	to support, to assist;
	call;	ztravovati , <i>strǎvǔvǎti</i> ,	to board.
jmenovati se , <i>m sě</i> ,	to be called;		
kupovati , <i>kǔpǔvǎti</i> ,	to be buying;		

Miluju (or **miluji***) *milǔyǔ*; I love; **miluješ**, *milǔyesh*, thou lovest; **miluje**, *milǔyě*, he (she, it) loves; **milujeme**, **milujete**, **milujou** (or **milují***) *milǔyěmě*, *milǔyěťě*, *milǔyoǔ*, we, you, they love; — **miloval jsem**, *milǔvǎl sem*, I loved; **miluj**, *milǔy*, love, **milujte**, *milǔyťě*, love (you);

děkuju (or **děkuji**), *ďekǔyǔ*, I thank; **děkoval jsem**, *ďekǔvǎl sem*, I thanked; **děkuj**, *ďekǔy*, thank;

lituju (or **lituji**), *litǔyǔ*, I regret; **litoval jsem**, *litǔvǎl sem*, I regretted; **lituj**, *litǔy*, regret;

jmenuju (or **jmenuji**), *menǔyǔ*, I name; **jmenoval jsem**, *menǔvǎl sem*, I named; **jmenuj**, *menǔy*, name;

jmenuju se, *menǔyǔ sě*, I am called; **jmenoval jsem se**, *menǔvǎl sem sě*, I was called; **jmenuj se**, *menǔy sě*, call yourself;

kupuju (or **kupuji**), *kǔpǔyǔ*, I am buying; **kupoval jsem**, *kǔpǔvǎl sem*, I was buying; **kupuj**, *kǔpǔy*, buy (or rather: keep buying);

*) **Miluju**, **milujou** (I love, they love) is always used in ordinary conversation: **miluji**, **milují**, *milǔyi*, *milǔyee*, (I love, they love) prevails in the written language, being considered the proper grammatical form. This applies to all verbs of this conjugation: **děkuju**, **děkujou**, or **děkuji**, **děkují** (I thank, they thank); **lituju**, **litujou**, or **lituji**, **litují** (I regret, they regret); etc.

pracuju (or **pracuji**), *prátsüyü*, I work; **pracoval jsem**, *prátsöväł sem*, I worked; **pracuj**, *prátsüy*, work;

raduju se (or **raduji se**), *rädüyü së*, I rejoice; **radoval jsem se**, *rädöväł sem së*, I rejoiced; **raduj se**, *rädüy së*, rejoice;

opakuju (or **opakuji**), *öpäküyü*, I repeat; **opakoval jsem**, *öpäköväł sem*, I repeated; **opakuj**, *öpäküy*, repeat;

pamatuju (or **pamatuji**), *pämätüyü*, I remember; **pamatoval jsem**, *pämäťöväł sem*, I remembered; **pamatuji**, *pämätüy*, remember;

podporuju (or **podporuji**), *pödpörüyü*, I support; **podporoval jsem**, *pödporöväł sem*, I supported; **podporuj**, *pödpörüy*, support;

žaluju (or **žaluji**), *žälüyü*, I complain; **žaloval jsem**, *žälöväł sem*, I complained; **žaluj**, *žälüy*, complain.

Bůh *)	m.	<i>booh</i> ,	God;	osud , m	<i>osüd</i> ,	fate;
blízní **) m.	<i>bleezñee</i> ,	the fellow man,		vychování , n.	<i>vykhöväñee</i> ,	education;
		(neighbor);		díl , m.	<i>d'eel</i> ,	a part;
král ,	<i>král</i> ,	the king;		výdělek , m.	<i>veed'elek</i> ,	earnings. wages, profit;
královna ,	<i>kráľevnä</i> ,	the queen;		který, á, é	<i>kteree</i> or <i>keree</i> ,	which, what, who;
žebník , m.	<i>žebník</i> ,	the beggar;		vespolek ,	<i>vespölek</i> ,	{ all together; one another;
kamarád , m.	<i>kämärád</i> ,	the comrade;		nazpamět ,	<i>näspämyět</i> ,	by heart;
objevitel , m.	<i>obyě-vitel</i> ,	the discoverer;		z paměti ,	<i>spämyět'i</i> ,	from memory;
svět , m.	<i>swyět</i> ,	the world;		svobodný, á, é	<i>swöbodnee</i> ,	free; single;
země , f.	<i>zemyě</i> ,	the country, the earth;		Římané ,	<i>rshimäné</i> ,	the Romans;
vlast , f.	<i>vläst</i> ,	one's country;		Václav ,	<i>vátsläv</i> ,	Venceslaus, Wencel.
dávati ,	<i>dävät'i</i> ,	to give, to offer;				
život , m.	<i>živöt</i> ,	life;				
válka , f.	<i>välkä</i> ,	war;				

*) **Bůh**, **Boha**, **Bohu**, s **Bohem** (*booh*, *böhä*, *böhü*, *sböhem*), God of God (God's), to God, with God.

) Nouns having the termination of adjectives are declined like adjectives of the corresponding termination. Hence we decline: **blízní, — **blízního**, of (our) fellow man or neighbor; **blíznímu**, to (our) neighbor; s **blízním**, with (our) neighbor. See Note 1, Lesson XXI.

EXERCISES.

<p>Miluj bližního svého*). — Milujte se vespolek.</p> <p>Miluješ rodiče své? — Miluju je velmi.</p> <p>Matka miluje své dítě. — Děti milují matku svou.</p> <p>Washington miloval svou vlast. — Římané milovali válku.</p> <p>Co kupuješ? — Kupuji obilí. — Co kupoval jsi oněhdy? — Kupoval jsem pár koní.</p> <p>Kdo kupoval tento dům? — Naši kupovali ten dům; — dávali za něj dva tisíce.</p> <p>Cheeš něco jisti? — Ňechci nic, děkuju.</p> <p>Dal jsem žebráku pět centů a on děkoval mi.</p> <p>Děkujme Bohu, že jsme zdraví. — Děkuj svému osudu, že jsi rozen ve svobodné zemi.</p> <p>Děkujte rodičům za dobré vychování.</p> <p>Lituju že musím pryč. — Litoval jsem, že musil jsem odejít. Zůstaň zde, povídali všichni, nebo budeš litovati.</p>	<p>Love thy neighbor. — Love (you) one another.</p> <p>Doest thou love thy parents? -- I love them greatly.</p> <p>The mother loves her child. — The children love their mother.</p> <p>Washington loved his country; -- The Romans loved war.</p> <p>What art thou buying? — I am buying grain.— What wert thou buying the other day?—I was buying a pair of horses.</p> <p>Who has been buying this house?— Our folks were buying that house; --they offered for it two thousand.</p> <p>Doest thou want something to eat? — I do not want anything, thank you.</p> <p>I gave to) the beggar five cents and he thanked me.</p> <p>Let us thank God that we are healthy. — Thank thy fate that thou wast born in a free country.</p> <p>Thank (your) parents for a good education.</p> <p>I am sorry that I must (go) away.— I was sorry that I had to leave. — Stay here, they all said, or thou wilt be sorry.</p>
--	---

*) This is the objective case, responding to **koho?** *whom?* It agrees with the possessive case; see Remark on page 86.

Jak se jmenuješ? — Jmenuju se Václav Zeman. — A jak vy se jmenujete? — Já se jmenuju Staněk. Jmenuj mi pět dílů světa.

Jak se jmenoval objevitel Ameriky? — Krištof Kolumbus.

Jak se jmenoval král, který ho podporoval? — Ferdinand. — A královna? — Isabella.

Pracuj pilně a budeš radovati se nad výdělkem.

Rád pracuješ? — Ano, ale můj kamarád nerad pracuje; — on pořád žaluje, že musí pracovati.

Pracovali jsme celý den.

Učitel žaloval mi, že jsi neposlušný; — opakuju, že musíš býti poslušný; — pamatuj si to!

Pamatuj co se učíš; — pamatuješ si to? — Pamatuju to dobře; — učím se to nazpaměť.

Pamatujme na chudé; -- podporujme je. -- Pamatujto že život jest krátký.

What is thy name? — My name is Wencel Zeman.—And what is your name? My name is Staněk. — Name (to me) the five parts of the world.

What was the name of the discoverer of America? — Christopher Columbus.

What was the name of the king who assisted him?—Ferdinand.— And of the queen? — Isabella.

Work diligently, and thou wilt rejoice over (thy) earnings.

Doest thou like to work?—Yes; but my comrade does not like to work; — he always complains that he must work.

We worked (*or* have been working) all day.

The teacher complained to me that thou art disobedient; — I repeat that thou must be obedient;— remember that!

Remember what thou learnest; — doest thou remember it? — I remember it well;—I learn it by heart.

Let us remember the poor; — let us support them — Remember (you) that life is short.

Note. The root or stem of the verb **milovati** is **mil**, to which the termination **ovati** is attached. Verbs ending in **ovati** (when the termination is attached to the *root*) belong to the sixth conjugation.

LESSON XXXVI.

(Já) bych	<i>bikh</i>	I should	Abych (já)	<i>ábikh</i>	that I should	
(ty) bys	<i>bis</i>	thou wouldst	abys (ty)	<i>ábis</i>	that thou shouldst	
(on) by	<i>bi</i>	he would	aby (on)	<i>ábi</i>	that he should; etc.	
(my) bychom	<i>bikhǒm</i>	} we should	Kdybych	<i>gdibikh</i>	if I should	
“ bysme	<i>bismě</i>		Kdybys	<i>gdibis</i>	if thou wouldst	
(vy) byste	<i>bistě</i>	you would	kdyby	<i>gdibi</i>	if he would (or simply “if).	
(oni) by	<i>bi</i>	they would				
Byl*) bych	<i>bill bikh</i>	I shou'd be	Abych byl	<i>ábikh bill</i>	that I s ^h ould be	
byl bys	<i>bill bisthou</i>	wouldst be	abys byl	<i>ábis bill</i>	that thou	
byl by	<i>bill bi</i>	he would be;			shouldst be	
		etc.	aby byl	<i>ábi bill</i>	that he should be; etc.	
Byl bych byl,	} I should have	been;	Kdybych byl,		if I were,	
byl bych býval,			} thou wouldst have	kdybys byl,		if thou wert,
byl bys býval,				kdyby byl,		if he were; etc.
		been; etc.				
Nesl bych,	<i>nessl bikh</i> ,	I should	nesli bychom (or bysme)	<i>nessli bi-</i>		
	(or “would”) carry;			<i>khǒm</i> ,	we should (or “would”) carry	
minul bych,	<i>minǔl bikh</i> ,	I should	minuli bychom,	<i>minǔli bikhom</i> ,	we	
	pass				should pass	
viděl bych,	<i>viděel bikh</i> ,	I should	viděli bychom,	<i>viděeli bikhǒm</i> ,	we	
	see				should see	
činil bych,	<i>chīnǐl bikh</i> ,	I should	činili bychom,	<i>chīnǐli bikhǒm</i> ,	we	
	do				should do	
volal bych,	<i>vǒlǎl bikh</i> ,	I should	volali bychom,	<i>vǒlǎli bikhǒm</i> ,	we	
	call				should call	
miloval bych,	<i>milǒvǎl bikh</i> ,	I should	milovali bychom,	<i>milǒvǎli bikhǒm</i> ,	we	
	love				should love.	

*) In the feminine gender byla bych, byla bys, byla by; third person neutre: bylo by, it would be. See Lesson IX.

Byl bych nesl, I should have carried.	byl bych činil, I should have done;
byl bych minul, I should have passed.	byl bych volal, I should have called.
byl bych viděl, I should have seen;	byl bych miloval, I should have loved.

Kdyby, <i>gdíbi</i> , if	kufr, m. <i>kŭff^er</i> , the trunk
kterýkoli, <i>ktěreekoli</i> , whichever, any	košík, m. <i>kosheek</i> , the basket
kdož (same as kdo), <i>gdōž</i> , who	list, m. <i>list</i> , the letter
či, <i>čili</i> , <i>chi</i> , <i>chilli</i> , or	vodopád, m. <i>vōdōpád</i> , a waterfall
řici, <i>rsheetsi</i> , to say, to tell	krajina, f. <i>krāyina</i> , a section of country
řekni, <i>rshěkñi</i> , say, tell (thou)	počasí, n. <i>pōchāssee</i> , the weather
řekněte, <i>rshěkñetě</i> , say, tell (you)	štěkati, <i>sh^tekāti</i> , to bark.
těžký, <i>é teshkee</i> , heavy, hard	

EXERCISES.

Nesl bych ten kufr, kdyby nebyl tak těžký.	I would carry that trunk, if it were not so heavy.
Byl bych nesl ten kufr, kdybyste byli chtěli.	I should have carried that trunk, if you had wanted it.
My bysme nesli košík a vy byste nesli pytel.	We should carry the basket, and you would carry the sack.
Četl bys tu knihu? Četl bych ji rád, kdybych ji měl.	Wouldst thou read that book? — I would like to read it, if I had it.
My bychom (or my bysme) rádi četli dnešní noviny.	We should like to read today's newspaper.
Které noviny byste rádi četli? — Kterékoliv.	What newspaper would you like to read? — Any newspaper.
Byli bychom (or byli bysme) četli ten list, ale byl tuze dlouhý.	We should have read that letter, but it was too long.
Pil bych pivo, kdybych ho měl. — Pil byste*) čaj? — Nepil bych nic.	I should drink beer, if I had it. — Would you drink tea? — I would not drink anything.

*) Speaking to one person and using the second person plural: **vy**, you; speaking to several persons, we should say: **pili byste** (would you drink).

Kdyby bylo pěkně, sil bych pšenici.
 Kdyby pes štěkal, kopnul bych ho.
 Viděl bych rád vodopád Niagara.
 Na cestě do Iowy viděli bysme řeku
 Mississippi.

Kdybyste přijeli k nám, viděli byste hezkou krajinu.

Kdybych věděl, jaké počasí bude, řekl bych vám.

Chodil bych k tobě, kdybys chtěl.

On by chodil k vám často. — Proč by nechodil? — Jen ať chodí!

Věřil bys tomu? — Věřil byste že nemám čas? — Nevěřil bych to**). —

Věřili by nám? — Myslím že věřili by vám to.

Prodal bych rád můj obchod. — Těžko byste prodal nyní.

Litoval bych, kdybyste prodal ten obchod. — Já bych nelitoval nic.

Je čas, abych šel. — Řekni mu aby šel.

Chei abys přišel brzy. — Chei abyste odešli.

Cheete abych to koupil?

If it were nice*), I should sow wheat.
 If the dog barked, I should kick him.
 I should like to see the Niagara Falls.
 On (our) way to Iowa we should see the river Mississippi.

If you would come to us, you would see a nice country.

If I knew what kind of weather it will be, I should tell you.

I should come to thee (i. e. "come to see thee often" ,if thou wouldst wish it.

He would come to you often.—Why should he not come?—Do let him come !

Wouldst thou believe it? — Would you believe that I have no time? — I should not believe it.

Would they believe us?—I think that they would believe you (it).

I would like to sell my business. — You would find it hard to sell now.

I should be sorry, if you would sell that business. — I should not be sorry at all.

It is time that I should go.—Tell him to go *or* to come (i. e. tell him that he should go).

I want thee to come soon.— I want you to leave.

Do you want me to buy that?

* That is, "if the weather were nice".

***) Věřiti to (accus. case), věřiti tomu (dative case); both are used with equal propriety.

Kdybys byl zde býval, byl bys viděl
všelico.

Kdybych tam byl, bylo by dobře.—
Kdybych tam byl býval, byl bych
rád.

If thou hadst been here, thou wouldst
have seen different things.

If I were there, it would be well.—If
I had been there, I should be glad.

Note 1. The English conjunctions *if, whether*, ussd to introduce a conditional sentence, are expressed in Bohemian by the suffix *li*, or by *jestli, zdali, pakli, yestli, zdáli, pākli*:

Jsem-li, *sem-li* } if I am,
jestli jsem, *yestli sem* } whether I
zdali jsem, *zdáli sem* } am;

byl-li jsem, *billi sem* } if I
jestli jsem byl, *yestli sem bill* } was,
zdali jsem byl, *zdáli sem bill* } if I
pakli jsem byl, *pākli sem bill* } have
been.

budu-li *būdŭ-li* } if I shall
jestli budu, *yestli būdŭ* } be; etc.

nesu-li, *nessŭ-li* } if I carry;
jest-li nesu, *yestli nessŭ* }

jsme-li, *smě-li* } if I am,
jestli jsme, *yestli smě* } whether
zdali jsme, *zdáli smě* } we are;

byli-li jsme, *billi-li smě* } if we
jestli jsme byli, *yestli smě billi* } were,
zdali jsme byli, *zdáli smě billi* } if we
pakli jsme byli, *pākli smě billi* } have
been;

budeme-li, *būděmě-li* } if we
jestli budeme, *yestli būděmě* } shall
be; etc

nesl-li jsem, *nessli sem* } if I
jestli jsem nesl, *yestli sem nessl* } carried

Arci (že), *artsi* } of course,
ovšem (že), *ofshĕm* } to be sure;

nikam, *nikām*, nowhere;

nikdo jiný, *nikdŏ yinee*, no one else;

ani my, *āni me*, not even we,
neither we;

zač je, *zách yĕ*, what is it worth;

zač jsou, *zách soŭ*, what are they
worth;

mouka, f. *moukă*, the flour;

tuna, f. *tŭnă*, a ton;

přijeti *prshiyĕti*, to arrive (by
some conveyance);

smĕti, *smyĕti*, to be allowed,
to dare;

smím-li, *smeemli*, if I may;

víte-li, *veetĕli*, if you know;

slibiti, *sleebiti*, to promise;

pověděti, *povyĕdĕti*, to tell;

pověz, *povyĕz*, tell (thou);

utratiti, *ŭtrătiti*, to spend;

vzítí si, *vzeeti si*, to take (to
one's self);

vezmu si, *vĕzmŭ si*, I shall take
(to myself).

Note 2. The pronoun **si** has the same meaning as *sobě, sobyě*, “to one’s self”, for one’s self”. It often accompanies verbs, denoting the closest relation between the subject and its predicate, somewhat after the manner of reflexive verbs (connected with *se*, the same as *sebe*, one’s self). For instance:

Vzítí means simply “to take”; **vzítí si** means “to take to one’s self”, — to take for one’s own use or exclusive possession. — **Vzítí kytku**, to take a flower; **vzítí si kytku**, to take (and keep for one’s self) a flower. — **Vzítí si ženu**, to take to one’s self a wife; **vzal si ženu**, he took unto himself a wife.

Vezmi si peníze, take (to thyself) money, *or* the money; **vezměte si piva**, take (yourself) some beer; **vezměme si vína**, let us take (ourselves) some wine.

Koupím klobouk, I shall buy a hat; **koupím si klobouk**, I shall buy (myself) a hat,—I shall buy me a hat; **kup si klobouk**, buy (thyself) a hat.

Dej udělat obraz, (*děj ůdělāt obráz*), let (hou) a picture be made; order a picture to be made; **d-j si udělat obraz**, let a picture be made for thyself. — **Dejte udělat šaty**, have a suit of clothes made; **dejte si udělat šaty**, have a suit of clothes made for yourself.

Note 3. The *finite* verb **vzítí** (to take) has only a past and future tense, — *the continuous* verb **brátí** (to take) supplying the present: **beru**, I take. See Note 3 on page 153.

Vzal jsem, vzal jsi, vzal, I took, thou tookest, he took; **vezmu, vezmeš, vezme**, I shall take, thou wilt take, he will take; **vezmi, vezměte**, take (thou, you).

In common discourse we often hear **vemu, vemeš, veme, věm, věmesh, věm, věm, věm**, in place of **vezmu, vezmeš, vezme**; and **vem, vemte, věm, věmtě**, in place of **vezmi, vezměte**.

EXERCISES.

<p>Ptáte se, jsem-li rád? — Ovšem že jsem rád.</p> <p>Ptal jsem se, jsou-li naši zde.—Ar-ci že jsou, — pravil pan Hronek.</p>	<p>You ask if I am glad? — Of course I am glad.</p> <p>I asked if our folks were here. — Of course they are, — said Mr. Hronek.</p>
---	---

Rád bych věděl, jestli sestra přijela.	I should like to know, if sister has arrived.
Ráda bych věděla (f.), zdali bratr přijel.	I should like to know if brother has arrived.
Rád bych slyšel, je-li můj syn živ nebo mrtev.	I should like to hear whether my son is alive or dead.
Co myslíte, bude pršet? — Kdož ví, bude-li pršet čili nebude.	What do you think, will it rain? — Who knows if it will rain or not.
Myslíte-li že bude pršet, nepůjdu nikam.	If you think that it will rain, I shall not go anywhere.
Chci vědět má-li peníze; — nemá-li, ať odejde.	I want to know if he has money; — if he has not, let him go away.
Dám-li mu peníze, utratí je. — Dáme-li mu dollar, bude spokojen. — Dáte-li mi něco, budu rád.	If I give him money, he spends it. — If we give him a dollar, he will be satisfied. -- If you give me something, I shall be glad.
Podívám se, zdali je otec doma. — Pověz mi pak, je-li doma nebo není.	I shall see if father is at home. — Tell me then if he is at home or not.
Povězte mi, musím-li jíti domu nebo ne. — Ať poví ti, musíš-li jíti do školy.	Tell me whether I must go home or not. — Let him tell thee, whether thou must go to school.
Povězte mi, smím-li vzít si růži. — Smíš; ale nikdo jiný nesmí.	Tell me if I may take a rose. — Thou mayest; but nobody else may.
Vezmi si tu kytku. — Já nesmím.	Take that flower. — I dare not (I must not).
Proč nesmíš? — Nesmíš-li ty, nesmím já.	Why must thou not? — If thou must not, I must not.
Nesmí-li nikdo, nesmíme ani my.	If nobody is allowed, then we too are not allowed.
Nevím smíme-li, nebo nesmíme.	I don't know whether we may or not.
To nesmíš dělat! — Jestli nesmím, teda nebudu.	Thou must not do that! — If I must not, than I shall not.
Otec slíbil mi dollar, budu-li hodný.	Father promised me a dollar if I am (i. e. shall be) good.

Jestli ti ho slíbil, dá ti ho.	If he has promised it (to thee), he will give it to thee.
Povězte mi, víte-li zač je tuna se- na. — Víte-li pak, zač jsou pra- sata?	Tell me if you know what is a ton of hay worth. — Do you know what hogs are worth?
Znáte-li pak mě? — Víte-li*) pak, že jsem zde dávno?	Do you know me? — Do you know that I have been here a long time?

Note 4. The present participle *being* varies in Bohemian according to gender and number:

jsa, sá, m. — **jsouc, soúts, f. and n.** — **jsouce, soútsě, pl.** of all three genders.

The past, *having been*, is rendered thus:

byv, bif, m. — **byvši, bifshi, f. and n.** — **byvše, bifshě, pl.** of all three genders.

The following models will amply suffice for the verbs of all conjugations :

nesa	<i>nessá, m.</i>	carrying	sedě	<i>sed'e, m.</i>	sitting
nesouc	<i>nessoúts, f. & n.</i>	"	sedíc,	<i>sed'eets, f. & n.</i>	"
nesouce	<i>nessoútsě, pl.</i>	"	sedíce,	<i>sed'eetsě, pl.</i>	"
pije	<i>piyě, m.</i>	drinking	volaje,	<i>voláyě, m.</i>	calling
pijíc	<i>piyeets, f. & n,</i>	"	volajíc,	<i>voláyeets, pl.</i>	"
pijíce	<i>piyeetsě, pl.</i>	"	volajíce,	<i>voláyeetsě, pl.</i>	"
miluje	<i>millúyě, m.</i>	loving	piv	<i>pif, m.</i>	having drauk
milujíc	<i>millúyeets, f. & n.</i>	"	pivši	<i>pifshi, f. & n.</i>	"
milujíce	<i>millúyeetsě, pl.</i>	"	pivše	<i>pifshě, pl.</i>	"

seděv, sěďef, having sat; **volav, voláf,** having called; etc.

*) We may ask, for instance : **víte zač je mouka?** "do you know what flour is worth?" But if we ask : **víte-li pak zač je mouka?** or **zdali pak víte, zač je mouka?** there is a peculiar emphasis in the question, as if we say in English : "I wonder if you know what flour is worth?" — **Znáte mě?** "do you know me?" **Znáte-li pak mě?** or **zdali pak mě znáte?** "I wonder if you know me!"

Viděti, “to see”, is irregular, forming its partic. like **nesti** : **vida** m. **vidouc** f. & n., **vidouce**, pl. (*vidā, vidouťs, vidouťsě*), seeing.

These participles occur in the written language and sometimes in solemn discourse, but are never used in ordinary conversation. Expressions may be greatly shortened and made incisive by their use; for instance :

“As he was going away from here, he fell down”, — may be translated into Bohemian: **Jda odsud, upadl**. In common discourse, however, people would say: **Když šel odsud, upadl** (or **upadnul**.*)

A verbal adjective is formed in Bohemian by adding an **í** to the present participle (f. and n.). **jsoucí, souťsee**, being; **nesoucí, nessoťsee**, carrying; **pijící, piyeťsee**, drinking; **volající, volāyeťsee**, calling; **milující, millūyeťsee**, loving. — They are rarely employed in common conversation, but frequently in writing:

Muž nesoucí kufr minul mě; a man carrying a trunk passed me. — **Rodiče milující své děti jsou starostliví o ně**; parents loving their children are anxious about them.

LESSON XXXVII.

THE PASSIVE VERB. In English the “past participle” is also the *passive participle*, employed to form the “passive voice” or passive verb-phrases : *I am carried; I was carried; I shall be carried*.

In Bohemian there is a special “passive participle”, ending in **n** (**na** in the feminine, **no** is the neutre gender, — **ni, ny, na** in the plural), by which the passive voice of transitive verbs is formed :

Jsem nesen, sem neseň (**nesena, neseňa** f., **neseno, neseň** n.), I am carried; **jsme nesení, y, a, smě neseňi**, we are carried;

byl jsem nesen, byl sem neseň, I was carried;

budu nesen, budu neseň, I shall be carried.

*) **Padnouti, pādnoůťi**, to fall; **upadnouti, ůpādnoůťi**, to fall down. As repeatedly stated in preceding lessons, the colloquial usage drops the final **í** of the infinitive, and the letter **t** has its ordinary hard sound : *pādnoůt, ůpādnoůt*.

Jsem viděn, *sem viděn*, I am seen; | **jsem volán**, *sem volán*, I am called;
jsem učen, *sem ůchen*, I am taught; | **jsem milován**, *sem milován*, I am
loved;

The passive participle of verbs of the first conjugation ending in **íti**, and of verbs of the second conjugation (ending in **outi**) terminates in **it** and **ut**; for instance, — **bíti**, **minouti** (to beat, to pass :

Jsem bit, *sem bit*, I am beat (whipped or punished); **byl jsem bit**, I was beat; **budu bit**, I shall be beat ;

jsem minut, *sem minūt*, I am passed; **byl jsem minut**, I was passed; **budu minut**, I shall be passed.

The imperative of the passive voice is expressed in Bohemian by **ať**, which is already familiar to the student as an equivalent of the English "let":

Ať jsem nesen , a, o,	<i>ãť sem neseň</i> ,	let me be carried;
ať jsem bit , a, o,	<i>ãť sem bit</i> ,	let me be whipped;
ať jsem volán , a, o,	<i>ãť sem volán</i> ,	let me be called;
ať jsem mileván , a, o,	<i>ãť sem milován</i> ,	let me be loved.

In English the past or passive participle is often used as an adjective; for example: "An *invited* guest."

In Bohemian every passive participle may be changed into an adjective by adding **ý** (and changing a into **á** in the feminine, o into **é** in the neutre gender. For instance :

nesen , a, o : nesený , á , é , carried	viděn , a, o : viděný , á , é , seen
bit , a, o : bitý , á , é , beaten	volán , a, o : volaný , á , é , called
minut , a, o : minutý , á , é , passed	milován , a, o : milovaný , á , é , loved, beloved.

In the termination **án**, **ána**, **áno** the long vowel **á** is shortened when the participle changes into an adjective :

volán m., volána f	voláno , n.	} called (as past participle and adjective).
volaný m. volaná f.	volané , n.	

POTENTIAL FORMS.

The potential mood employing the auxiliary *may* is formed in Bohemian by means of the verb **moci**, *motsi* (commonly **mociti**, vulgarly **mocet**, *mōtst*), which has an irregular inflection :

Mohu,	<i>mǒhŭ,</i>	I may	můžeme,	<i>moožěmě,</i>	we may
můžeš,	<i>moožesh,</i>	thou mayest	můžete,	<i>moožětě,</i>	you may
může,	<i>moožě,</i>	he (she, it) may	mohou,	<i>mǒhoŭ,</i>	they may;
mohl, (a, o) bych,	<i>mǒhl, (ǒ, ǒ), bikh,</i>				
		I might	mohli, (y, a) bychom (or bysme';	<i>mǒhli bismě,</i>	we might
mohl bys,	<i>mǒhl bis,</i>	thou mightest	mohli byste, <i>m. bistě,</i>		you might
mohl by,	<i>mǒhl bi,</i>	he might	mohli by, <i>m. bi,</i>		they might
Mohu býti nesen,		I may be carried	mohl bych býti nesen,		I might be carried
mohu býti bit,		I may be whipped	mohl bych býti bit,		I might be whipped
mohu býti viděn,		I may be seen	mohl bych býti viděn,		I might be seen
mohu býti milován,		I may be loved	mohl bych býti milován,		I might be loved.
Mohl jsem býti nesen,	<i>mǒhl sem beč'i nessěn,</i>	I might have been carried;			
mohl jsem býti bit,	<i>mǒhl sem beč'i bit,</i>	I might have been whipped.			

Otherwise *moci* has the meaning of "can" or "to be able":

Mohu to udělati; — nemohu to udělati;	I can do it; — I cannot do it;
mohl jsem to udělati; — nemohl jsem to udělati;	I could do it (or: I could have done it); — I could not do it;
budu moci to udělati; — nebudu moci to udělati.	I shall be able to do it; — I shall not be able to do it;
Můžete přijíti? — Nemůžeme přijíti.	Can you come? — We cannot come.
Mohou choditi? — Nemohou choditi.	Can they walk? — They cannot walk.

In common discourse *mohu* (I can), and *mohou* (they can) are displaced by *můžu* and *můžou*, *moožŭ*, *moožoŭ*, making the present tense consistent, if not regular.

REITERATIVE FORM.

The English reiterative form of "used to" is rendered in Bohemian: 1. — By reiterative verbs derived from simple verbs as explained in Note

5, Lesson XIII; for instance: **hráti** means “to play”; **hrávati** means “to play often”, to use to play;

hrál jsem tam; hrával jsem tam; — hráli tam; hrávali tam.	I played there; I used to play there; — they played there; they used to play there.
--	---

2; — By verbs having in themselves a reiterative meaning; for instance: **přicházeti**, *prshikházěti*, means “to come often” (also “to be coming”); **docházeti**, *dōkházěti*, means “to go often somewhere”, to make frequent calls, (also “to be on the decline”);

on přichází k nám; on přicházel k nám; — my docházeli k němu; budeme docházeti k němu.	he often comes to us; he used to come to us; — we used to go to him; we shall often go to him.
---	--

LESSON XXXVIII.

English participles may be used substantively, or changed into nouns; for instance:

speaking, — *the speaking*; sitting, — *the sitting*; calling, — *the calling*.

In Bohemian, nouns are derived from verbs in two different ways, illustrated by the following examples:

1.

bíti,	<i>beeťi,</i>	to beat; — bití,	<i>biťee,</i>	the beating;
píti,	<i>peeťi,</i>	to drink; — pití,	<i>piťee,</i>	the drinking;
šíti,	<i>sheeťi,</i>	to sew; — šití,	<i>shiťee,</i>	the sewing;
žítí,	<i>žeeťi,</i>	to live; — žití,	<i>žiťee,</i>	the living;
bod-nouti,	<i>bodnoůťi,</i>	to stab; — bod-nutí,	<i>bodnůťee,</i>	the stabbing, a stab;

hyn-outi, *hynoůťi,* to be perishing; — **hyn-utí,** *hynůťee,* the perishing;

kop-nouti, *kopnoůťi,* to kick; — **kop-nutí,** *kopnůťee,* the kicking, a kick

2.

nes-ti,	<i>nessťi</i> ,	to carry; — nes-ení,	<i>nessēnee</i> ,	the carrying;
pás-ti,	<i>pásťi</i> ,	to herd; — pas-ení,	<i>pässenee</i> ,	the herding;
vid-ěti,	<i>vid'ěťi</i> ,	to see; — vid-ění,	<i>vid'ěnee</i> ,	the seeing; the vision;
slyš-eti,	<i>slíšěťi</i> ,	to hear; — slyš-ení,	<i>slíšěnee</i> ,	the hearing;
mluv-iti,	<i>mlůvťi</i> ,	to speak; — mluv-ení,	<i>mlůvěnee</i> ,	the speaking;
volati,	<i>voláťi</i> ,	to call; — vol-ání,	<i>volánee</i> ,	the calling or call;
milov-ati,	<i>mlůvāťi</i> ,	to love; — milov-ání,	<i>mlůvānee</i> ,	the loving.

The simple rules of derivation are apparent from the above list.

1. Verbs terminating in **íti** (forming a subdivision of the first conjugation; Note 3, p. 138;) are changed into nouns by a simple transfer of the long **í** : **píti**, to drink, — **pítí**, the drinking.

2. Verbs ending in **outi** (which belong to the second conjugation) become nouns by a change of its termination into **utí** : **bodnouti**, to stab, (**bodnu**, I shall stab), — **bodnutí**, the stabbing, or "a stab".

3. Verbs ending in **ěti**, **eti**, **iti** (which form the third and fourth conjugations) become nouns by changing their termination into **ění** or **ení** : **viděti**, to see, — **vidění**, the seeing, or "the vision"; **mluviti**, to speak, — **mluvení**, the speaking.

4. Verbs ending in **ati** (which form the fifth and sixth conjugations) become nouns by changing that termination into **ání** : **volati**, to call, — **volání**, the calling, or "the call".

When the long vowel **á** occurs in the root of a simple verb, it is shortened in the process of deriving a noun :

pásti, *pásťi*, to herd (or "to pasture"; **pas-ení**, *pässenee*, the herding;
psá-ti, *psáťi*, to write; **psa-ní**, *psānee*, the writing.

In some cases the derivation of nouns from verbs of the first conjugation is somewhat irregular, the same as the formation of the tenses for instance :

čísti, *cheest'i*, to read; (čtu, čteš, čte, *chtü, chtësh, chtě*, I read, thou readest, he reads); — čte-ní, *chtěñee*, the reading;

plesti, *ples'ti*, to twist; (pletu, pleteš, plete, I twist, thou twistest, he twists); — plete-ní, *plětěñee*, the twisting;

klásti, *klást'i*, to lay; (kladu, kladeš, klade, I lay, thou layest, he lays); — klade-ní, *kläděñee*, the laying;

másti, *mást'i*, to confuse (to mix up); mate, he confuses; — matení, *mätěñee*, the confusion or mixing up;

mesti, *mes'ti*, to sweep; — mete, he sweeps; — metení, *mětěñee*, the sweeping;

vesti, *ves'ti*, to lead; vede, he leads; — vedení, *věděñee*, the leading.

LESSON XXXIX.

VERBS CLASSIFIED.

1. — As before observed (in Lesson XXXI) *nesti*, “to carry” or “to be carrying”, is a verb denoting a CONTINUOUS action.

2. — By means of prefixes other verbs are derived therefrom, which denote a limited or FINISHED action and are called FINITE verbs; for example :

donesti, *döness'ti*, to carry somewhere or to somebody ;

přinesti, *prshiness'ti*, to bring, to fetch.

3. — Many continuous verbs have a corresponding form denoting a REPEATED or reiterated action; for instance :

<i>nesti</i> , <i>ness'ti</i> , to carry;	<i>nositi</i> , <i>noss'i'ti</i> , to carry repeatedly;
<i>vezti</i> , <i>vez'ti</i> , to carry (in a vehicle ;	<i>voziti</i> , <i>vozit'i</i> , “ “
<i>vesti</i> , <i>ves'ti</i> , to lead;	<i>voditi</i> , <i>vod'it'i</i> to lead repeatedly;
<i>čísti</i> , <i>cheest'i</i> , to read;	<i>čítati</i> , <i>cheetät'i</i> , to read repeatedly;
<i>pásti</i> , <i>pásst'i</i> , to herd;	<i>pásati</i> , <i>pásstät'i</i> , to herd repeatedly;
<i>letěti</i> , <i>letět'i</i> , to fly;	<i>lítati</i> , <i>leetät'i</i> , to fly repeatedly;
<i>jeti</i> , <i>yet'i</i> , to ride;	<i>jezditi</i> , <i>yezdt'i'ti</i> , to ride repeatedly.

There are, besides, reiterative verbs derived in the manner explained in Note 5, page 61, and denoting so to say a CUSTOMARY action; for instance:

nositi,	to carry repeatedly,	nosí-va-ti, <i>nosseerãtŕi,</i> to use to carry,
voziti,	to carry repeatedly (in a (vehicle),	vozí-va-ti, <i>vozeevãtŕi,</i> to use to carry,
voditi,	to lead repeatedly,	vodí-va-ti, <i>vod'eevãtŕi,</i> to use to lead,
čítati,	to read repeatedly,	čítá-va-ti, <i>cheeéãvãtŕi,</i> to use to read.
pásati,	to herd repeatedly,	pásá-va-ti, <i>pássãvãtŕi,</i> to use to herd.
lítati,	to fly repeatedly,	lítá-va-ti, <i>leetãvãtŕi,</i> to use to fly.
jezditi,	to ride repeatedly;	jezdí-va-ti, <i>yezďeevãtŕi,</i> to use to ride.

4. -- Certain verbs denote an action which is simply MOMENTARY. As a rule they terminate in **iti**, belonging to the fourth conjugation. For instance : **skočiti**, *sköchitŕi*, to jump, to leap, — that is, to make a jump or leap.

From these are derived FINITE verbs in the same manner as from continuous verbs (1.), namely by prefixes. For instance :

kročiti, to make a step,	zakročiti, <i>zãkröchitŕi,</i> to step between, to interfere;
skočiti, to jump,	vyskočiti, <i>visköchitŕi,</i> to jump out or up;
střeliti, to shoot (once),	zastřeliti, <i>zãstrshelitŕi,</i> to shoot dead;
strčiti, to push,	vystřčiti, <i>vist'rchitŕi,</i> to push out;
pustiti, to let go,	vypustiti, <i>vipűstŕitŕi,</i> to let out,
chytiti, to catch,	zachytiti, <i>zãkhŕitŕi,</i> to catch up, to snatch;
chybiti, to err,	pochybiti, <i>pökhŕitŕi,</i> to commit an error.

Note 1. Such is the general classification of Bohemian verbs in regard to the duration of the action or process they denote. But for practical purposes it is sufficient to distinguish two great classes of verbs, namely:

1. CONTINUOUS VERBS, denoting a continued or repeated action. This class comprises the simple verbs of all conjugations except some ending in **outi** and **iti**. For instance: **nesti**, to carry; **plouti**, to float; **viděti**, to see; **činiti**, to do; **volati**, to call; **milovati**, to love.

2. FINITE VERBS, denoting a finished or momentary action or process. This class comprises many verbs of the second and fourth conjuga-

tions, ending in **outi** and **iti**; for instance: **minouti**, to pass; **bodnouti**, to stab; **skočiti**, to leap; **střeliti**, to shoot (to discharge a shot).

Most of the verbs derived from others by prefixes also belong to this class; for example: **vyskočiti**, to jump up; **donesti**, to carry somewhere; **pominouti**, to pass over; **uviděti**, to catch a sight; **učiniti**, to do a certain act; **zavolati**, to call out or up; **pomilovati**, to fondle a little.

The finite verbs have in fact only a past and a future tense, and no present, because their present *form* denotes a *future action*:

donesu , I shall carry somewhere;	uvidím , I shall see;
minu , I shall pass;	učiním , I shall do;
udělám , I shall make;	skočím , I shall jump;
zavolám , I shall call;	vyskočím , I shall jump up;
pomiluju (or pomiluji) I shall fondle;	střelím , I shall shoot.

LESSON XI.

Every language has peculiar ways or modes of expression, which cannot be taken literally; or translated closely into another language. They are called idiomatic expressions or **IDIOMS**. Many of them are of frequent occurrence in ordinary intercourse.

The student will naturally desire to know the Bohemian equivalents of such English expressions as are in constant use in common conversation. He will find most of them in the following list, the English expression always preceding in Bohemian, in order to facilitate their study. The beginner should often peruse these phrases until he has a perfect command of them, or — to use an English idiom — until “he has them at his fingers’ ends.”

All along,	venkonce , veskrze ,	<i>venkõntsěm, vesk^e rzě;</i>
all over,	všude ,	<i>vshūdě;</i>
all is over,	je po všem ,	<i>yě pofshěm;</i>
all in all,	vůbec ,	<i>voobets;</i>
all one,	vše jedno ,	<i>fshě yednǎ;</i>
all the same,	“ “	“ “

all the time,
all the better,
all hollow,
all of a sudden,
along-side,
as far as I can,
as far as possible,
as far as I am concerned
as far as that is con-
cerned.

at any rate,
at all events,
at last,
at length,
at once,
all at once,
at large,

Be it as it may,

be perfectly easy,
by and by,
by the bye,
by the way,
by day,
by night,
by the day,
by the week,
by the piece,
by all means,

Call for me,
can it be possible?
can't do it !

stále, pořád,
tím líp,
na dobro,
najednou, z nenadání,
vedle,
pokud mohu,
pokud možná,
co se mě týče,
co se toho týče,

} buď jak buď,

} konečně,

} hned, najednou,
vůbec, celkem,

buď jak buď, at' je
jakkoli;

buďte bez starosti,
hnedle, znenáhla,

} mimo to,
} apropos,
za dne,

v noci,
na den,
na týden,
od kusu,
na všecken způsob,

stavte se pro mě,
je-li možná?
nejde to !

stále, p̄rshád;
veem leep;
nā dōbrō;
nāyednoū, znēnādāñi;
vĕdlĕ;
p̄dkūđ mōhū;
p̄dkūđ mōžná;
tsō sĕ myĕ teečĕ;
tsō sĕ tōhō teečĕ;

būď yāk būď;

kōnechñĕ;

hnĕđ, nāyednoū;

voobets, tselkem.

būď yāk būď; at' yĕ
yākkoli;

būďtĕ bestārōstĕi;
hnĕdlĕ, znēnāhlā;

mimō tō,
āpropo,
zā dnĕ;

vnotsi;
nā den;
nā teeden;
ōđ kūsū;
nā fshĕkhen spoosob.

stāftĕ sĕ pro myĕ;
yelli mōžná?
nĕyđĕ tō!

come on,
come along,
come and see us,

} **pojď ! pojďte !**
přijďte nás navštívit,

pojď, pojďte);*
*prshiďtě nás năfshĕevĕ-
vit.*

Don't you hear?
don't you see?
don't you know it?
don't mention it!
dear me !
day and night,
day by day,
do as you please,
drop me a line.

což neslyšíte?
což nevidíte?
což to nevíte?
to nestojí za řeč,
o jemine !
ve dne v noci,
den co den,
dělejte jak myslíte,
pište mi pár rádek,

tsōsh nēslishēetě?
tsōsh nēviďēetě?
tsōsh tō nēveetě?
tō nestoyee ză rshĕch;
o yĕminĕ;
vĕ dnĕ vnotsi;
den tsō den;
ďĕletĕ yăk misleetĕ;
pishĕ me păr rshădĕk.

Excuse me !
very now and then,
Farewell !
Good-bye !
get up !
get out !
get ready !
give me a rest !
go ahead !
go on !

odpusťte !
každou chvíli,
} **s bohem—na zdar !**
zhůru !—vstaňte !
ven !—pojďte ven !
připravte se !
dejte mi pokoj !
} **jen dál !**

odpustĕ!
kăzďou khweeli;
sbōhem ! — nă zdăr !
zhoorŭ !—fstăntĕ!
ven !—pōďtě ven !
prshiprăftĕ sĕ !
deytĕ me pōkoy !
yen dăl !

Help yourself !
here and there,
hurry up !
he is good at it !

poslužte si ! vemte si !
račte !
sem tam,
honem !
on to umí ! on to zná !

poslŭshĕ si ! vemĕ si !
răchtĕ !
sem tām,
hōnem !
ōn tō ŭmee ! ōn tō znă !

*) Colloquially *pōď, pōďtě*, (thou, you) come on. — **I pojďte už!**
i pōďtě ŭsh! come on, now! do come along!

he is good for nothing;
 he is on the lookout;
 he is well off;
 he means no harm;
 he took a hint;
 he keeps out of sight;
 he has a head of his
 own;

how do you do ?
 how are you ?

není k ničemu;
 on číhá;
 on se má dobře;
 on to zle nemyslí,
 dovtípil se;
 on sestraní;
 on má vlastní hlavu;

} jak se máte ?

neyñi kñichěmü;
 ōn cheehá;
 ōn sě má dōbrshě;
 ōn tō zlē němislee;
 dōfveepil sě;
 ōn sě strāñee;
 ōn má vlāstñee hlāvō;

yāk sě mátě?

I am glad of it !
 I bet, — I guess,
 I don't care;
 I have a mind.
 I made up my mind,
 I can't afford it;
 I can't stand it (*mean-*
ing: I hate it);
 I can do without it;
 I have taken a fancy
 to it;
 I have no hand in it;
 I had some words with
 him;

I had rather
 I would sooner

I am no match for him;
 I am very anxious;

I am sorry for it:
 I will make him do it;

to mě těší !
 vsadím se, — myslím,
 nedbám; to je mi jedno;
 hodlám,
 odhodlal jsem se,
 nejsem s to;
 nemohu to vystát (vy-
 státí);
 mohu být bez toho;
 zalíbilo se mi to;

nemám s tím co dělat;
 měl jsem s nim hádku;

} raději bych

já s něho nejsem;
 mám starost;* — tuze
 rád bych**)

lituju toho;
 já ho donutím;

tō myě vēshee!
 fsāf'eem sě, — misleem,
 nēdbám; tō yě mi yednō
 hodlám,
 ōdhōdlāl sem sě,
 neysem s tō;
 nēmōhū tō vistāt;

mōhū beet bes tōhō;
 zālcebilō sě mi tō;

nēmám s tēm tō f'elāt;
 myēll sem sñim hādkū;

rād'ěy bikh

yá sñěho neysem;
 mám stārōst; — toozě
 rád bikh;

litūyū tōhō;
 yá hō dōnūf'eem;

*) When it means an anxiety, care or suspense about something.

**) When it means an impatience to do or to know something.

I will see you paid;
I am in no hurry;
I must be off;
I think much of him;
if you please;
indeed;
it is all over;
it is of no use;

it is none of your business;

it is your turn;
it is a bargain;
it is a pity;
it grew into a habit;
it wears well (of a dress
or stuff);

Keep still!
keep in line!
Let it go: — let go!
let me alone;
let me in;
let me know;
look here;
look out!
Mind you;
No doubt;—no matter;
no matter how it is;
no matter who it is;
never mind;

postarám se o váš plat;
nemám na spěch;
musím pryč;
já si ho moc vážím;
prosím; — račte;
opravdu; — skutečně;
je po všem;
není to nic platné
(*meaning*: it will do
no good); — není to
k ničemu (*meaning*:
it is of no service);
vám po tom nic není;

teď je na vás;
zůstane při tom;
to je škoda;
stalo se zvykem;
dobře se nese;

Ticho! — Buďte zticha!
do řady!
nechte to být; — pusťte;
nechte mě;
pusťte mě tam;
dejte mi vědět;
hleďte;
pozor!
pamatujte;
zajisté; — nic nedělá;
ať je to jakkoli;
ať je to kdokoli;
nic nedělá; — co na
tom;

*postarám se o váš plát;
němám na spýěkh;
múseem prich;
já si hō mōts vážēem;
proseem; — račhtë;
oprāvďǎ; skūtechně;
yě pofshem;
neyňi tō ňits plátné; —
neyňi tō kňichěmǎ;*

vám pō tōm ňits neyňi;

*teď yě ná váss;
zoostǎně prshūtōm;
tō yě shkōďǎ;
stǎlo sě zwikem;
dobrshě sě nessě;*

*tikhō! — būďtě s'tikhǎ!
ďō rshǎďy!
nekhtě tō beet! — pǔstě!
nekhtě myě;
pǔstě myě tǎm;
deytě mi vyěďěť;
hleďtě;
pōzor!
pǎmǎtǔytě;
zǎyistě; ňits nēďělǎ;
ǎť yě tō yǎčkōlǎ;
ǎť yě tō gďōkōlǎ;
ňits nēďělǎ; — tsō nǎ
tōm;*

not yet; — not at all;	ještě ne, — dokonce ne;	<i>yeshťe ně; — dōkonce ně;</i>
now and then;	časem, — chvílemi;	<i>chāssem; — khwееlemi</i>
now we are even;	teď jsme kvít;	<i>teď smě kvít;</i>
Of course;	ovšem;— to se rozumí;	<i>ofshēm;—tō sě rozūmee;</i>
on a sudden;	náhle;—z nenadání;	<i>náhlě; zněnadání;</i>
on purpose;	schválně; — naschvál.	<i>skhwálně; nās khwál;</i>
on the contrary;	naopak;	<i>nāopak;</i>
on the wing!	v letu;	<i>vletū;</i>
once for all;	jednou na vždy;	<i>yednoū nā vždū;</i>
one by one;	po jednom; — jeden za druhým;	<i>pō yědnom; — yěden zā drūheem;</i>
Piece by piece;	po kusu;	<i>pō kūsū;</i>
plenty time!	dost času!	<i>dost chāsū!</i>
Send me word;	zkažte mi;	<i>skāshťe me;</i>
served him right!	dobře tak!	<i>dōbrshě tāk!</i>
Take care!	pozor! — dejte pozor!	<i>pōzor! — deytě pōzor!</i>
the more the better;	čím víc tím líp;	<i>cheem veels ťeem leep;</i>
the other day;	onehdy;	<i>ōnehdy;</i>
the time is up;	čas prošel;	<i>chāss proshell;</i>
that's it! — that will do;	to je to! — to je dost;	<i>tō yě tō; — tō yě dost;</i>
that's right!	to dostačí;	<i>tō dōstāchee;</i>
that is out of my way;	to je dobře!	<i>tō yě dōbrshě!</i>
they like to show off;	to je mi z ruky;	<i>tō yě me z ruky;</i>
to be short about it;	rádi se ukazují;	<i>rādī sě ūkāzūyee;</i>
to be sure!	krátce řečeno;	<i>krātsě rshēchēnō;</i>
to call and see, (to pay a visit);	zajisté!	<i>zāyisté!</i>
to find fault;	navštívit;	<i>nāfshťeevit;</i>
to get rid (of something);	vytýkat;	<i>vyteekāt;</i>
to give a blowing;	zbavit se (čeho);	<i>zbāvit sě;</i>
to come about;	vymluvit;	<i>vymlūvit;</i>
to no purpose;	státí se;	<i>stātī sě;</i>
	zbytečně,	<i>zbyťechně;</i>

Well?— Very well.
well to do, well off;
what of that? — what
does it matter?
what is the matter?

what is the question?

what is the matter with
you?

what next?

what will become of
us?

we had better go;

we had better go and
see;

You are right;
you are wrong,
you are mistaken;
you are late;
you are safe;
you are gone up!
you are welcome to it;

year by year;

you must not find fault;

you ought to be glad;

— you ought to be
gone;

nuže?— dobře;
zámožný,
co na tom? co z toho?

co se děje? (i. e. what
is happening)?

oč se jedná? oč běží?

co je vám?

co dále?

co z nás bude? co se s
námi stane?

abysme raději šli;

abysme se raději podí-
vali (i. e. šli podívat);

*nůžě?— dōbrshě;
zámōžnee;
tsō nā tom? tsō stōhō?*

tsō sě d'ěyě?

*ōch sě yedná?—ōch byě-
žee?*

tsō yě vām?

tsō dálě?

*tsō znáss būdě? tsō sě
snāmi stāně?*

ābysmě rād'ěy shli;

*ābysmě sě rād'ěy po-
d'eevāli;*

máte pravdu;

} mejlíte se;

jdete pozdě;

jste v tom dobře;

s vámi je konec!

venzte si to; — přeju
vám to;

rok co rok;

nesmíte dělat výčitky;

měl byste být (or býti)

rád;— měl byste být
prýč;

mátě právdū;

meyletě sě;

dětě pozd'ě;

stě ftom dōbrshě;

svāmi yě kōnets!

ventě si tō; — prshěyū

vām tō;

rōk tsō rōk;

nesmeetě d'ělāt veechitky

m'yell bystě beet rád; —

m'yell bystě beet prich.

PART III.

Bohemian conversation.

Note 1. In the following conversations we shall invariably observe the common rule of politeness, which requires the use of the personal pronoun **vy** (you) in addressing another person. Hence all verbs employed in the same will appear in the second person plural (for instance: **jste, máte**, (you are, you have), and not in the second person singular **jsi***), **máš**, (thou art, thou hast), which is properly confined to familiar or very intimate intercourse, as fully set forth in Section 9, Part I; otherwise the use of the second person singular (**ty**, thou) is out of place and in fact vulgar, although freely indulged in by some ill-informed or ill-bred persons among the Bohemians in America.

Throughout these conversations we give the Bohemian pronunciation in full**). It is true that the student, having advanced so far, may be supposed to be able to pronounce every word and to read Bohemian without difficulty; but the pronouncing column will nevertheless continue to be an aid, especially welcome in such cases as may appear to be somewhat obscure and doubtful.

*) In common discourse we frequently hear **ty jseš**, *ty sěsh*, in place of **ty jsi**. — **Ty jseš velký**, *ty sěsh velkee*, thou art tall. — **Jseš rád** (instead of **jsi rád**)? *sěsh rád?* art thou glad? — **Jseš zdrav**, *sěsh zdráf?* (f. **jseš zdráva**? *sěsh zdrává?* art thou well? — **Jseš hotov**? *sěsh hōtof?* (f. **jseš hotova**? *sěsh hōtová?*) art thou ready?

***) The rules given in Sections 2 and 4, Part I, are supposed to have been thoroughly digested and practiced by the student, as well as the forty introductory lessons contained in Part II. Unless that is done, it will be useless and disappointing to proceed with this eminently practical part of our Bohemian Course.

In regard to the pronunciation of Bohemian infinitives (for instance: **míti**, to have; **činiti**, to do; **dělati**, to make) we again remind the student of the explanation given in Note 1, Lesson XI. In the pronouncing column of these conversations we shall as a rule follow the colloquial custom of dropping the final **i**, to simplify matters and to present the sentences as they are generally heard in actual intercourse.

The student will always bear in mind that Bohemian orthography and pronunciation are on the whole governed by the rule which appears to be the ideal of many would-be reformers of English orthography, namely:

A sound for every letter and a letter for every sound, and no silent letters. —

In regard to capital letters the rules in Bohemian are the same as in English, excepting that adjectives derived from names of nations or countries are not written with a capital letter; for example: English, Bohemian, European. **anglický, český, evropský** (*anglitskee, cheskee, evroposkee*).

Bohemian and English.

ČEŠTINA a ANGLIČINA.

The Bohemian language;—the Bohemian tongue.	Česká řeč; — český jazyk.	<i>chesská řshěch;—chess-kee yazyk.</i>
Do you know Bohemian? — do you speak Bohemian?	Umíte česky? — mluvíte česky?	<i>ůmeetě chesske? — mluveetě chesske?</i>
Yes, I speak Bohemian well.	Ano, mluvím česky dobře.	<i>āň, mluveem chesske dōbrshě.</i>
Do you speak English?	Mluvíte anglicky?	<i>mlūveetě ānglitske?</i>
Perfectly; — a little;— not much.	Dokonale; — trochu; — ne mnoho.	<i>dōkōňāľě; — trokhū; — ně mnōhō.</i>
Do you understand English? — I do.	Rozumíte anglicky? — Rozumím.	<i>rozūmeetě ānglitske? — rozūmeem.</i>

In America everybody has to know English.	V Americe každý má uměti*) anglicky.	<i>vāmeritsě každee má ůmyet ānglitske.</i>
I am learning English.	Učím se anglicky.	<i>ŭcheem sě ānglitske.</i>
Do you learn Bohemian?	Učíte se česky?	<i>ŭcheetě sě chesske?</i>
I want to learn Bohemian.	Chci se učiti česky.	<i>khtsi sě ŭchit chesske.</i>
I want to know (i. e. to acquire) Bohemian.	Chci uměti česky.	<i>khtsi ůmyet chesske.</i>
I would like to learn Bohemian.	Rád bych učil se česky.	<i>rād bikh ŭchil sě chesske.</i>
I would like to know Bohemian.	Rád bych uměl česky.	<i>rād bikh ůmyell chesske.</i>
I must learn (i. e. acquire) Bohemian.	Musím se naučiti česky.	<i>mŭseem sě nāŭchit chesske.</i>
Yes, do learn Bohemian	Ano, naučte se česky.	<i>āno, nāŭchte sě chesske</i>
I am learning Bohemian.	Učím se česky.	<i>ŭcheem sě chesske.</i>
How long have you been learning**) Bohemian?	Jak dlouho učíte se česky?	<i>yāk dloŭhō ŭcheetě sě chesske?</i>
I have been learning Bohemian since last year.	Učím se česky od lon- ska.	<i>ŭcheem sě chesske od lonskā.</i>
How long did you learn English?	Jak dlouho učil jste se anglicky?	<i>yāk dloŭhō ŭchil stě sě ānglitske?</i>
I learned (or: I was learning) English one year.	Učil jsem se anglicky rok.	<i>ŭchil sem sě ānglitske rōk.</i>

*) **Míti** (to have) often in connection with another verb signifies obligation or necessity, the same as in English: **Mám uměti**, I have to know, I am obliged or expected to know: **mám jíti**, I have to go; — **má uměti**, he has to know; **každý má uměti**, everybody has to know.

) The present tense in Bohemian is also used for the English perfect tense: (jak dlouho**) **učíte se**, — (how long) have you been learning. See second foot-note on page 98.

I learned (i. e. acquired) English in one year.	Naučil jsem se anglicky za rok.	<i>nāuchil sem sě ānglitske zā rōk.</i>
To learn English is not difficult.	Naučiti se anglicky není těžké.	<i>nāuchit sě ānglitske neyñi tšhkké.</i>
Neither is Bohemian.	Česky také ne.	<i>chesske tāké ně.</i>
How soon shall I learn Bohemian?	Jak brzo naučím se česky?	<i>yāk b^e rzo nāucheem sě chesske?</i>
If you will be (or if you are) diligent, you will learn it soon.	Budete-li pilný, naučíte se brzo.	<i>būdětě li pilnee, nāučetě sě b^e rzō.</i>
About how soon?	Jak brzo asi?	<i>yāk b^e rzō āsi?</i>
In a few months.	Za pár měsíců.	<i>zā pár myšecetsoo.</i>
I have been learning Bohemian only two months, and already I know a good deal.	Učím se česky teprve dva měsíce, a už umím hezky.	<i>ūcheem sě chesske tep^e rf dva myšecetš, ā ūsh ūmeem hesske.</i>
I am getting along well.	Jde to dobře.*)	<i>dě tō dobrshě.</i>
Already I understand nearly all.	Už rozumím skoro všechno.	<i>ūsh rozūmeem skōrō fshětskō.</i>
It is not difficult; — it is easy	Není to těžké; — je to lehké.	<i>neyñi tō tšhkké; — yě tō lehké.</i>
Only plenty of exercise! then you make good progress.	Jen hodně cviku! pak to jde*!)	<i>yen hodñě tswikū! pāk tō dě!</i>
Do you understand Bohemian?	Rozumíte česky?	<i>rozūmeetě chesske?</i>
I understand a little.	Rozumím trochu.	<i>rozūmeem trokhū.</i>
I understand already a good deal.	Rozumím už hodně.	<i>rozūmeem ūsh hodñě.</i>
I understand already nearly all.	Rozumím už hnedle všechno.	<i>rozūmeem ūsh hnedlě fshětsko.</i>
Do you understand German?	Rozumíte německy?	<i>rozūmeetě ñěmetske?</i>

*) **Jde to dobře;** *literally:* it goes well. **Pak to jde;** then it goes.

I do not.—I understand a little bit.

Do you know (how) to write Bohemian?

Not yet; but I shall learn) it.

I shall know (it) soon.

I must know both to read and to write Bohemian.

You will learn that easily.

I expect to learn it in half a year.

Why does not John learn English?

He is going to learn;— he must learn it well.

When will he commence to learn?

Shortly.

My neighbor's boy speaks English perfectly and understands also Latin.

Annie is learning to read and write Bohemian.

Have you a Bohemian newspaper? — lend me it.

Lend me a Bohemian book.

What book? — Any book.

Něrozumím. — Rozumím něco málo.

Umíte psátí po česku?

Ještě ne; ale budu se učiti.

Budu uměti brzo.

Musím uměti čísti i psátí po česku.

To se naučíte snadno.

Hodlám se to naučiti za půl leta.

Proč se Jan neučí anglicky?

On se bude učiti;— musí se naučiti dobře.

Kdy se začne učiti?

Co nevidět.

Sousedův hoch mluvi anglicky dokonale a rozumí také latinsky.

Anna učí se česky čísti a psátí.

Máte české noviny? — půjčete mi je.

Půjčete mi českou knihu.

Jakou? — Jakoukoli.

něrozumím — rozumím něčto málo.

umíte psátí po česku?

yeshťě ně; ale budu se učiti.

budu umyět b^e rzě.

museem umyēt cheest i psát pō chesskū.

tō sě nāučēetě snādně.

hodlám sě tō nāučit zā pool letā.

prōch sě yān nēūchee ānglitske?

ōn se būdē učiti;— mūsee sě nāučit dobrshě.

gdý sě zāčhně učiti?

tsō něvidět.

soūsedoof hoch mluvee ānglitske dōkonālě a rozumēe také lāťinsky.

ānā ūchee sě chesske cheest a psāt.

mātě chesské nōviny?— pūchtě me yě.

pūchtě me chesskoū knīhū.

yākoū? — yākoūkoli.

This is Bohemian, is it not?

What is it in English?
— Tell me it in English.

How is it in English?
I don't know how to pronounce it.

How is it in Bohemian?
How do you call it in Bohemian? — how in English?

Speak Bohemian; — speak Bohemian with me; — speak only Bohemian.

Speak as you wish.
Do you like to speak Bohemian? — Why do you not speak English?

Because I cannot; — because I know it only a little. — Do speak; you will get along.

Speak English or Bohemian, as you please; — I understand both;

You speak Bohemian very well.

Speak slowly, that I may understand you;*)

Tohle je česky, není?

Co je to po anglicku?
— Povězte mi to po anglicku.

Jak je to po anglicku?
Nevím jak to vysloviti.

Jak je to po česku?
Jak se to jmenuje česky? — jak anglicky?

Mluvte česky: — mluvte se mnou česky; — mluvte jenom česky.

Mluvte jak chcete.
Mluvíte rád česky? — Proč nemluvíte anglicky?

Protože neumím; — protože umím jen málo. — Jen mluvte, přijde to.

Mluvte anglicky nebo česky, jak chcete; — rozumím obojí.

Vy mluvíte česky tuze dobře.

Mluvte pomalu, abych vám rozuměl.

tòhlě yě chesske, neyñi?

*tsò yě tò pò ànglitsku?
— Pòvyěztě me tě pò ànglitskù.*

*yák yě tò pò ànglitskù?
něveem yák tò vislòvit.*

*yák yě tò pò chesskù?
yák sě tò menùyě chesske? — yák ànglitske?*

mlůftě chesske; — mlůftě sě mnou chesske; — mlůftě yěnom chesske.

*mlůftě yák khtsětě.
mlůveetě rád chesske?
— pròch němlůveetě ànglitske?*

protòžě něumeem; — protòžě ùmeem yen málo, — yen mlůftě, pùdě tò.

*mlůftě ànglitske něbò chesske, yák khtsětě; — rozùmeem òbòyee.
ve mlůveetě chesske toozě dobrshě.*

mlůftě pomálù, àbikh vám rozùmyell.

*) **Abych, abys, aby**, that I should, that thou shouldst, that he should (see Lesson XXXVI), also signifies: "that I may, that thou mayest, that he (she, it) may". Hence we translate: **abych rozuměl**, that I may understand; — **abych rozuměl vám**, or **abych vám rozuměl**, "that I may understand you".

Concerning the freedom of transposition of words in Bohemian sentences see Note 2, Lesson VI.

Did you understand me? — I did not; repeat it slowly.

Do not speak so fast; I should not understand you.

Do you know what I said? could you understand?

I could understand a little;—now I understood well.

When you don't understand, tell me; — I want to teach you.

I am glad of that; — if you will teach me, I shall soon know.

In a quarter of a year I shall understand all.

Do I pronounce it right? — did I pronounce it right?

You have a good pronunciation; — you pronounce everything right.

That was not right; see here; — I will pronounce it slowly.

Is that right?

Once again!

That's it;— now it was right; first-rate.

Very well! you make quick progress.

Rozuměl jste mi?—Nerozuměl; opakujte to pomalu.

Nemluvte tak rychle; já bych vám nerozuměl.

Víte co jsem povídal? — porozuměl jste?

Porozuměl jsem trochu; — teď jsem rozuměl dobře.

Když nerozumíte, řekněte mi; — já chci vás učiti.

To jsem rád; — budete-li mě učiti, budu rozuměti.

Za čtvrt leta budu všemu rozuměti.

Vyslovuju to dobře? — vyslovil jsem to dobře?

Máte dobrou výslovnost; — vyslovujete všecko dobře.

To nebylo dobře; dejte pozor; — já to vyslovím pomalu.

Je to dobře?

Ještě jednou!

Tak; — teď to bylo dobře; tuze dobře.

Výborně! — děláte rychlý pokrok.

rozümyell stě me? — nerozumyell; -öpäküyitě tō pomälü.

němlüftě tāk rikhlě: yá bikh vám něrozümyell.

veetě tsō sem poveedäl? — pōrozümyell stě?

pōrozümyell sem troshku; — tēď sem rozümyell döbrshě.

gdīž něrozümeetě, rshěk-ñetě me; — yá kht-i vás ũchit.

tō sem rád; — būdětě-li myě ũchit, būdū b^erzō ũmyět

zā shtw^ert letā būdū fshēmü rozümyet

vislovüyü tō dobrshě? — vislovil sem tō döbrshě?

máte döbroü veeslōvnost; — vislovüyetě fshětškō döbrshě.

tō něbillō döbrshě; dey-tě pōzor; — yá tō visloveem pomälü.

yě tō döbrshě?

yeshčě yednoü!

tāk; — tēď tō billō döbrshě; toož döbrshě.

veeborñě! — dělátě rikhlēe pōkrok.

I wish I had more opportunity to speak Bohemian.	Rád bych měl více příležitosti mluvit česky.	<i>rád bikh m'yell veetsě prsheelěžitosti mlūvit cheske.</i>
--	--	--

VOCABULARY.

Slovo, n. <i>slovō</i> , the word	učiti se, <i>ūchit sě</i> , to learn, to be learning;
slovník, m. <i>slovñeek</i> , the dictionary	neučiti se, <i>neūchit sě</i> , not to learn.
slovníček, m. *) <i>slovñeeehkek</i> , the vocabulary	naučiti se, <i>nāūchit sě</i> , to learn or acquire (something);
vysloviti, <i>vislovit</i> , to pronounce	rozuměti, <i>rozūmyet</i> , to understand;
vyslovím, <i>vislovím</i> , I shall pronounce	rozumím, <i>rozūmeem</i> , I understand
vyslovovati, <i>vislovōvāt</i> , to be pronouncing;	porozuměti, <i>pōrozūmyet</i> , to understand; or "to catch the meaning":
vyslovuju (or vyslovuji), <i>vislovōyū</i> I am pronouncing;	začnouti, <i>zāchnout</i> , } to begin, to
výslovnost, f. <i>veeslovnost</i> , the pronunciation;	začítí, <i>zācheet</i> , } commence;
čeština, f. <i>cheshtīnā</i> , the Bohemian language;	začne, <i>zāchně</i> , will commence;
angličina, f. <i>ānglichīnā</i> , the English language;	půjčiti, <i>pūychitī</i> , (colloquially: <i>pūchit</i>), to lend;
pokrok, m. <i>pōkrok</i> , progress;	půjčte mi, <i>pūchtě me</i> , lend me;
příležitost, f. <i>prsheelěžitost</i> , opportunity;	povězte mi, <i>po-vyěžtě me</i> , tell me.
rád bych měl, <i>rād bikh m'yell</i> , I wish I had (or: I would like to have);	jak se jmenuje, <i>yāk sě menūyě</i> , how is — he, she, it — called.
hezky, <i>heske</i> , } a good deal;	těžký, á, é, <i>těshkee</i> , difficult, hard;
hodně, <i>hodñě</i> , }	rychlý, á, é, <i>rikhlee</i> } fast;
něco málo, <i>ñětso málō</i> , a little bit;	rychle, adv. <i>rikhlě</i> }
	pomalu, <i>pomālū</i> , slowly;
	hnedle, <i>hnedlě</i> , nearly, (also "soon", "quick");
	co nevidět, <i>tsō něvid'et</i> , in no time, shortly;

*) Slovníček is simply a diminutive of slovník, meaning "a little or short dictionary". See Note 1, Lesson XV III.

trošku, (same as trochu), <i>trěshkū</i> , a little;	} dokonalý, á, é, <i>dōkonālee</i> , perfect. } dokonale*), <i>dōkonālě</i> , perfectly; } výborný, á, é, <i>veebornee</i> } } výborně, adv. <i>veeborňě</i> } first-rate.
snadný, á, é, <i>snādnee</i> , easy.	
snadno, <i>snādnō</i> , easily;	

Greetings and compliments.

POZDRAVY A POKLONY.

Good morning, Sir! (gentlemen, — Mad- am,—Miss — ladies).	Dobré jitro**), pane! (pánové, — paničko, — slečno, — dámy).	<i>dōbrě ye-trō, pāně!</i> (<i>pá- nōvé, — pāňichkō, — slěchnō, — dámy, — slěchny</i>).
Good afternoon, Mr. Brown!	Dobré odpoledne, pane Braune!***)	<i>dōbrě odpolēdně, pāně Browně!</i>
Good evening, Mrs. Brown!	Dobry večer, paní Braunová!	<i>dōbrě večer, pāňi Brownōvá!</i>
My compliments!	Má úcta!	<i>mā ootstā!</i>
Good night, doctor!	Dobrou noc, pane dok- tore ⁴)!	<i>dōbroū nōts, pāně dok- torě!</i>
Good bye! — Farewell!	S bohem! — Na zdar!	<i>sbōhem! — nā zdār!</i>
Farewell!	Mějte se dobře!	<i>myěj-tě sě dōbrshě!</i>

*) See Note 2, Lesson XXX, about the derivation of adverbs from adjectives. In this case, as well as in some others, the final *y* changes into a simple *e*: *dokonalý*, — *dokonale*.

Mostly it changes into an *ě*: *výborný*, — *výborně*; and sometimes into an *o*: *snadný*, — *snadno*. This, however, is rather optional, as we may equally say: *snadně*, *snādně*, (easily).

**) In common conversation very often abbreviated: *dobrytro!* *dōbrītro!*

***) It is proper to use the vocative case in addressing a person; but in ordinary discourse the proper name is generally left in the nominative: *dobré jitro, pane Braun!*

4) We cannot say in English "Mr. doctor", two titles in this case being incompatible; but it is customary in Bohemian to say: *pane doktore*, *pane professore*, or (in common parlance) *pane doktor*, *pane professor*, leaving the title in the nominative case. "*Mr. editor*", — *pane redaktore*, *pāně redāktorě*, — is an analogous expression in English.

Good luck to you!	Na zdar vám !	<i>nā zdār vām!</i>
I wish you good luck!	{ Přeju vám štěstí!	<i>prshěyū vām shčěstí!</i>
I wish you Godspeed!		
A happy journey!	Šťastnou cestu !	<i>shčěstnoū tsěstū!</i>
A happy return!	Šťastný návrat !	<i>shčěstnee návrat!</i>
To drink one's health.	Pítí na zdraví.	<i>peč'i nā zdrāvee.</i>
Your health!	Na vaše zdraví !	<i>nā vāshě zdrāvee!</i>
How do you do? How are you?	Jak se máte?	<i>yāk sě máté?</i>
How are you getting along?	Jak se vám vede?	<i>yāk sě vām vědě?</i>
Very well, thank you.	Tuže dobře. děkuju.	<i>toozě dōbrshě, d'ěkūyū.</i>
How is everything with you?	Jak se vede?	<i>yāk sě vědě?</i>
Tolerably well.	Projde to. — Ujde to.	<i>proyđě tō, — ūyđě tō.</i>
How is your health?	Jak vám zdraví slouží?	<i>yāk vām zdrāveesloužee?</i>
Are you well? Are you in good health?	Jste zdrav?	<i>stě zdráf?</i>
I am pretty well, thank you.	Je mi dost dobře, děkuju.	<i>yě me dost dōbrshě, d'ěkūyū.</i>
I am all right.	Mám se hezky.	<i>mám sě hesske.</i>
I feel very well.	Je mi tuže dobře.	<i>ye me toozě dōbrshě.</i>
I am perfectly well.	Jsem docela zdrav.	<i>sem dotsělā zdráf.</i>
And how are you?	A jak vy se máte?	<i>ā yāk ve sě máté?</i>
I am also well, thank you.	Taky dobře, děkuju.	<i>tāke dōbrshě, d'ěkūyū.</i>
You are looking well.	Vypadáte dobře.	<i>vipādátě dōbrshě.</i>
I am very well; I cannot complain.	Mám se výborně; nemohu stěžovat.	<i>mám sě veeborñe; nemōhū stěžōvat.</i>
How is your wife (your lady)?	Jak se má vaše žena (vaše paní)?	<i>yāk sě má vāshě ženā (pāñi)?</i>
She is well, thank you.	Dobře, děkuju.	<i>dōbrshě, d'ěkūyū.</i>
How is your family?	Jak se má vaše rodina?	<i>yāk sě má vāshěrodinā?</i>
They are all well.	Jsou všichni zdraví.	<i>soū fshikhñi zdrāvi.</i>

I am glad of it.	To mě těší.	<i>tõ myě těshee.</i>
I am glad to hear it.	To rád slyším.	<i>tõ rád slisheem.</i>
That is right.	To je dobře.	<i>tõ yě döbrshě.</i>
I am very glad to see you (or: to meet you).	Jsem tuze rád že vás vidím.	<i>sem toozě rád žě váss vid'eem.</i>
I have not seen you for a long time.	Neviděl jsem vás už dávno.	<i>nevid'el sem váss ůsh dávnõ.</i>
I would like to see you often.	Rád bych viděl vás často.	<i>rád bikh vid'el váss chässtõ.</i>

My regards!	Že pozdravuju!	<i>žě pozdrävüyü!</i>
Greet him (her, them)!	Pozdravujte ho (ji, je)!	<i>pozdrävüyte hõ (ye, yě)!</i>
— Give him my regards.		
Give (him, etc.) my best regards!	Vyřid'te mé pozdravení.	<i>virshid'tě mé pozdrävě-ñi*)</i>
My best regards!	Pěkné pozdravení!	<i>pyěkně pozdrävěñi!</i>
Give my regards to all.	Pozdravujte ode mne všechny!	<i>pozdrävüyte õdě myě fshětske!</i>
Remember me to your wife. — My best respects to your wife.	Mou úctu vaší choť!	<i>moũ ootstũ väshee khõ-t'i!</i>
My best regards to your wife!	Pěkné pozdravení manželce!	<i>pyěkně pozdrävěñi mǎnzeltse!</i>
My compliments to your sister!	Mou poklonu vaší sestře!	<i>moũ poklõnũ väshee sě-strshě!</i>
Good bye!	Poroučím se!	<i>porõučeem sě!</i>
My best respects!	Pěkné poručení!	<i>pyěkně porõcheñi!</i>

*) Nouns ending in *ni* are neutre (see *znamení*, Note 2, Lesson XIV). The final *i* has the long sound of *ee*. But in common discourse the length of the sound is immaterial and it is usually shortened; hence we represent it in these conversations by a simple *ñi*, instead of *ñee*.

VOCABULARY.

Pánbůh (i. e. Pán Bůh) <i>pánbooh</i> ,	} poklona , f. <i>pőklonā</i> , compliment, the Lord God; bow ;
jitro , n. same as ráno), <i>yitrō</i> , the morning;	
pozdrav , m. <i>pozdrāf</i>	} účta , f. <i>ootsta</i> , respect; navrat , m. <i>nāvrat</i> , return; zdraví , n. <i>zdrāvee</i> , health; choť , m. & f. <i>khōť</i> , the spouse, hus- band or wife; stěžovati , <i>stěžovat</i> , to complain; vypadati , <i>vipādāt</i> , to look.
pozdravení , n. <i>pōzdrāveñi</i>	
pozdraviti , <i>pozdrāvit</i> , to greet (once);	
pozdravovati , <i>pozdrāvōvat</i> , to greet; to send greetings;	

A call.

NÁVŠTĚVA.

Give me a call. — Call and see me.	Navštivte mě. — Přijd- te ke mě.	<i>nāshťivtĕ myĕ. — Prshid'te*) kĕ myĕ.</i>
Call at my house.	Přijďte ke mě domu.	<i>prshid'tĕ kĕ myĕ dōmā.</i>
Call at my store.	Přijďte ke mě do krá- mu.	<i>prshid'tĕ kĕ myĕ dō krā- mā.</i>
Call at my office	Přijďte do mé písárny.	<i>prshid'tĕ dō mé peesār- ny.</i>
Did you call at my place?	Byl jste u mě?	<i>bill stĕ ů myĕ?</i>
I called at your house, but nobody was at home.	Byl jsem u vás, ale žádný nebyl doma.	<i>bill sem ů vās, ālē žād- nee něbill dōmā.</i>
Call again.	Přijďte zas.	<i>prshid'tĕ zās</i>
And when?—Any time.	A kdy?—kdykoli.	<i>ā gdy?—gdykoli.</i>
When will you be at home.	Kdy budete doma?	<i>gdy būdĕtĕ ādōmā?</i>
To-morrow surely.	Zejtra** jistě.	<i>zeytrā yistĕ.</i>
When will you call and see me?	Kdy mě navštívíte?	<i>gdy myĕ nāshťivocĕtĕ?</i>

*) Colloquially this is still more condensed and sounds like *prshi-tĕ*.**) **Zejtra** or **zítra** (to-morrow), derived from **zjitra**, **zajitra**, next morning.

I shall give you a call
to-morrow or day after
to-morrow.

Yes, do call; I shall be
expecting you.

Somebody is knocking.
— Some one rings.

Go and see who that
is.

Go and open the door.
It is some gentleman,
— some stranger.

It is Mr. Arbes.

Let him come in.

Come in!—Walk in!

Come in, if you please.
Sit down.

Take a seat, if you
please.

Please take a seat.

Here is a seat.

Stay with us to dinner.

Excuse me, I cannot;
I have no time.

Are you in a hurry?

Yes, I am in a hurry

Where do you hurry?

I have an appointment
with Mr. Coleman.

Don't be in such a hur-
ry; wait a little.

Indeed I cannot; I shall
soon come again

Do so, if you please!

Please, come again.

Navštívím vás zejtra
nebo pozejtří.

Ano, navštívte; budu
vás očekávat.

Někdo klepá. — Někdo
zvoní.

Jděte se podívat kdo to
je.

Jděte otevřítí.

Je to nějaký pán, — ně-
jaký cizinec.

Je to pan Arbes.

Ať vejde!

Dále!

Vejděte, prosím!

Sedněte si.

Posaďte se, prosím.

Račte se posaditi.

Tady je židle.

Zůstaňte u nás na oběd.

Odpusťte, nemohu;
nemám čas.

Máte na spěch?

Ano, mám na spěch.

Kam spěcháte?

Mám schůzi s panem
Kolmanem.

Nespěchejte tak; poč-
kejte trochu.

Opravdu nemohu; při-
jdu brzo zas.

Prosím, přijďte!

Račte přijítí zas.

*nāshŭtŭveem vāss zey-
trā něbō pozeytrškee.*

*ānō, nāshŭtŭftě; būdū
vāss ōchĕkāvāt*

*ñĕgdō klĕpá. — ñĕgdō
zvonĕe.*

*ďĕtĕ sĕ pod'ĕevāt gdō tō
yĕ.*

ďĕtĕ ōtĕvršĕet.

*yĕ tō ñĕyākee pán, — ñĕ-
yākee tsizinec.*

yĕ tō pán Arbes.

āť veydĕ!

dālĕ!

veyďĕtĕ, proseem?

sedñĕtĕ si.

posāďtĕ sĕ, proseem.

rāchtĕ sĕ posāď'ti.

tādy yĕ židle.

zoo tañte ŭnāssnā obyĕd

*odpŭstĕ, nemōhŭ; ne-
mām chāss.*

mātĕ na spyĕkh?

ānō, m'ím nā spyĕkh.

kām spyĕkhātĕ?

mām skhoozi spānem

Kolmānem.

*nespyĕkĕyĕtĕ tāk; poch-
keytĕ troshkŭ.*

oprāvďū nĕmōhŭ;

prshiyďū b^erzō zāss

proseem, prshīďtĕ!

rāchtĕ prshiyĕet zāss.

Drop in, when you have time.	Zaskočte sem, kdýž máte čas.	<i>zaskochťe sem, gdyž máte čas.</i>
I will come here as soon as I have time.	Přijdu sem, jakmile budu mít čas.	<i>prshydu sem, yákmilě būdu meet čas.</i>
Good day!	Poroučím se!	<i>poroucheem se!</i>

VOCABULARY.

Návštěva , f. <i>náfshťevā</i> , a call, a visit;	cizinec , m. <i>tsizinet</i> , a stranger;
navštívití , <i>náfshťevit</i> , to visit;	spěch , n. <i>spyěkh</i> , the hurry;
očekávati , <i>ochěkāvāt</i> , to await;	schůze , f. <i>skhoozě</i> , meeting, appointment;
zaskočiti , <i>zaskochit</i> , to drop in;	židle , f. <i>židlě</i> , the chair;
poroučeti , <i>porouchet</i> , to command;	klepati , <i>klepāt</i> , to knock;
poroučeti se , <i>poroučeti se</i> , to take leave;	zvoniti , <i>zvoñit</i> , to ring;
poroučím se , <i>poroucheem se</i> , good day!	otevřítí , <i>otěvrshet</i> , to open;
sednouti si , <i>sednoūt si</i> } to sit down.	odpustiti , <i>odpūstīt</i> , to excuse, to forgive.
posaditi se , <i>posādīt se</i> } to take a place;	

Time.

ČAS.

Day and night.	Den a noc.	<i>den ā nots.</i>
I worked all day.	Pracoval jsem celý den.	<i>prātsovāl sem tsělee den.</i>
I did not sleep all night.	Āspal jsem celou noc.	<i>nespāl sem tsěloū nots.</i>
I work day and night.	Dělám ve dne v noci.	<i>dělām vē dně vnotsi.</i>
We sat up late at night.	Seděli jsme dlouho do noci.	<i>sědēli smě dloūhō dō notsi.</i>
He came late at night and wanted a night's lodging.	Přišel pozdě na noc a chtěl nocleh.	<i>prshishell pozdē nā nots a khťel notslēh.</i>
The day was clear, the night was dark.	Den byl jasný; noc byla tmavá.	<i>den bill yāsnee; nots bilā tmāvā.</i>
Today, — yesterday.	Dnes, — včera.	<i>dness, — fcherā.</i>
This morning, — this noon, — this evening, — this midnight.	Dnes ráno, — dnes v poledne, — dnes večer, — dnes o půlnoci.	<i>dness ráno, — dness fpoledně, — dness vècher dness o poolnotsi.</i>

This forenoon it rained
— this afternoon it
was fine.

Until evening; — until
morning.

In broad day-light.

To-night he will come
home. — To-night he
came home.

He came last night, —
last evening, — early
in the morning, — late
in the evening, —
about midnight.

Evening before last; —
night before last.

When was it? — Last
night.

When did it happen? —
Night before last.

When shall I take that
medicine?

In the morning, at noon
and at bed-time.

Yesterday was a holi-
day. — Day before
yesterday there was
a fire.

To-morrow I shall
leave; — day after to-
morrow I shall be in
St. Louis.

Dnes dopoledne přšelo;
— **dnes odpoledne by-**
lo hezky.

Až do večera; — **až do**
rána.

Za bílého dne.

Dnes v noci přijde do-
mu. — **Dnes v noci**
přišel domu.

Přišel minulou noc, —
včera večer, — **čas-**
ně ráno, — **pozdě ve-**
čer, — **kolem půl-**
noci.

Předminulý večer; —
předminulou noc.

Kdy to bylo? — **Dnes**
v noci.

Kdy se to stalo? — **Vče-**
ra v noci.

Kdy mám užívat?

Ráno, v poledne a na
noc.

Včera byl svátek. —
Předevčírem hoře-
lo.

Zejtra odjedu; — **po-**
zejtří budu v St.
Louis.

dness dōpoledněp^e rshel-
lō; — dness ōdpoled-
ně billō hessky.

āsh do večerā; — āsh
dō ránā.

zā beelēhō dně.

dness vnotsi prshidě dō-
mū. — dness vnotsi
prshi-shell dōmū.

prshi-shell minulōū nots
— fcherā večer, —
chassnē ránō, — pozdē
včer, — kolem pool-
notsi.

prshēd-minūlee večer;
prshēd-minūlōū nots,
gdý tō billō? — dness
vnotsi.

gdý sē tō stālō? — fchē-
rā vnotsi.

gdý mám ūžeevāt?

rānō, fpoledně ā nā
nots.

fcherā bill svátek. —
prshēdē-fcheerem ho-
rshēlō.

zeytrā odyēdū; — po-
zeytrshē būdū v St.
Louis.

VOCABULARY.

Nocleh, *notslēh*, a night's lodging;

svátek, *swátek*, a holiday;

státi se, *stát sē*, to happen, to occur;

stalo se, *stālō sē*, it happened;

stane se, *stānē sē*, it will happen;

stane-li se, *stānē-li sē*, if it happens.

<p>jasný, á, é, yássnee, bright, clear; tmavé, á, é, tmávee, dark; minulý, á, é, minúlee, past, last; předminulý, prshěd-minúlee, before last;</p>	<p>odjeti, ōdyet, to leave (by some conveyance); užívatí, ůžeevăt, to take medicine; (also "to enjoy").</p>
--	--

<p>This week I am in good health; — last week I was sick. The last two weeks I was on the road (i. e. traveling). Next week I shall again leave. Next week I expect my brother. In two weeks I shall get money; — in five weeks I shall be in Europe. In how many weeks will you return? — I shall return in about a month. In how many months shall I see you? — In two months; — in five months. When shall we meet again? — In a quarter</p>	<p>Tento týden jsem zdrav; — minulý týden byl jsem nemocen. Poslední dvě neděle byl jsem na cestách. S neděle zase odjedu. Budoucí týden čekám bratra. Za dvě neděle dostanu peníze; — za pět neděl budu v Evropě. Za kolik neděl se vrátíte? — Vrátím se asi za měsíc. Za kolik měsíců vás uvidím? — za dva měsíce; za pět měsíců. Kdy se sejdeme zas? — Za čtvrt leta, *) za</p>	<p><i>tento teeděn sem zdrav;</i> — <i>minúlee teeděn bill sem němotsěn.</i> <i>posledńee dvěyě něďelě bill sem ná tsestákh.</i> <i>sněďelě zássě odyěďů.</i> <i>būdōūtsee teeděn chekám brátră.</i> <i>ză dvěyě ned'elě dōstádnŭ peńeezě; — ză pyět ned'el būďů věoropyě.</i> <i>ză kolik ned'el sě vrátěetě? — vrátěem se asi ză myěseets.</i> <i>ză kolik myěseetsoo váss ůvid'eeem? — ză dvěď myěseetsě; — ză pyět myěseetsoo.</i> <i>gdŷ sě seyďemě záss? — ză shtw^ert letă, — ză</i></p>
--	---	---

*) Ordinarily *leto*, n. means "summer"; but the noun *rok*, m. (the year) has in the plural *leta*, let: *dvě leta*, two years or "two summers"; *pět let*, five years or "five summers"; etc. See Lesson XIX, and foot-note on page 83.

The same is true of fractions: *čtvrt leta*, *shtw^ert letă*, a quarter of a year; *půl leta*, *pool letă*, half a year; *tři čtvrti leta*, *trshi shtw^erti letă*, three quarters of a year.

However, we may also say: *dva roky*, two years; *pět roků*, five years etc. Likewise: *čtvrt roku*, *půl roku*, *tři čtvrti roku*,

of a year, — in half a year, — in a year.
 I shall be here within a year.
 My son has been gone five years; — he writes to me once a year (once in a year, — once yearly).
 In how many years do you expect him?
 In three years, — in six years.
 I think he will arrive shortly, — speedily, — before long.
 In a short time we shall see him. — In a short while we shall be together.
 It is a week since I was in New York.
 It is scarcely two weeks since father was here.
 It will soon be a year since I was in the old country.
 It is very near two years since I sold the farm.
 This day a year (or: a year ago to-day) Otto was here; — four years ago to-day we were together at San Francisco.

půl leta, — za rok.
 Budu zde do dne do roka.
 Syn je pryč pět let; — píše mi jednou do roka (or: jednou za rok, — jednou ročně).
 Za kolik let ho čekáte?
 Za tři leta, — za šest let.
 Myslím že přijede za krátko, — v krátkosti, — za nedlouho.
 Za krátký čas ho uvidíme. — Za krátkou dobu budeme pohromadě.
 Je tomu týden co jsem byl v New Yorku.
 Je tomu sotva dvě neděle, co zde byl otec.
 Bude tomu brzo rok, co jsem byl ve staré vlasti.
 Budou tomu hnedle dvě leta, co jsem prodal farmu.
 Dnes rok byl zde Otto; — dnes čtyry leta byli jsme spolu v San Franciscu.

pool letã, — zã rok.
bũdũ zdẽ dõ dnẽ dõ rokã.
syn yẽ prich pÿet let; — peeshẽ me yednoũ do rokã (or: yednoũ zã rok, — yednoũ rochnẽ).
zã kolik let hõ chekãtẽ?
zã trshi letã, — zã shest let.
mysleem že prshiyẽdẽ zã krãtkõ, — fkrãtkost'i, — zã nedlouhõ.
zã krãtkee chãss hõ ůvidẽemẽ, — zã krãtkoũ dõbũ bũdemẽ põhromãdẽ.
yẽ tõmũ teedẽn tsõ sem bill v New Yorkũ.
yẽ tõmũ sotvã dvoyẽ nedẽlẽ tsõ zdẽ bill otets bũdẽ tõmũ b'ezõ rok, tsõ sem bill vẽ stãrẽ vlast'i.
bũdoũ tõmũ hnedlẽ dvoyẽ letã, tsõ sem prodãl farmũ.
dness rok bill zde Otto; — dness shtiry letã billi smẽ spolũ fsan-frãnciscũ.

To-morrow it will be a year since Mary left; two years ago yesterday mother died.

The other week our folks were here.

It is scarcely a week since they left;—it is just a month since they arrived.

It will shortly be a month since it happened.

It is not long since; — it was a short time since; — it was the other day.

How long is it since you have been here?

Day before yesterday it was a year. — It was half a year (last) Sunday. — It will be four months on Monday.—It will be eight months on Tuesday.

When was it?—Wednesday a week; — two weeks ago on Thursday; — a week ago last Friday; — three weeks ago last Saturday.

Zejtra bude rok co Mary odjela; — včera dvě leta matka zemřela.

Onen týden byli tu naši.

Je tomu sotva týden co odjeli;—je tomu zrovna měsíc, co přijeli.

Hnedle bude měsíc co se to stalo.

Je to nedávno; — bylo to nedávno; — bylo to onehdy.

Jak dávno tomu co jste tu?

Přede včirem minul rok. — Minulo půl leta v neděli. — Budou čtyry měsíce v pondělí. Bude osm měsíců v úterý.

Kdy to bylo?—Ve středu týden;— ve čtvrtek dvě neděle; — v pátek minul týden; — v sobotu minuly tři neděle.

zeyträ bűdĕ rok tső Mary od-yellä; — vchĕră dvoÿĕ letă mătĕkă zemrshellă.

onen teedĕn billi tŕă năshi.

yĕ tŕmă sotvă teedĕn tső od-yelli;—yĕ tŕmă zrovnă myĕseets tső prshi-yelli.

hnedlĕ bűdĕ myĕseets tső sĕ tŕ stălŕ.

yĕ tŕ nedăvnŕ;—billŕ tŕ nedăvnŕ; — billŕ tŕ ŕnehdy.

yăk dăvnŕ tŕmă tső stĕ tŕ?

prshĕdĕ fcheerem minŕl rok.—minŕlŕ pool lĕtă vnĕdĕli. — bűdoŕ shtiry myĕseetsĕ fponĕleee. — bűdĕ osŕm myĕseetsoo vooteree.

gdÿ tŕ billŕ?—vĕ strshĕ dűteedĕn;—vĕ shtvĕ r tek dvoÿĕ nedĕlĕ; — fpătek minŕl teedĕn; fsobŕtŕ minŕly trshi nedĕlĕ.

Before a year passes we shall be one another's (i. e. man and wife).	Než mine rok budeme svoji.	<i>nesh mině rok, būdemě svoji.</i>
Before two years pass away, all will be over.	Než minou dvě leta, bude po všem.	<i>nesh minou dvě leta, būdē pō fshēm.</i>
Will it be long? — It won't be long.	Bude to dlouho? — Nebude to dlouho.	<i>būdē tō dloūhō? — nebūdē tō dloūhō.</i>
Will it last long? — It won't last long.	Bude to dlouho trvati? — Nebude to dlouho trvati.	<i>būdē tō dloūhō t^ervāt? — nebūdē tō dloūhō t^ervāt.</i>
It takes long.—It took long.—It didn't take long.—O yes, it did!	To trvá dlouho. — Trvalo to dlouho. Ne-trvalo to dlouho. — Ba trvalo?	<i>tō t^ervá dloūhō. — t^ervālō tō dloūhō. — nēt^ervālō tō dloūhō. — bā t^ervālō!</i>
How soon will it be? — It will be right away. — It is done already.	Jak brzo to bude? — Bude to hned. — Už je to.	<i>yāk b^erzō tō būdē? — būdē tō hned. — ůsh yě tō.</i>

VOCABULARY.

Neděle, *nědele*, Sunday
 pondělí, *pondelee*, Monday
 úterý, *ootěree*, Tuesday
 středa, *strshědā*, Wednesday
 čtvrtek, *shtio^erték*, Thursday
 pátek, *pátek*, Friday
 sobota, *sobotā*, Saturday
 nedávno, *nědávno*, not long since
 jak dávno, *yāk dávno*, how long since

co, *tsō* since

sotva, *sotivā*, scarcely, hardly

budoucí, *būdoūtsee*
 příští, *prshēesh-tsee* } future, next

dostati, *dostāt*, to get, to receive;

za krátko, *zā krátkō*
 v krátkosti, *fkrátkōstī*
 za nedlouho, *zā nēdloūhō* } shortly,

za krátký čas, *zā krát-kee chäss* } in a short time;
 za krátkou dobu, *zā krátkōū dōbū* }

denně, *děně*, daily

týdně, *teedně*, weekly

měsíčně, *myěseechně*, monthly

ročně, *rochně*, yearly.

na cestách, *nā tsestákh*, (literally : "on the roads"), traveling;

stará vlast, *stārā vlāst*, the old country.

The hour.

HODINA.

Have you a watch? -- -- I have.	Máte hodinky? -- Mám.	mátě hodinky? -- mám.
Does it go right? -- It is too slow (i. e. it goes late); -- it loses; -- it is (it goes) too fast.	Jdou*) dobře? -- Jdou pozdě; -- pozdí se; -- jdou napřed.	doů dobrě? -- doů pozdě; -- pozďee sě; -- doů nãprshed.
It is a few minutes too late. -- It is five min- utes too fast.	Jsou o pár minut po- zadu. -- Jsou o pět minut napřed.	Soů o pár minůt pozď- ďů. -- Soů o pyět minůt nãprshed.
It stopped (literally: it stands).	Stojí. -- Zůstaly stá- ti.	stoyee. -- zoostály stát.
It is not wound up. -- It was not wound up.	Nejsou nataženy. -- Nebyly nataženy.	neysoů nãtãženy. -- nã- billy nãtãženy.
Wind up the watch, -- the clock.	Natáhněte hodinky, -- hodiny.	nãtãhñetě hoďinky. -- hoďiny.
Is that clock right (lit. "does it go right")? -- I think it is.	Jdou ty hodiny dobře? Myslím že jdou.	doů ty hoďiny dõbrshě? -- mysleem žě doů.
What o'clock is it (or: what time is it? -- How late is it?	Kolik je hodin? -- Jak je pozdě?	kolik yě hoďin? -- yãk yě pozďe?
Don't you know what o'clock it is? -- I don't know.	Nevíte kolik je hodin? Nevím.	nẽveetě kolik yě hoďin? -- nẽveem.
See what o'clock it is. -- I will see (or look).	Podívejte se kolik je hodin. -- Podívám se.	poďeevytě sě kolik yě h.ďin. -- poďeevám sě
It is one o'clock. -- It is a quarter past one.	Je jedna hodina. -- Je čtvrt na dvě (or na druhou).	yě yednã hoďinã. -- yě shtw ^{ert} nã dvoýě (nã drũhoũ).

*) **Hodinky** (the watch) and **hodiny** (the clock) are plural nouns; consequently the succeeding verb must appear in the plural form: **jdou**, **jsou** (they go, they are). This has already been pointed out in a foot-note on page 137. -- **Hodina**, **hodinka**, in the singular, means: "the hour", "the small hour".

It is half past one.—It is a quarter to two.

It is two o'clock — Is it so late already? — Yes, it is two (o'clock) already.

It is past two o'clock.— It is five minutes to three. — It is very near three o'clock.

It is past three. — It wants ten minutes to four.

At what o'clock shall we go?—We shall go at a quarter past four.

That is too soon; we shall wait till half past four. Very well, then.

We shall go at five o'clock. — All right.

We started at five o'clock in the afternoon.

Did you come in time? — Didn't you come late?

It was time enough; there was no hurry.

We came there a few minutes after six.

We arrived there before seven, — after seven, —early in the

Je půl druhé. — Jsou tři čtvrtě na dvě (or na druhou).

Jsou dvě hodiny. — Už je tak pozdě? — Ano, už jsou dvě.

Jsou dvě hodiny pryč. — Je pět minut do třech. — Jsou hnedle tři hodiny.

Jsou tři pryč. — Chybí deset minut do čtyrech.

V kolik hodin půjdeme? — Půjdeme ve čtvrt na pět.

To je tuze brzo; pečkáme do půl páté. — Tak teda.

Půjdeme v pět hodin. — Třeba.

Vyšli jsme o páté hodině odpoledne.

Přišli jste v čas? — Ne, přišli jste pozdě?

Bylo dost času; nebyl žádný spěch.

Přišli jsme tam pár minut po šesté.

Došli jsme tam před sedmou, — po sedmé, — s večera, — pozdě

yě pool drůhé.—soũ trshi shtw^e rŕe na dwyě(ně drůhoũ).

soũ dwyě hoďiny.—ũsh yě tãk pozďe? — ãnď, ũsh soũ dwyě.

soũ dwyě hoďiny prich. — yě pyět minũt dď trshěkh. — soũ hnědlě trshi hoďiny.

soũ trshi prich.—khĩbee dĕset minũt dď shtyrekh.

fkolik hoďin pũydemě? —pũydemě vĕ shtw^e rt nã pyět.

tď yě toozĕ b^e rzď; pochkãme dď pool pãtĕ. — tãk tĕdã.

pũydemĕ fpyět hoďin. — trshĕbã.

vishli smĕ ō pãtĕ hoďinĕ ōdpolednĕ.

prshishli stĕ fchãss? — nĕprshishli stĕ pozďe?

billď dost chãssũ; nebill ěãdnee spyĕkh.

prshi-shli smĕ tãm pãr minũt pď shĕstĕ.

dďshli smĕ tãm prshĕd sedmoũ, — pď sedmĕ, — svĕcherã, — pozďe

evening, — late in the evening — at midnight.	večer, — o půlnoci.	<i>věcher, — ō poolnotsi.</i>
We got there in an hour, — in an hour and a half, — in two hours, — in five hours.	Došli jsme tam za hodinu, — za půldruhé hodiny, — za dvě hodiny, — za pět hodin.	<i>dōshli smě tam zā hoďi-nū, — zā pooldrūhé hoďiny, — zā dwyě hoďiny, — zā pyět hoďin.</i>
We were here just at twelve o'clock.	Byli jsme tu zrovna ve dvanáct hodin.	<i>billi smě tū zróvnā vĕ dwānāts hoďin.</i>
We were here exactly at noon.	Byli jsme tu navlas v poledne.	<i>billi smě tū nāvlass fpoledně.</i>
I must be there between one and two; — between two and three; — between four and five.	Musím tam býti mezi jednou a druhou; — mezi druhou a třetí; — mezi čtvrtou a pátou.	<i>mūseem tām beet mezi yednoū ā druhōū; — mezi druhōū ā trshĕtĕe, — mezi shtw^e rtoū ā pátoū.</i>
We must be there before evening, — early in the evening, — towards evening.	Musíme tam býti před večerem, — brzo s večera, — na večer.	<i>mūseemĕ tām beet prshĕd věcherem, — b^e rzo swĕcherā, — nā věcher.</i>
The clock strikes.	Hodiny bijou*)	<i>hoďiny biyoū.</i>
Hear how many (what o'clock) it strikes.	Slyšte kolik bijou!	<i>slishtë kolik biyoū!</i>
It strikes twelve.	Bijou dvanáct.	<i>biyoū dwānāts.</i>
Did you hear the clock strike?	Slyšel jste hodiny bítí?	<i>slisheł stĕ hoďiny beet?</i>
How many (i. e. what o'clock) did it strike?	Kolik bilo?	<i>kolik billō?</i>
It struck one; — it struck two; — it struck three; — it struck five; — it struck six.	Bila jedna; — bily dvě; — bily tři; — bilo pět; — bilo šest.	<i>billā yednā; — billy dwyě; — billy trshĕ; — billō pyět; — billō shĕst.</i>

*) **Bijou** or **bijí** (they strike). See Note 2, and also foot-note on page 137.

It has just struck half past six.	Právě bilo půl sedmé.	<i>právě billō pool_sedmé.</i>
It has already struck seven.	Už odbilo sedm.	<i>ūsh odbillō sedŭm.</i>
It is soon going to strike eight.	Hnedle bude bítí osm.	<i>hnedlě būdĕ beet osŭm.</i>
I shall wait till half past eight.	Budu čekati do půl deváté.	<i>bŭdŭ chekāt dō pool dĕváté.</i>
I shall wait till nine.	Počkám do devíti.	<i>pochkám dō dĕveetŭi.</i>
Let us wait till ten.	Počkejme do desíti.	<i>pochkeymĕ dō desseetŭi.</i>
Wait till midnight, or until morning.	Počkejte do půlnoci, nebo do rána.	<i>pochkejtĕ dō poolnoci, nebō dō rána.</i>
I shall wait gladly	Rád počkám.	<i>rád pochkám.</i>
I do not like to wait.	Nerád čekám.	<i>nerād chekám.</i>
Waiting is not agreeable.	Čekání není milé.	<i>chekání neyŭi milé.</i>
I do not like long waiting.	Nemám rád dlouhé čekání.	<i>nemám rád dlouhé čekání.</i>

VOCABULARY.

Hodina, f. *hodinā*, the hour;
hodinka, f. *hodinkā*, the small hour;
hodiny, pl. *hodiny*, the clock;
hodinky, pl. *hodinky*, the watch;
lék, m. *lék*, the medicine;
spěch, m. *spyĕkh*, the hurry;
čekání, n. *chekání*, the waiting;
napřed, *nāprshĕd*, ahead, before;

natahnouti, *nātāhnoūt*, to wind up;
nataženy, *nātāžĕny*, wound up;
čekati, *chekāt*, to wait, to be waiting;
čekám, *chekám*, I am waiting;
počkatí, *pochkāt*, to wait;
počkám, *pochkám*, I shall wait;
pozadu, *pozādŭ*, behind.

Age and date.

VĚK a DATUM.

How old are you?	Jak jste stár? Kolik je vám let?	<i>yāk stĕ stár? kolik yĕ vám let?</i>
I am twenty years — I am over twenty.	Je mi dvacet let. — Je mi přes dvacet.	<i>yĕ me dwātsset let. — yĕ me prshĕs dwātsset.</i>

I shall soon be twenty five years.	Bude mi brzo dvacet pět let.	<i>būdĕ me b^erzĕ dvātsēt pyĕt let.</i>
I am nearly thirty years.	Je mi málem třicet let.	<i>yĕ mi málem trshitset let.</i>
I am already thirty five years.	Už je mi třicet pět let.	<i>ūsh yĕ me trshitset pyĕt let.</i>
I was forty years in January.	Bylo mi čtyřcet let v lednu.	<i>billĕ me shtiritsēt let vlednū.</i>
You are still young.	Jste ještě mladý.	<i>stĕ yeshĕ mlādee.</i>
I shall be fifty years in February. — I am getting old.	Bude mi padesát let v únoru. — Stárnu.	<i>būdĕ me pādĕsāt let voo-norū. — stárnū.</i>
That is not a great age.	To není velké stáří.	<i>tĕ neyñi velké stārshē.</i>
You look young.	Vypadáte mladý.	<i>vypādātĕ mlādee.</i>
You don't look so old.	Nevypadáte tak starý.	<i>nĕvypādātĕ tāk stāree.</i>
You look well for your age.	Vypadáte dobře na svůj věk.	<i>vypādātĕ dĕbrshĕ nā svūy věk.</i>
When were you born?	Kdy jste*) narozen? — Kdy jste se narodil?	<i>gdy stĕ nārĕzĕn? gdy stĕ sĕ nārĕd'il?</i>
What year? — In what year?	Který rok? — V kterém roce?	<i>kĕrĕe rĕk? — fktĕrĕm rotsĕ?</i>
I was born in the year 1840. — I was born in May in the year 1850.	Jsem narozen roku 1840. — Jsem rozen v máji leta 1850.	<i>sem nārĕzĕn rĕkū tĕ-seets osūm set shtiritsēt. — sem rĕzĕn v mā-yi letā tĕseets osūm set pādĕsāt.</i>
I was born in the month of June 1862.	Narodil jsem se v měsíci červnu 1862.	<i>nārĕd'il sem sĕ vmyĕ-seetsi cheronū tĕseets osūm set shĕdĕsāt dvě.</i>
The first of August is my birth-day.	Prvního srpna je můj den narození.	<i>p^ervñĕehĕ s^erpñā yĕ mūy den nārĕzĕñi.</i>

*) In Bohemian the passive participle **rozen** or **narozen** is used in connection with the present tense : **kdy jste rozen ? kdy jste narozen ?** "when are you born?"

How old is that child?

It is ten days. — It is two weeks (old).

It is a month (old). — It is two months. — It is five months.

It is one year (old). —

It is two years (old).

— It is five years (old).

It will be a year in September. It will soon be three years.

It is going on two years (it is in its second year). — It is going on five years.

How old is that girl?

She will be four years at Christmas. — She will be five years at Easter. — She will soon be six years.

What day of the month is it? — what date is it?

To-day is the first, — the second, — the fifth.

What day of the month is (i. e. will be) to-morrow?

To-morrow is ("will be") the third, — the tenth, — the twentieth.

What date was yesterday?

Jak staré je to dítě?

Je mu deset dní. —

Jsou mu dvě neděle.

Je mu měsíc. — Jsou

mu dva měsíce. —

Je mu pět měsíců.

Je mu rok. — Jsou mu

dvě leta. — Je mu pět

let.

Bude mu rok v září. —

Budou mu brzo tři leta.

Jde mu na druhý rok.

Jde mu na pátý rok.

Jak stará je ta holka?

Budou jí čtyry leta o

vánocích. — Bude jí

pět let o velkono-

cích. — Bude jí hne-

dle šest let.

Kolikátého je? — jaké je datum?

Dnes je prvního, druhého, — pátého.

Kolikátého bude zejtra?

Zejtra bude třetího, — desátého, — dvacátého.

Kolikátého bylo včera?

yāk stārē yě to d'ee'e?

yě mü dšset dněe. — soũ mü dwyě neděle.

yě mü myšseets. — soũ

mü dwä myšseetsě. —

yě mü pyět myšseetsoo.

yě mü rök. — soũ mü

dwyě letä. — yě mü

pyět let.

büde mü rök vzárshee.

— büdoũ mü b'erzö

trshk letä.

dě mü nä drühee rök. —

dě mü nä pátee rök.

yāk stārā yě tã holkã?

büdoũ yee shtiry letä ö

vánotseeekh. — büde yee

pyět let ö velkönot-

seeekh. — büde yee hně-

dle shěst let.

kolikátého yě? — yáké yě dátum?

dness yě p'erüneeħö, — drühéhö, — pátéhö.

kolikátéhö büde zeyträ?

zeyträ büde trshěveehö,

— dessátéhö, — dwä-

tsátéhö.

kolikátéhö billö fcherä?

Yesterday was the twenty-first.

What day of the month will be next Sunday?

-The twenty-second.

On what day of the month was Frank here? - He was here on the fifteenth and he will come again on the twenty-fifth.

This month?—Yes; he will stay here until the last.

On the first I shall receive new goods.

When will Mr. Danesh pay (his) bill? — Before the last.—On the first of next month.

When will the agent arrive? — About the ninth.

When will the time run out? When will it be due?— About the fifteenth.

That is, about the middle of the month. — I shall pay towards the end of the month.

Next month I expect to be gone.— Before two months pass away, I shall be back.

Včera bylo dvacátého prvního.

Kolikátého bude v neděli? — Dvacátého druhého.

Kolikátého byl zde Frank?—Byl zde patnáctého a přijde zas na dvacátého pátého.

Tento měsíc? — Ano, zůstane tu do posledního.

Na prvního dostanu nové zboží.

Kdy pan Daneš zaplatí účet?—Do posledního. — Na prvního budoucí měsíc.

Kdy přijede agent? — Asi devátého.

Kdy vyjde čas? Kdy vypadne lhůta? — Kolem patnáctého.

Teda v polou měsíce.— Zaplatím ke konci měsíce.

Na druhý měsíc hodlám býti pryč.— Než uplynou dva měsíce, budu nazpět.

fcherä billö dwätsátéhö p^erv^eñeehö.

kolikátéhö bädě vnědeli?— dwätsátéhö druhéhö.

kolikátéhö bill zdě Frank?— bill zdě pät-nätstéhö ä prshidě zäss nä dwätsátéhö pätéhö.

tentö myšeets? — äno; zoostäně tü dö posled-ñeehö.

nä p^erv^eñeehö döstänü nové zbožee.

gdy pän Dänesh zäpläťee oochet? — dö pö-sledñeehö. - nä p^erv^eñeehö büdöütsee myšeets.

gdy prshiyedě äkent? — ä i devätéhö.

gdy veedě chäss? gdy vypädne lhootä?—kö lem pätñätstéhö.

tedä fpöloü myšeetsě. - zäpläťeem kë kontsi myšeetsě.

nä druhēe myšeets hod-lám beet prich. nesh üplinoü dvě myšeetsě, büdü näspyčt.

<p>We shall expect you some time in October; — or in the beginning of November; at latest before the first of December.</p> <p>The fourth of July is a national holiday, — the day of independence.</p> <p>Thanksgiving day is usually in November.</p> <p>On new-year's day; — before New-year's;— after New-year's.</p>	<p>Budeme vás čekati někdy v říjnu; — nebo počátkem listopadu; — nejdýl do prvního prosince.</p> <p>Čtvrtý červenec jest národní svátek, — den neodvislosti.</p> <p>Den díkůvzdání bývá v listopadu.</p> <p>Na nový rok; — do nového roku; — po novém roce.</p>	<p><i>büdēmě váss čekät ñe-gdy frsheeyñü; - ñě-bš pochátkem listopädü;—neydecl dö p^ero-ñeeho prosintsě.</i></p> <p><i>shtic^ertee chervěnets yest národñee svátek, — den ñeodvislosti.</i></p> <p><i>den d'eečküvzdáñee beevá vlistopädü.</i></p> <p><i>nä novee rök;—dš novéhö rökü;— pš novém rotsě.</i></p>
---	---	---

VOCABULARY.

<p>Věk, m. <i>vyěk</i> } the-age</p> <p>stáří, n. <i>stárshee</i> }</p> <p>stárnouti, <i>stárnoüt</i>, to grow old;</p> <p>naroditi se, <i>näröďit sě</i>, to be born;</p> <p>narození, n. <i>närozěñi</i>, the birth;</p> <p>počátek, m. <i>pochátek</i>, the beginning;</p> <p>lhůta, f. <i>lhootä</i>, tho given time, the term;</p> <p>vánoce, pl. <i>vánotsě</i>, Christmas;</p> <p>velkonoce, pl. <i>velkñnotsě</i>, Easter;</p> <p>svatodušní svátky, pl. <i>svätöďušñee svátky</i>, Whitsuntide;</p>	<p>vypadati, <i>vypädät</i> } to look, to ap-</p> <p>vyhlížeti, <i>vyhlečzet</i> } pear;</p> <p>vyjítí, <i>viyeet</i>, to go out, to run out;</p> <p>uplynouti, <i>üplynoüt</i>, to pass away;</p> <p>zaplatiti, <i>zäplät'it</i>, to pay up;</p> <p>někdy, <i>ñegdy</i>, sometimes;</p> <p>v polou, <i>fpoloü</i>, in the middle;</p> <p>nazpět, <i>näspyět</i> } back</p> <p>zpátky, <i>spátky</i> }</p> <p>neodvislost, f. <i>ñeodvislöst</i>, the independence.</p>
--	---

<p>Leden, <i>lëden</i>, January</p> <p>únor, <i>oonor</i>, February</p> <p>březen, <i>brshězën</i>, March</p> <p>duben, <i>dübën</i> } April</p> <p>april, <i>äpril</i> }</p>	<p>květen, <i>kicyětën</i> } May</p> <p>máj, <i>máy</i> }</p> <p>červen, <i>chervën</i>, June</p> <p>červenec, <i>chervěnets</i>, July</p> <p>srpen, <i>s^erpën</i>, August</p>
--	--

září, *zárshee*, September
říjen, *rsheeyën*, October

listopad, *listopäd*, November
prosinec, *prosinets*, December.

The weather.

POČASÍ.

How is the weather?
 It is fine; — it is beautiful weather.
 It is clearing up; — it is a fine morning; — it will be a nice day.
 The heaven is clear. — The sun shines, — warms (i. e. makes it warm), — burns.
 In the sun it is hot.
 It is warm; — it will be hot; — there will be a great heat to-day.
 Yesterday there was a great heat.
 How does the thermometer stand? — Eighty five in the shade.
 The thermometer is rising, — is falling.
 What a heat! — I am perspiring; let us go into the shade; — I feel hot.
 What wind is it? — East wind, — West wind, South wind, — North wind.
 I think there will be a

Jaké je počasí?
Je pěkně; — je krásné počasí.
Vybírá se; — je krásné ráno; — bude pěkný den.
Nebe je jasné. — Slunce svítí — hřeje — pálí.
Na slunci je horko.
Je teplo; — bude horko; — bude dnes velké parno.
Včera bylo silné vedro.
Jak stojí teploměr? — Osmdesát pět ve stínu.
Teploměr stoupá, — klesá.
To je horko! — Já se potím; pojďme do chládku. — Je mi horko.
Jaký je vítr? — Východní, — západní jižní, — severní.
Myslím že bude změna

yáké yě pöchäsee?
yě pyěkhñe; — yě krásss-né pochäsee.
vybeerá së; — yě krásss-né ránö; — büdë pyëk-nee den.
nëbë yě yäsné. — slüntsë sweetëe. — hrshëyë, — pálee.
nä slüntsi yë horkö.
yë teplö; — büdë horkö; — büdë dnëss velké parnö.
fcherä billö silné vědrö.
yäk stoyee teplömyër? — osümdëssät pyët vë stëenü.
teplömyër stoupä, — klë-sá.
tö yë horkö! — yá së potëem; pod'mëdö khläd-kü; — ye me horkö.
yäkee yë veet' r? — veekhodñee, — zápdñee, — yizñee, — sëverñee.
misleem že büdë zmyë-

change in the weather;—the wind changes. — Now it blows from the East.

Very likely there will be a change.

It is dry; we need rain; —I wish it would rain! —There is a great deal of dust.

Is it going to rain?—It looks like it; it is getting cloudy.

It is cloudy; — the sky is clouded;—the sky is overcast: — it is damp.

Do you see those dense, black clouds?—They bring rain,—a heavy rain.

I think a rainstorm is coming, — a heavy rainstorm.

The weather is bad; — the weather is nasty; — it is wet and muddy.

It is very nasty out of doors; — it is rainy; — too much rain!

It sprinkles;—it rains a little;— it rains; — it pours;— how muddy it will be!

počasí;—vítr se mění. — Teď vane od východu.

Dost možná, že bude změna.

Je sucho; potřebujeme dešť. — Kéž by jen přšlo! — Je moc prachu.

Bude pršet? — Vypadá to tak; mračí se.

Je zamračenø;—je pod mrakem;—obloha je zatažena, — je vlhko.

Vidíte ty husté, černé mraky? — Z toho bude dešť, — hodný dešť.

Myslím že bude liják, — silný liják.

Je špatné počasí; — je škaredá povětrnost; — je mokro a blativo.

Je tam ošklivě;—je deštivo; — mnoho deště!

Krápe; — poprchává; — prší; lije se; — to bude blata!

ná pochásee;— veet^er se myěñee.—těď vāně od veekhodū.

dost mōžná že būdě zmyěñě.

yě sūkhō; potrhěbūyě-mě deshť.—kěž by en p^ershelō! — yě mots prākhū.

būdě p^ershēt?—vypādā tō tāk; mrāchee sē.

yě zāmračēnō;—yě pod mrākem;—oblōhā yě zātāženā;—yě v^elhko.

vedēete ty hūssté, černé mrāky? — stohō būdě deshť, — hodnee deshť.

misleem žē būdě liyāk, — silnee liyāk.

yě shpātné pochāsee; — yě shkāredā povyēt^ernost;—yě mokrō.

yě tām oshklivyě; — yě deshťivō; — mnohō deshťe!

krāpě;—pop^erkhāvā;—p^ershēe;—liyě sē;—tō būdě blātā!

It rains in torrents.—It has ceased to rain already.

That was a heavy rain-storm,—a cloudburst;—it rained in torrents. — It caused a flood.

It is calm,—no wind,—not a leaf is stirring. — It is sultry; the air is heavy.

The wind rises; — it is windy; — it blows hard; — there is a strong wind.

A storm is brewing; — there will be a hurricane; — a cyclone is coming.

A thunderstorm is coming. — It lightens. — Now there was a flash of lightning.—What flashes of lightning!

Do you hear the thunder? — Yes, it thunders; the thunder rolls from afar; — a thunderstorm is coming

The thunder roars; — the lightning has struck; it has struck somewhere; — the lightning set fire.

This is a terrible storm.

Prší jen se lije. — Už přestalo pršet.

To byl příval, — průtrž mračen;—přelo jen se lilo. — Byla z toho povodeň.

Je ticho, — bez větru, — ani se list nehýbe. — Je dusno; vzduch je těžký.

Dělá se vítr;—je větrno; — fouká hodně; — je silný vítr.

Bude z toho bouře; — bude vichřice;— cyklon se blíží.

Tahne bouřka. — Blyská se. Ted' se záblesklo.—To je blyskání!

Slyšíte hřímati?—Ano, hřímá — hrom hučí z daleka; — bouřka se blíží.

Hrom burácí;— hrom uhodil; — někde uhořelo! — blesk zapálil.

To je hrozná bouře, —

p^ershee yen sě tyè. - úsh prshéstälö p^ershët.

tö bill prsheeväl,—proot^ersh mrächén;—p^ershellö yen sě lillö. — būdë stöhh pövoleň. yè tikhö,—běz vyětrü,— äñi sě list něheebë. — yè düssnö; vzdükh yè teshkee.

d'elá sě veet^er;—yè vyët^ernö;—fouká hodně; —yè silnee veet^er.

būdë stöhh boürshë; — būdë vikh-rshitsë; — tsiklon sě bleežee.

tähně boürsh-kä.—bleeská sě.—ted' sě zäblesklö.—tö yè bleeskáñi!

slisheetë hrsheemät? — äñö, hrsheemá;—hrom hūchee zälekä;—boürshkã sě bleežee.

hrom bürátsee; — hrom ühod'il;—ñegäë ühod'ilö!—blesk zäpälil.

tö yè hrözná boürshë,—

— an awful thunder-storm.—The crashing of thunder is incessant. — Flash after flash, one thunder-clap after the other.

That was a thunder-clap — a thunderbolt from a clear sky.

It hails.—This is a big hailstorm.

It will destroy the crops — the hail will destroy everything. — The hail-storm destroyed the crops;—hailstones of an enormous size were falling.

strašné hromobití.—
Hrom bije neustále.
— Blesk za bleskem.
rána za ranou.

To byla hromová rána;—uhodilo z čista jasna.

Padají kroupy. — To je silné krupobití.

Potluče; — kroupy všecko zničí. — Potlouklo; — padaly kroupy ohromné velikostí.

stráshné hromobitíee
—hrom bije něustálě.
— blesk zã bleskem,
ránã zã ránou.

tõ billã hromõvã ránã;
—ũhoďilõ schistã yãsnã.

pãďãyee kroopy.—tõ yě silné krũpobitíee.

potlũchẽ;—kroopy fshẽtsko zẽñichee.—potlouklo;—pãďãly kroopy ohromné vẽlikostĩ.

It is foggy;—this morning there was a thick fog.

Dew is falling;— there is a heavy dew.

There is a hoary frost, — a gray frost.

It is cold;—it is chilly; — it is frosty.

I feel cold;—I am freezing.— a cold wind is blowing.

I want to warm myself.—Are you cold? Warm yourself. — It is warm here, — almost too warm.

Jest mlhavo;—ráno byla hustá mlha.

Padá rosa; — je silná rosa.

Je jinovatka, — šedý mráz.

Je zima;—je sichravo; — je mrazivo.

Je mi zima; — mrazí mě; — fouká studený vítr.

Chei se ohřátí. — Je vám zima?—Ohřejte se.—Zde je teplo, — až moc teplo.

yest m^elhãvõ;—ráno bilã hustã m^elhã.

pãďã rossã; — yě silná rossã.

yě yinovãtkã, — shẽdee mráz.

yě zimã;—yě sikhrãvõ; yě mrãzivõ.

yě mi zima; — mrãzee myě;—foũká stũďẽnee veet^er.

khtsi sě ohrshãt. — yě vãm zimã? ohrshẽytě sě.—zďẽ yě teplõ,—ãsh mots teplõ.

It is going to snow; —
it snows;—it is snow-
ing.

What a snow-storm!—
a great snow-storm.

A great deal of snow
fell;—there are snow-
drifts.

How many degrees is
it?— It is twenty be-
low zero; — a severe
cold.

The ice is thick; we
can skate.

It will grow warmer;—
it is growing warmer;
—the wind is shifting;
— it blows from the
South.

The ice breaks; — the
snow thaws and the
ice melts.—there is a
big thaw.

In the spring the weath-
er is mild; — in the
summer it is usually
hot;— in the fall it is
cool;— in the winter
it is cold and it freez-
es.

Wisconsin has a hard
winter; — Louisiana
has a mild winter.—
In Texas the winter
is short and the sum-
mer long.

**Bude padatí sníh; —
padá sníh; — sněží.**

**To je vánice! — velká
metelice.**

**Napadlo mnoho sněhu;
—jsou závěje.**

**Kolik je stupňů? — Je
dvacet pod nulou; —
krutá zima.**

**Led je silný; můžeme
se klouzati.**

**Ono se oteplí;—oteplu-
je se;—vítr se obra-
cí;—vane od jihu.**

**Led puká; — sníh taje
a led se rozpouští;—
je hodná obleva.**

**Z jara je mírné poča-
sí; — v letě bývá
horko; — na podzim
je chladno;— v zimě
je zima a mrzne.**

**Wisconsin má tuhou
zimou; — Louisiana
má mírnou zimu. —
V Texasu je krátká
zima a dlouhé leto.**

*bůdĕ pádat sñeeh;—pá-
dá sñeeh;—sñežee.*

*tò yĕ vánítsĕ! — velká
mĕtellítsĕ.*

*nápadlo mnohò sñehù;
— soù závĕjĕ.*

*kolik yĕ štŭpnŭo? — yĕ
dvátsĕt pod nulloù;—
krutá zimá.*

*led yĕ silnee; moožemĕ
sĕ kloúzati.*

*òno sĕ oteplee;—oteplŭ-
yĕ se; — veet^r sĕ o-
brátsee; — vane od
yeehŭ.*

*led pŭká; — sñeeh táyĕ
à led sĕ rozpoušĕtee;
yĕ hòdná oblĕvâ.*

*zyďrâ yĕ meerné pochâ-
see; — vletee beevâ
horkò; — nâ podzim
yĕ khlâdnò;— vzimÿĕ
yĕ zimâ à m^rznĕ.*

*wisconsin má tŭhoù zi-
mŭ; — louisiana má
meernoù zimŭ. — fle-
xasŭ yĕ krátká zimâ
à dlouhé leto.*

<p>The summer season is warm, — the winter season is cold.</p> <p>In the winter days are short and nights are long.</p> <p>The day shortens; — the day lengthens.</p> <p>The night shortens.</p>	<p>Letní počasí je teplé, — zimní počasí je studené.</p> <p>V zimě jsou krátké dny a dlouhé noci.</p> <p>Den se krátí; -- dne přibývá.</p> <p>Noc se krátí; (noci ubývá).</p>	<p><i>letníee pochásee yě teplé,</i> — <i>zimníee pochásee yě stůděné.</i></p> <p><i>vzimyě soů krátké dñi ā dlouhé notsi.</i></p> <p><i>den sě krátěe; — dně prshibeová.</i></p> <p><i>nots sě krátěe; (notsi uběová).</i></p>
--	--	---

VOCABULARY.

<p>Počasí, n. <i>pochásee</i> } the</p> <p>povětrnost, f. <i>povyěl'ernost</i> } weath- er</p> <p>počasí, n. } the season;</p> <p>doba, f. <i>děbā</i> } the season;</p> <p>nebe, n. <i>něbě,</i> the heaven</p> <p>obloha, f. <i>oblěhā,</i> the sky</p> <p>stín, m. <i>s'teen,</i> the shade, the shadow</p> <p>chládek, m. <i>khládek,</i> the shady place</p> <p>prach, m. <i>prākh,</i> the dust</p> <p>blato, n. <i>blātě,</i> the mud</p> <p>list, m. <i>list,</i> the leaf</p> <p>velikost, f. <i>velikost,</i> the greatness</p> <p>kěž by, I would that . . . ; would to heaven that . . . ; I wish it would . . . ;</p>	<p>východ, m. <i>veekhōd,</i> the east</p> <p>západ, m. <i>zāpād,</i> the west</p> <p>jih, m. <i>yeeh</i> } the south</p> <p>poledne, n. <i>poledne</i> } the south</p> <p>sever, <i>sēver</i> } the north</p> <p>půlnoc, <i>poolnots</i> } the north</p> <p>jihovýchod, m. the south-east</p> <p>severovýchod, m. the north-east</p> <p>jihozápad, m. the south-west</p> <p>severozápad, m. the north-west</p> <p>východní, <i>veekhodñee,</i> eastern</p> <p>západní, <i>zāpādñee,</i> western</p> <p>jižní, <i>yeežñee</i> } southern</p> <p>polední, <i>poledñee</i> } southern</p> <p>severní, <i>severñee</i> } northern</p> <p>půlnocní, <i>poolnochñee</i> } northern</p>	<p>Vítr, m. <i>veet^er,</i> the wind</p> <p>vichřice, f. <i>vikh-rshitsě,</i> the gale, the hurricane;</p> <p>foukati, <i>foůkāt</i> } to blow</p> <p>vanouti, <i>vānoūt</i> } to blow</p>	<p>bouře, f. <i>boůrshě,</i> the storm</p> <p>bouřka, f. <i>boůrshkā,</i> the thunder-storm,</p> <p>hřímati, <i>hrsheemāt,</i> to thunder</p> <p>hřímání, n. <i>hrsheemáñee,</i> the thundering</p>
---	---	--	---

hrom, m. *hrôm*, the thunder
hromová rána, a peal or crash of thunder;
hromobití, n. *hrômobít'ee*, peals of thunder;
burácti, *bûrátset*, to roar, to crash
blýskati se, *bleskât sě*, to lighten

Dešť, m. *desht'*, the rain
liják, m. *liyák* } the rainstorm,
príval, m. *prsheevál* } the heavy
shower:
průtrž mračen, *proot' rsh mrächĕn*,
the cloud-burst;
povodeň, f. *pôvodeň*, the flood
mrak, m. *mrák* }
mračno, n. *mrächno* } the cloud
mračiti se, *mrächit sě*, to grow
cloudy;
krápati, *krápät* } to sprin-
poprehávati, *pôp' rkhávät* } kle;
pršetí, *p' rshet*, to rain
líti se, *leet sě* (colloq. *leyt sě*), to pour
prĕstati, *prshĕstât*, to stop.

Kroupy, pl. *kroûpy*, the hail
krupobití, n. *krûpobít'ee*, the hail-
storm;

Vybíratí se, *vybeerät sě*, to clear up
mĕniti se, *myĕ-ñit sě*, to change
páliti, *pálit*, to burn
přibývati, *prshibeevât*, to increase,
to lengthen;

blýskání, n. *bleskáñee*, the lightning
blesk, the flash or stroke of light-
ning; the thunderbolt;
zablesklo se, *zablesklô sě*, there was
a flash a lightning;
uhoditi, *ûhod'it*, to strike
zapáliti, *zâpálit*, to set fire.

potlouci, *potloûtsi*, to knock down,
to destroy;
zničiti, *zñichit*, to annihilate
mlha, f. *m'lhă*, the fog
mlhavo, *m'lhăvô*, foggy
rosa, f. *rossă*, the dew
jinovatka, f. *ye-novâtkă*, hoary frost
sníh, m. *sñeeh*, the snow
snĕhu, *sñehu*, of the snow;
snĕžiti, *sñĕžit*, to snow
metelice, f. *metĕlitsĕ* } the snow-storm,
vánice, f. *vánitsĕ* } the blizzard;
závěje, pl. f. *závyĕyĕ*, snow-drifts
led, m. *led*, the ice
náledí, n. *náled'ee*, glazed frost
mráz, m. *mráz*, the frost
mrznouti, *m'rznoût*, to freeze
tátí, *tát'i*, to thaw
tání, n. *táñee* }
obleva, *oblĕvă* } a thaw

ubývati, *ûbeevât*, to decrease, to
shorten;
potíti se, *poťit sě*, to sweat.
ĕerný, á. é *chernee*, black
hustý, á. é *hûsstee*, thick, dense;

škaredý, *á, é shkārēdee*, nasty, ugly;
 mírný, *á, é meernee*, mild
 ohromný, *á, é ōhromnee*, enormous,
 terrible;

strach, m. *strákh*, fear
 strašný, *á, é stráshnee*, fearful
 hrůza, f. *hroozá*, horror, terror;
 hrozný, *á, é hrōznee*, horrible;
 shocking.

Blativo, (adv.)*, *blátivō*, muddy
 deštivo, *deštivo*, rainy
 mokro, *mokrō*, wet
 vlhko, *v^elhkō*, damp
 sucho, *sūkhō*, dry
 teplo, *teplō*, warm
 horko, *horkō*, hot

parno, *parnō*, very hot
 dusno, *dūssnō*, close, stifling;
 zima, *zimā* } cold
 studeno, *stūdēnō* }
 chladno, *khládno*, cool
 sichravo, *sikhrāvō*, chilly
 mrazivo, *mrāzvō*, frosty, freezing
 cold.

—
 Teploměr, m. *teplōmyēr*, the ther-
 mometer
 stupeň, m. *stūpeň*, a degree
 nula, f. *nūllā*, zero
 nad nulou, *nād nūloū*, above zero
 pod nulou, below zero;
 stoupati, *stoūpāt*, to rise;
 klesati, *klessāt*, to go down.

Health and sickness.

ZDRAVÍ a NEMOC.

I hope you are well.
 Only middling;— I am
 so so.

Yo do not look so well
 as (you did) lately.

Do you think so? —
 Well, you are right;
 — I do not look well.

Doufám že jste zdrav. |
 Jen tak prostředně;—
 jen tak tak.

Nevypadáte tak dobře
 jako nedávno.

Myslíte? — Ba máte
 pravdu;—nevypadám
 dobře.

doūfám že stě zdrav.
yen tāk prostrshēdāne;—
yen tāk tāk.
nēvypādátē tāk dobrshē
yākō nēddāvno.
misleetě? — bā mātē
prāvdā;—nēvypādám
dōbrshē.

*) The adjectives are : *blativý (á, é), deštivý, mokrý*, etc.

Je tam blativo, it is muddy out of doors; — *blativý chodník* (m.), a muddy sidewalk; *blativá cesta* (f.), a muddy road; *blativé pole* (n.), a muddy field.

Je deštivo, it is rainy; — *deštivý den*, a rainy day.

I think I look bad (badly); — I look worse.

O no! you do not look badly.

Don't I? — I guess I do! Listen to me (i. e. let me tell you): you look better than you did the other day.

O, be still! — you flatter me.

You look bad (badly); — I do not like your looks.

What is the matter with you? — is anything the matter with you?

Do you not feel well? — what is the matter? — what ails you? —

Nothing ails me; — nothing is the matter with me.

Why do you look so bad (badly)? — That's nothing!

You deny it (i. e. conceal it). — Don't deny it!

I deny nothing; — why should I deny?

If anything is the matter with you, tell me!

Myslím že vypadám špatně; — vypadám hůř.

O ne! nevypadáte zle.

Že ne? — Myslím že ano! Dejte si říci: vypadáte lépe než oněhdy.

I dejte pokoj! — vy mi pochlebujete!

Vyhlížíte špatně; — nelíbíte se mi.

Co je vám? — chybí vám něco?

Není vám dobře? — co vám chybí? — co vás bolí?

Nic mi není; — nic mi nechybí.

Proč vypadáte tak špatně? — To nic není!

Vy zapíráte. — Nezapírejte!

Nic nezapírám; — proč bych zapíral?

Je-li vám něco, řekněte!

misleem že vypadám shpätně; — vypadám hoorsh.

O ně! něvypádáte zle.

že ne? — misleem že äno! deytě si rheetsi: vypadáte lépe nesh oněhdy.

E deytě pōkoy! — vy me pōkhlēbūyetě.

vyhležeetě shpätně; — něleebeetě se me.

tsō yě vám? — khībee vám ňetsō?

neyñi vám dōbrshē? — tsō vám khībee? — tsō vāss bolee.

ñits me neyñi; — ñits me někhībee.

proch vypádáte tāk shpätně? — to ñits neyñi!

vy zāpeerátě. — nězāpeerēytě.

ñits nězāpeerám; — proch bikh zāpeerāl?

yělli vám ňetsō, rshēk-ñetě!

Tell me what is the matter with you? — does anything ail you? — tell me if anything ails you.

If anything were the matter with me, I should say so.

There is something the matter with you!

You don't feel well; — I see it by your looks!

You are right; I am not well.

What is the matter with you? — I do not know what ails me; — I do not feel quite well.

I am not so well as usual. — A little time ago I felt better.

To-day I feel bad (badly): — I was taken sick.

I feel badly.

Are you sick?

Yes, I am sick; I do not feel well; — I feel bad (badly).

I hear that Edward is sick.

He has been taken sick; — he has fallen sick; — he is very sick; — he

Povězte co je vám? — bolí vás něco? — povězte chybí-li vám něco.

Kdyby mi něco bylo, řekl bych to.

Vám něco je! — Vám něco chybí!

Vám není dobře; — vidím to na vás!

Máte pravdu; není mi dobře.

Co je vám? — Nevím co mi je; — necítím se docela dobře.

Nejsem tak zdravý jak obvyčejně. — Ještě nedávno bylo mi líp.

Dnes je mi špatně; — přišlo mi nanic.

Je mi nanic. — Je mi zle.

Jste nemocen?

Ano, jsem nemocen; — není mi dobře; — je mi zle.

Slyším, že Edward je nemocen.

Roznemohl se; — upadl do nemoci; — je silně nemocen; — je

přovyžtě tsò yě vám? — bolee váss ñetsò? — přovyžtě khibeeli vám ñetsò?

gdyby me ñetsò billò, rsh^ekl bikh tò.

vám ñetsò yě! — vám ñetsò khibeel!

vám neyñi dðbrshě; — vid'eem tò ná váss!

mátě prãvdũ; neyñi me dðbrshě.

tsò yě vám? — něveem tsò me yě; — nětsee'eem sě dotsellã dðbrshě.

neysem tãk zdrãf yãk obicheyñe. — Yesh'e nedãvnò billò me leep.

dness yě me shpãtñe; — prshishlo me nãñits.

yě me nãñits. — yě me zlě.

stě nẽmotsën?

ãnò, sem nẽmotsën; — neyñi me dðbrshě; — yě me zlě.

slišheem že Edward yě nẽmotsën.

roznẽmòh^el sě; — ùpã-d^el dð nẽmotsi; — yě silñe nẽmotsën; — yě

has been sick a long time.	dlouho nemocen.	<i>dloũhõ nemotsën.</i>
What is the matter with him?—what happened to him?	Co mu je? — co se mu stalo?	<i>tsõ mã yě? — tsõ sě mã stãlõ?</i>
He caught a cold:— he has a bad cold.	Nastudil se; — má silné nastuzení.	<i>nãstũd'íl sě; — má silné nãstũzẽní.</i>
Anthony is also sickly: — but to-day he already feels better.	Anton je také churavý; — ale dnes už je mu lépe.	<i>ãnton yě také khũrãvẽ; — ãlě dnẽs už yě mã lepě.</i>
I was long in poor health;—I was ailing seriously.	Já dlouho churavěl;— povážlivě jsem churavěl.	<i>yã dloũhõ khũrãvẽll; põvãžlivě sãm khũrãvẽll.</i>
What was the matter with you? — Indeed I do not know what ailed me.	Co vám bylo? — Ani nevím co mi bylo.	<i>tsõ vãm billõ? — ãni nẽvẽm tsõ mẽ billõ.</i>
I had no appetite, — I had no sleep, — I had a feeling of weariness. — But it all passed away.	Neměl jsem chuť k jídlu, — neměl jsem spaní, — cítil jsem unavenost. — Ale minulo to.	<i>nemyell sãm khũt'ẽk-yee-dlũ, — nemyell sãm spãní, — tse'íl sãm ãnãvẽnost. — ãlě minũlõ tõ.</i>
Take care of yourself; — be careful of your health!	Dejte na sebe pozor; — buďte opatrný na zdraví!	<i>deytě nã sěbẽ põzor; — bũd'tě õpãt'õrnee nã zdrãvẽ.</i>
Health is above everything; it is the greatest treasure.	Zdraví je nade všechno; je to největší poklad.	<i>zdrãvẽ yě nãdě fshẽtskõ; yě tõ neyõyẽt-sheẽ põklãd.</i>
An unhealthy man is unhappy.	Člověk nezdravý je nešťastný.	<i>chlovyẽk nẽzdrãvẽ yě nesh'ãssnee.</i>
What is the matter with you? are you sick? — you are not sick, are you?	Co je vám? stůnête? snad nestůnête?	<i>tsõ yě vãm? stõõnẽtẽ? — snãd nẽstõõnẽtẽ?</i>
Only a little; it is not	Jen tak trochu; není	<i>yẽn tãk trõkhũ; neyũi</i>

bad. -- I have a pain in the bowels.	to zlé. -- Mám bolesti.	tò zlé. -- mám bolěni.
That will pass away; -- it will stop of itself. -- I hope so.	To zase přejde; -- to přestane samo. -- Doufám.	tò zase prshěydě; -- tò prshěstāně sāmō. -- doůfám.
Do you have it often? -- Quite often; -- it comes upon me from time to time.	Míváte to často? -- Dost často; -- přichází to na mě ob čas.	meevátě tò chāsstō? -- dost chāsstō; -- prshikházee tò nā myě ob chāss.
What do you do against it? -- Nothing; I lie down and remain quiet.	Co děláte proti tomu? -- Nic; lehnú si a jsem tiše.	tō d'elátě proti tōmū? -- ňits; lehnū si ā sem t'ishě.
That is the best medicine. -- I think so. -- That helps.	To je nejlepší lék. -- Já myslím. -- To pomáhá.	tò yě neylepshee lék. -- yá misleem. -- tò pomáhá.
It always helps me; -- nothing else helps me.	To mi vždycky pomůže; nic jiného mi nepomáhá.	tò mi vžditsky (ditske) pomoože; -- ňits yiněhō me nēpomáhá.
At least it gives relief. Yes, I feel instant relief.	Aspoň to ulehčí. -- Ano, hned se mi ulehčí.	āsspoñ tò ůlěh-chee. -- ānō, hned sě me ůlěh-chee.
It relieves instantly; -- it is good for relief.	Hned se uleví; -- je to dobré pro úlevu, (pro ulehčení).	hned sě ůlěvee; -- yě tò dōbrě pro oolěvū (pro ůlěh-chēni).

VOCABULARY.

Nastuditi se, <i>nāstūd'it sě</i> , to catch a cold;	pomahati, <i>pomāhāt</i> , to help;
nastuzení, n. <i>nāstūzěni</i> , a cold;	pomahá, <i>pomāhá</i> } it helps
churavěti, <i>khūrāv'yēt</i> , to sicken, to be sickly;	pomůže, <i>pomoožě</i> }
churavý, á, é <i>khūrāvee</i> , sickly, indisposed;	nepomahá } it does not help;
churavost, f. <i>khūrāvost</i> , sickliness, indisposition;	nepomůže }
	pochlebovati, <i>pokhlēbovāt</i> , to flatter
	zapíratí, <i>zāpeerāt</i> , to deny
	cítiti, <i>tsee'tit</i> , to feel
	cítím, <i>tsee'teem</i> , I feel

mívati (reit. form of **míti**, to have; see page 168); *meevãti*, to use to have;

přicházeti, *prshikházet*, to use to come;

přestati, *prshěstãt*, to stop;

ulehčiti, *ũleh-chit* } to relieve

uleviti, *ũlevit*

ulehčení, n. *ũleh-cheñi* } relief

ũlevã, f. *oolěvã*

Chuť, f. *khũt*, the taste, the appetite,*)

chuť k jídlu, *khũt k yeedlũ*, appetite for food;

spaní, n. *spãñee*, the sleep;

lék, m. *lěk* } the medicine

medicina, f. *meditsinã* }

poklad, m. *poklãd*, the treasure;

pokoj, m. *põkoy*, peace, rest;

dejte pokoj! *deytẽ põkoy!* give me a rest! keep still!

ob čas, *õb chãss*, from time to time:

necítim, *nětsecteem*, I do not feel;

boleti, *bõlet*, to ache, to ail;

bolení, n. *bolěñi*, pain, (especially in the bowels, belly-ache);

je mi nanie, *yẽ me nãñits*, I feel sick

něco mi chybí, *ñetsõ me khĩbee*, something ails me; there is something the matter with me.

zdravý, **á**, **é** *zdrãvee*, healthy, well, sound;

nezdravý, **á**, **é** *nẽzdrãvee*, unhealthy, unwell, unsound;

opatrný, **á**, **ě** *õpãt rnee*, careful

obyčejný, **á**, **é** *õbicheynee*, usual, common;

obyčejně, *õbicheyñee*, usually, commonly;

povážlivě, *põvãžlivyẽ*, seriously

prostředně, *prostrshěd-ñẽ*, middling

ticho, n. *tĩkhõ*, silence, quiet, calm, **tiše**, *tĩshẽ*, quietly, calmly.

The human being.

LIDSKÝ TVOR.

Tělo, n. *těľõ*, the body;

tělesný, **á**, **é** *tělessnee*, bodily;

úd, m. *ood*, the member, the limb;

kost, f. the bone;

kostra, f. *kostrã*, the skeleton;

kostnatý, **á**, **é** *kostnãtee*, bony;

morek, m.

špik, m. *shpik*, } the marrow;

*) **Chuť** means also "a desire or inclination", **mám chuť jíti tam**, I have a mind to go there; — **mám chuť vyhnati ho**, I have a mind to chase him (or: to turn him out); — **mám chuť říci mu to**, I have a mind to tell him so; — **mám chuť do práce**, I have a desire to work, or a taste for work; I feel like working; — **pracuju s chutí**, I work with a will; etc.

kůže, f. *koožě*, } the skin
 pleť, f. *plěť*, }
 pokožka, f. *pokožká*, the cuticle
 blána, f. *bláná*, the membrane
 maso, n. *mássö*, the flesh
 masitý, á, é *massitee*, fleshy
 tlustý, á, é *tlüstee*, fat
 hubený, á, é *hüběnee*, lean, thin;
 sval, m. *sväl*, the muscle
 svalnatý, á, é *sválnátee*, muscular
 šlachy, pl. *shlákhly*, the sinews
 žláza, f. *žlázá*, the gland
 tuk, m. *túk*, } the fat
 sádlo, m. *sádlö*, }
 nerv, m. *nerf*, } the nerve
 číva, f. *chivá*, }
 nervový, á, é *nervövee*, } nervous
 čivní, *chivněe*, }
 ceva, f. *tsěvā*, the vessel
 žíla, *želā*, the vein

Hlava, f. *hlāvā*, the head
 lebka, f. *lebkā*, the skull
 temeno, n. *teměňö*, the crown or
 top of the head;
 týlo, n. *teelö*, the back of the head;
 kůže na hlavě, *koože nā hlāvě* } the
 skalp, m. *skālp* } scalp
 mozek, m. *mözek*, the brain
 spánek, m. *spánek*, the temple
 spánky, pl. *spánky* } the temples
 skráně, pl. *skráně* }

Oko, n. *öko*, the eye
 oči, pl. *öchi*, the eyes
 oční důlek, *ochněe doolek*, the socket

hlavní žíla, *hlāvñee ž.* } the
 srdeční žíla, *s^erdechñee ž.* } artery
 tepna, f. *těpnā*, the pulse
 žilka, f. *žilkā*, a small vein;
 žilnatý, á, é *žilnátee*, sinewy
 krev, f. *krěf*, the blood
 krevnatý, á, é *krěvnátee*, full blooded
 chudokrevný, á, é *khüdokrěvnee*,
 bloodless, anaemic
 krvavý, á, é *k^ervāvee*, bloody
 vlas, *vläss* } the hair on the head
 vlasy, pl. }
 chlup, *chlüp* } the hair on the body
 chlupy, pl. }
 vlasatý, á, é *vläsátee* } hairy
 chlupatý, á, é *chlüpátee* }
 vnitřnosti, *vñitrsh-nost'i* viscera;
 uvnitř, *üvñitrsh* } inside, inwardly;
 vně, *vñe* }
 zevnitř, *zevñitrsh* } outside, outwardly.
 zevně, *zevñe* }

čelo, n. *chellö*, the forehead
 tvář, f. *tvārsh* } the cheek
 líce, n. *leetsě* }
 tvář, f. *tvārsh* } the face
 obličej, m. *oblichey* }
 lícní kost, *leetsñee kost*, the cheek-
 bone
 čelist, f. *chellist*, the jaw-bone
 brada, f. *brādā*, the chin
 laloch, m. *lālokh*, double chin
 důlek, m. *doolěk*, the dimple
 vrásky, pl. m. *vrássky*, the wrinkles.

oční jablko, *ochñee yāb^elkö*, the eye-
 ball
 koutek, m. *koůtek*, the corner

rohovka, f. <i>rohofkã</i> , the cornea	řasy, pl. <i>rshãssy</i> , the eyelashes
duhovka, f. <i>dãhofkã</i> , the iris	brvy, pl. <i>b^ervy</i> } the eyebrows
žítelnice, f. <i>zrsheetelñitsě</i> , the pupil	obočí, n. <i>občee</i> }
klapka, f. <i>klãpkã</i> , the eyelid	
Ucho, n. <i>ũkhõ</i> , the ear	konec ucha, <i>kõnets ũkhã</i> , the tip of the ear;
uši, pl. <i>ũshi</i> , the ears	laloček, m. <i>lãlõchek</i> , the lobe
Nos, n. <i>nõss</i> , the nose	chřipě, pl. <i>krshee-pyě</i> } the
špička nosu, <i>shpichkã nossũ</i> , the tip of the nose.	nosové dírky, pl. <i>nosso- vě d'eerky</i> } nostrils
Ústa, pl. <i>oostã</i> , the mouth	pysky, pl. } the lips
pysk, m. <i>pisk</i> } the lip	rtý, pl. }
ret, m. <i>ret</i> }	
Zub, m. <i>zuby</i> , pl. <i>zũb, zũby</i> , the tooth, the teeth	stolička, f. <i>stolichkã</i> , the molar
přední zuby, <i>prshed-ñee zũby</i> , the fore-teeth	kořen zubu, <i>korshẽn zũbũ</i> , the root of the tooth;
zadní zuby, <i>zãdñee zũby</i> , the back-teeth	dáseň, f. <i>dãsseñ</i> , the gum
špičáky, m. <i>shpicháky</i> , the canines	dásně, pl. <i>dãssñe</i> , the gums
	patro, n. <i>pãtrõ</i> , the roof of the mouth
	jazyk, m. <i>yãzyk</i> , the tongue.
Vousy, pl. <i>foũsy</i> , the beard	kníry, pl. <i>kñeery</i> , the moustaches
licousy, pl. <i>litsoũsy</i> , the whiskers	plnovous, m. <i>p^elnõfoũs</i> , the full beard
Hrdlo, n. <i>h^erdlõ</i> , the throat	průdušnice, f. <i>proodũshñitsě</i> , the windpipe
krk, m. <i>k^erk</i> , the neck	mandle, pl. <i>mãndlě</i> , the tonsils, the almonds;
hrtán, m. <i>h^ertãn</i> } the larynx	ohryzek, m. <i>õhryzèk</i> , Adam's apple.
chřtán, m. <i>h^rsh^tãn</i> }	
hrdelnice, f. <i>h^erdel-ñitsě</i> , the jugular vein:	
Trup, m. <i>trũp</i> , the trunk	klíční kost, f. <i>kleechñee kost</i> , the collar-bone
hrud', f. <i>hrũd'</i> , the chest	prsni kost, f. <i>p^ersñee kost</i> , the breast-bone
prsa, pl. <i>p^ersã</i> , the breast	
žebro, n. <i>žebřõ</i> , the rib	

záda, pl. *zádä*, the back
zadek, m. *zädek*, the back part, the
 backside;

předeck, m. *prshëdek*, the fore-part,
 the front;

hřbet, m. *hršbet* } the backbone,
páteř, f. *pátërsh* } the spine;

Život, m. *život*, the abdomen

břicho, n. *brshikhö*, the belly

pupek, m. *püpek*, the navel

bok, m. *bök*, the hip

slabina, f. *släbinä*, the side

kříž, *krsheež*, the small of the back;

zadnice; f. *zädñütsë*, the seat, the
 bottom;

půlky, pl. f. *poolky*. } the
zadní tváře, pl. f. *zädñee* } buttocks
twärshë

Ruka, i. *rükä*, the hand

ruce, pl. *rütsë*, the hands; **v rukou**,
vrükou, in the hands; **na**
rukou, *när.*, on the hands

rámě, n. *rámýë* } the arm

paže, n. *päže*

dolní část paže, *dölñee chást päže*,
 the fore-arm

horní část paže, *horñee chást p.*, the
 upper arm

rameno, n. *rämenö* } the shoulder or

paždí, n. *päžd'ee* } top of the arm;

podpaždí, n. *podpäžd'i*, the armpit

loket, m. *löket*, the elbow

přehyb, m. *prshëhüb*, the wrist

pěst, f. *pyëst*, the fist

zlatá žíla, f. *zlätü žeelü*, the spinal
 cord;

plece, sing. & pl. *pletsë*, the shoulder

lopatka, f. *lopätkä*, the shoulder-blade

obratel, m. *obrätel*, the vertebra

obratle, pl. *obrätlë*, the vertebrae.

řiť, f. *rshit'*, the anus

pohlaví, n. *pohlävee*, the sex

pohlavní úd, *pohläveñee ood*, the
 sexual parts

mužský úd, m. *müskëe ood*, the penis

zálupa, f. *zälüpä*, the fore-skin

varle, (pl. **varlata**), *varlë*, the tes-
 ticle

rodidla, pl. *rod'idlä*, the genitals.

kloub, m. *kloüb*, the joint

dlaň, f. *dläñ*, the palm

prst, m. *p^erst*, the finger

palec, m. *pälets*, the thumb

malík, m. *mäleek*, the little finger

ukazovák, *ükäzovák*, the forefinger

prostřední prst, *prostrshedñee p^erst*,
 the middle finger

článek prstu, *chlúnek p^erstü*, the
 phalange

špička prstu, f. *shpichkä p^erstü*,
 the tip of the finger;

nehet, m. *nëhet*, the nail

nehty, pl. *nëhty*, the nails

kotník, m. *koñeek*, the knuckle

kloub, m. *kloüb*, the joint.

Noha, f. *nõhã*, the leg, the foot;
 nohy, pl. *nõhy*, the legs, the feet;
 chodidlo, n. *khod'idlõ*, the foot
 tlapa, f. *tlãpã*, the sole of the foot;
 stehno, n. *stõhnõ*, the thigh
 stehenní kost, f. *stõhõñee kost*, the
 thigh-bone

hnát, m. *hnãt*, the shin
 lýtko, n. *leetkõ*, the calf of the leg;
 koleno, n. *kolõnõ*, the knee
 přehyb kolena, m. *prshõhyb kolõnã*,
 the knee-joint

Srdce, n. *s'rdse*, the heart
 osrdí, n. *oss'rd'ee*, the pericardium
 komora, f. *kõmorã*, the ventricle
 plíce, pl. *pleetsõ*, the lungs
 játra, pl. *yãtra*, the liver
 slezina, f. *slezinã*, the spleen
 ledvina, f. *ledvinã*, the kidney
 měchýř, m. *myõkheersh*, the bladder
 žluč, f. *žlũch*, the gall, the bile;

Ústrojí, n. *oostroyee*, organi m, con-
 stitution;

dýchatí, *deekhãt*, to breathe
 dýchání, n. *deekhãñi*, breathing, res-
 piration;

dýchací ústrojí, *deekhãtsee oostroyee*,
 respiratory organs;

dech, m. *dõkh*, the breath;
 lehký dech, *lõhkee dõkh*, easy breath-
 ing;

těžký dech, *tõshkee dõkh*, heavy
 breathing;

dechnutí, n. *dõkhnũtee*, one breath

pata, f. *pãtã*, the heel
 prsty u nohy, pl. *p'rsty ũ nõhy*,
 the toes

palec u nohy, n. *pãlets ũ nõhy*, the
 big toe;

malík u nohy, m. *mãleek ũ nõhy*,
 the little toe;

plosko-nohý, *ploskõ-nõhee*, flat-foot-
 ed;

kolo-nohý, *kolõ-nõhee*, bow-legged.

žluční měchýř, m. *žlũchñee m.*, the
 gall-bladder

žaludek, m. *žãlũdek*, the stomach
 střevo, n. *strshõvõ*, the intestine, the
 gut;

střeva, pl. *strshõvã*, the bowels
 tenká střeva, the lesser intestines
 tlustá střeva, *ũstã s.* the larger in-
 testines;

konečník, m. *konechñee*, the rectum.

vydechnouti, *vydõkhnõũt*, to draw
 breath;

vydechnouti ze sebe, v. *zõ sõbõ*, to
 exhale, to force out the
 breath;

vdechnouti do sebe, *vdõkhnõũt dõ*
sõbõ, to inhale;

oddechnouti si, *odõkhnõũt si*, to
 breathe easily, to feel re-
 lief;

trávití, *trãvõt* } to digest, to con-
 ztrávití, *strãvõt* } sume:

zažívatí, *zãžeevõt*, to digest

trávení, n. *tráveňi* } digestion
 zažívání, n. *zážeeváňi* }
 zaživací ústrojí, *zážeevátsee oostroye*, digestive apparatus;
 moč, m. *moch*, the urine
 močení, n. *mochěňi*, urination
 močiti, *mochít*, to urinate
 stolice, f. *stolitsě*, stool, evacuation;
 míti stolici, *meet stolitsi*, to go to stool; to have open bowels;
 výkal, *veekál*, the excrement, the discharge;
 lejno, n. *leynò* } the dung
 trus, m. *trüss* }
 oběh krve, m. *obyěh k^e rrvě*, circulation of the blood;
 krváceti, *k^e rvátset*, to bleed
 krvácení, n. *k^e rvátseňi*, the bleeding
 měsíčné, n. *myěseechné*, the menstruation
 plod, m. *plòd*, the fruit
 ploditi, *plòďít*, to bear (fruit etc.); to beget;

Duch, m. *dúkh*, the spirit; the mind or intellect;
 duše, f. *dúshě*, the soul
 duchovní, *dúkhovňee* } spiritual,
 duševní, *dúshěvňee* } intellectual;
 mysl, f. *missl*, the mind
 důmysl, m. *doomissl* } the intellect
 schop, m. *skhòp*, }
 rozum, m. *rozùm*, the reason, the understanding;
 zdravý rozum, *zdrávee rozùm*, common sense;
 soudnost, f. *soúdnost*, the judgment

plození, n. *plòzeňi*, the bearing, the begetting;
 porod, m. childbirth
 poroditi, *poròďít*, to be delivered;
 pracovati ku porodu, *prátsovát kù poròďú*, to be in labor;
 šestinedělí, n. *shěstínedělee*, lying-in
 šestinedělka, f. *shěstínedělká*, a woman in childbed;
 je těhotná, *yě tēhòtná*, she is with child;
 čeká se do kouta, *cheká sě dò kòutá*, she expects to be confined;
 je v koutě, *yě fkoútě* } she is confined,
 slehla, *słěhlá* } (in childbed);
 po koutě, *pò kòutě*, after childbirth, after confinement;
 obcování, n. *obtsòváňi*, the intercourse
 obcovati, *obtsòvát*, to have intercourse;
 pohlavní obcování, *pòhlávňee o.*
 tělesné obcování, *tělessné o.* sexual intercourse.

mysl, *missl*, the sense
 zrak, m. *zrák*, the sight
 sluch, m. *slúkh*, the hearing
 chuť, f. *khút'*, the taste
 čich, cit, m. *chich, tsít*, the smell, the feeling;
 hmat, m. *hmát*, the touch
 pamět, f. *pámýět*, the memory
 smyslný, á, é *smisslnee*, sensual
 smyslnost, f. *smisslnost*, sensuality
 nesmysl, m. *něsmissl*, nonsense
 nesmyslný, á, é *něsmisslnee*, senseless, nonsensical.

A sound body, — a sound mind.

A sound mind in a sound body

I have sound limbs, — and that is a great gift.

The bone is hollow and contains marrow

That man is lean but muscular.

That lady has excitable nerves.

Young blood — hot blood,

The pulse beats slowly, beats fast.

The pulse is normal, — regular, — irregular.

The beating of the heart and the beating of the pulse agree.

Every little vein in the body contains blood.

Fair hair and blue eyes prevail in the north, — dark hair and black eyes in the south.

Long hair, short wit, — says an old proverb.

The European race has a white skin, the Af-

Zdravé tělo, — zdravý duch.

Zdravý duch ve zdravém těle.

Mám zdravé údy, — a to jest veliký dar.

Kost je dutá a obsahuje morek.

Ten člověk je hubený, ale svalnatý.

Ta dáma má popudlivé nervy.

Mladá krev — horká krev.

Tepna bije pomalu, — bije prudce.

Tepna je normální, — pravidelná, — nepravidelná.

Tlukot srdce a bití tepny se shodují (or shodují).

Každá žilka v těle obsahuje krev.

Plavý vlas a modré oči panují (or panují) na severu, — tmavý vlas a černé oči na jihu.

Dlouhé vlasy, krátký rozum, praví staré přísloví.

Plemeno evropské má bílou pleť, plemeno

zdravé tělo, — zdravce důkk.

zdravce důkk vĕ zdravém těle.

mám zdravé oody, — a to jest velikee dar.

kost yĕ dutá a obsahŭyĕ morek.

ten chlovyyĕk yĕ hubĕnce, ale svalnatĕe.

tā dāmā má popŭdlivé nervy.

mladá krev — horká krev.

tepnā biyĕ pomālŭ, — biyĕ prudĕĕ.

tepnā yĕ normálnĕe, — pravidelnā, — nepravidelnā.

tlukot s^e rdsĕ a bitĕe tepny sĕ s-hodŭyŭ.

každā žilkā fĕleĕ obsahŭyĕ krev.

plāvee vlāss a modré ōchi pānŭyĕe nā sĕvĕrŭ, — tmāvee vlāss a černĕe ōchi nā yĕchŭ.

dloŭhĕ vlāsy, krátkĕe rozum, — pravĕe stāre prsheeslovee.

plĕmenŏ evropské má bĕloŭ pĕť, plĕmenŏ

rican race a black skin.	africké černou.	<i>áfritské chernoŭ.</i>
Youth has a smooth face,—old age makes wrinkles.	Mládí má hladké líce, — stáří dělá vrásky.	<i>mláďee má hládké leetsě, — stárshee ďelá vrásky.</i>
A high forehead, a keen eye, long moustaches, — such was the young man.	Vysoké čelo, bystré oko, dlouhé kníry, — takový byl mladík.	<i>visóké chellö, bistré ökö, dlouhé kñeery, — tãkovee bill mláďeek.</i>
The eyes are the organ of sight, the ears (are the organ of) hearing;—the nose is the organ of smell.	Oči jsou orgán zraku, uši sluchu; — nos je nástroj čichu.	<i>öchi soŭ orgán zrákü, ůshi slükhü; — noss yě nástroj chikhü.</i>
Young girls usually have coral lips.	Mladé dívky mívají korálové rty.	<i>mláďé ďeefky meeväyee korälövé rti.</i>
Babies have chubby cheeks.	Děcka mají boubelaté tváře.	<i>ďetskä mäyee boübelläté tvársně.</i>
You still have a full set of teeth (literally: "all the teeth").	Vy ještě máte všechny zuby.	<i>vy yeshťe mátě fshěkhny züby.</i>
I have all (my) front teeth, but a few molars are wanting;— I had them pulled.	Mám všechny přední zuby, ale pár stoliček mi chybí; — dal jsem je vytrhnouti.	<i>mám fshěkhny prshěďñee züby; dlě pár stolichek me khíbee; — däl sem yě vyt^rhnoüt</i>
Why did you have them pulled? — Because they ached me; they were decayed.	Proč jste je dal trhati? — Proto že mě bolely; byly vyžrané.	<i>proch stě yě däl t^rhät? — proto že myě bolěly; billi vižráné.</i>
A decayed tooth always aches; — it is best to pull it out.	Vyžraný zub vždycky bolí; nejlíp ho vytrhnouti.	<i>vyžranee züb ditski bolee; — neyleep hě vyt^rhnoüt.</i>
The pulling of teeth is a painful operation,	Trhání zubů je bolestná operace, — ob-	<i>t^rháníñee züboo yě bolestná öperätsě, — obzlášť</i>

-especially when the tooth has a big root. Children lose the milk-teeth;—they fall out of themselves.

With the teeth we bite; hence they are of a very hard substance. The teeth are set (liter. "sit") in the jaw-bone

The windpipe carries the air into the lungs, where the blood is oxydized.

There are inclosed the thoracic cavity.—There are true ribs and false ribs.

The spinal column is composed of links, which we call vertebrae.

Burdens are most easily carried (i. e. "we carry") on shoulders.

The hand is an exceedingly important member.—The hand has five fingers.

The negroes usually have strong arms.

Whoever walks a great deal, must have sound legs.

The stubbing of the big toe causes pain.

zvlášť má-li zub velký kořen.

Děti ztrácejí mléčné zuby; — vypadají samy.

Zuby kousáme; proto jsou z velmi tvrdé látky.

Zuby sedí v čelisti.

Průdušnice vede vzduch do plic, kde krev se okysličí.

Žebra zavírají hrudní dutinu. — Jsou pravá žebra a falešná žebra.

Páteř skládá se ze článků, které nazýváme obratle.

Břemena nosíme nejšetrně na plecích.

Ruka jest úd nesporně důležitý. — Ruka má pět prstů.

Negrové mívají silné paže.

Kdo chodí mnoho pěšky, musí mít zdravé nohy.

Zakopnutí palce u nohy dělá bolest.

má-li zub velkee koř-
shěn.

děti strátce mléčné
zuby; — vypadájee
samy.

zuby koušámě; proto
sou z velmi tvrdé lát-
ky.

zuby seděe fchelisti.

průdušnice vede
vzduch do plic, kde
krev se okysličee.

žebra zavěerájee hrud-
nice dutinu. — sou
pravá žebra a faleš-
ná žebra.

páteř skládá se ze
chlánkoo, které na-
zeovámě obratle.

břeměně noseně nej-
šetrně na pletsekh.

růka jest oud nespmeer
ně dooležitěe. — růka
má pět p^erstoo.

negrověe meevájee silné
paže.

gděe khděe mnohō
pyšhky, mūsee meet
zdravěe nohy.

zakopnutí palce u no-
hy dělá bolest.

The digestive apparatus is a vital organ. Food is digested in the stomach and in the bowels.

Zaživací ústroji jest životní orgán.

Pokrm ztráví se v žaludku a ve střevách.

žázeevätsee oostroyee
jest životníee orgán.
pok^erm strávee se v žáludkú ä vè strshèvákh.

VOCABULARY.

Dar, m. *där*, the gift
 tlukot, m. *tlükot*, the beating
 kyslík, m. *kissleek*, oxygen
 okysličítí, *okisslichít*, to oxygenate
 dusík, m. *düsseek*, nitrogen
 vzduch, m. *vzdúkh*, the air
 pokrm, m. *pok^erm*, the food
 orgán, m. }
 nástroj, m. *nástroy* } the organ
 článek, m. *chlánek*, the link
 neger, m. *neg^er*, the negro
 mládí, n. *mláďee*, youth
 mladík, m. *mláďeek*, the young man
 dívka, f. *ďeefka*, the girl
 látka, f. *látka*, the material, the stuff;
 žilka, f. *žilka*, a small vein;
 pleť, f. the skin
 přísloví, n. *prshéeslovee*, the proverb
 plemeno, n. *plěměňö* }
 plémě, n. *plěmyě* } the race
 břemeno, n. *brshěmenö*, the burden
 dutý, á, é *dútee*, hollow
 prudký, á, é *prúdkee*, fast
 prudce, adv. *prúdsě*, fast, rapidly;
 popudlivý, á, é *pöppúdlivöe*, excitable
 normální, *normálněe*, normal
 pravidelný, *právidelnee*, regular
 pravý, á, é *právee*, true, right;
 falešný, á, é *fálěshnee*, false

plavý, á, é *plávee*, fair, blonde;
 koralový, á, é *korálovee*, coral (adj.)
 boubelatý, á, é *boúběllátee*, chubby
 bolestný, á, é *bolestnee*, painful
 vyžraný, á, é *vyžránee*, decayed
 důležitý, á, é *doolěžitee*, important
 takový, á, é *tákovee*, such
 nesmírně, *něsmeerněe*, exceedingly
 pěšky, *pyěshky*, on foot
 obsahovati, *obsáhöväti*, to contain
 panovati, *pánöväti*, to reign, to prevail;
 shodovati se, *shöddöväti se*, to agree
 chyběti, *khibyěti*, to be wanting;
 trhati, *t^erhät*, to pull, to tear;
 trhání, n. *t^erháníee*, the pulling
 vytrhnout, *vyt^erhnoüt*, to pull out;
 padati, *páďäti*, to fall
 vypadati, *vypádat* }
 vypadnouti, *vypádnöüti* } to fall out;
 kousati, *koüsät*, to bite
 nazývati, *názeevät*, to call (by a name)
 skládati se (ze), *sklúďäti se*, to be
 composed (of);
 zavíratí, *záveerät*, to inclose (also
 "to shut");
 zakopnouti, *zákopnoüt*, to stub;
 zakopnutí, n. *zákopnúťee*, the stub-
 bing.

Disease and cure.

NEMOC a LÉČENÍ.

Nemoc, <i>němots</i> , sickness, illness, disease;	zmrzačen, a , o**) <i>zm^erzächěn</i> } cripp-
lehká nemoc, <i>lěhká n.</i> light disease;	zmrzačený, á , é <i>zm^erzächěnee</i> } pled
těžká nemoc, <i>těžká n.</i> acute or dangerous disease;	zmrzačenost, <i>f. zm^erzächěnost</i> , the crippled condition;
nemocen, <i>cna, cno němotsen</i> } sick,	rána, <i>f. rándě</i> , the wound
nemocný, á , é *) <i>nemotsnee</i> } ill, diseased	ranítí, <i>rāñit</i> } to wound
těžce nemocen, <i>ťeshtsě n.</i> very sick, dangerously sick;	poranítí, <i>porāñit</i> } to wound
býti nemocen, <i>boet němotsěn</i> } to be	rauěný, á , é <i>rāñenee</i> , wounded
stonatí, <i>stonāt</i> } sick;	poranění, <i>n. porāñěnee</i> } the wound-
roznemoci se, <i>rōzněmōtsisě</i> } to fall	úraz, <i>m. oorāz</i> } ing, a hurt
rozstonatí se, <i>rōstonāt sě</i> , } sick; to be taken sick;	ublížítí, <i>ūblečžit</i> } to hurt,
choroba, <i>f. khōrobā</i> , ailment, affection;	uškodítí, <i>ūshkod'it</i> } to injure;
chorobný, á , é <i>khōrobnee</i> , ailing, affected;	uhodítí, <i>ūhod'it</i> , to strike, to hurt by striking;
marod, (<i>coloq.</i>) <i>mārod</i> , ailing, sickly;	pohmožítí, <i>pōhmož'it</i> , to bruise;
marodítí, <i>mārod'it</i> , to be ailing;	pohmoždění, <i>n. pōhmožďěnee</i> , the bruising, a bruise;
neďuh, <i>m. něďūh</i> } ailment, affection,	uskřípnoutí, <i>ūskrsheepnoūt</i> , to jam, to squeeze;
neduživost, <i>f. něďū-živost</i> , } tion, infirmity, disorder;	uskřípnutí; <i>n. ūskrsheepnūt'ee</i> , a contusion by squeezing;
neduživý, á , é <i>něďūživěe</i> , ailing, infirm;	říznoutí, <i>rsheeznoūt</i> , to cut
neduživec, <i>m. něďūživets</i> , } sickly or	říznutí, <i>n. rsheeznūt'ee</i> } a cut;
maroda, <i>m. mārodā</i> } infirm person;	řez, <i>m. rshěz</i> }
mrzák, <i>m. m^erzák</i> , cripple	píchnoutí, <i>peekhnoūt</i> } to stab, to
zmrzačítí, <i>zm^erzächit</i> , to cripple	bodnoutí, <i>bodnoūt</i> } pierce, to prick;
	kousnoutí, <i>koūsnoūt</i> , to bite
	kousnutí, <i>n. koūs'nūt'ee</i> , a bite.

*) **Nemocný** is the definite, **nemocen** the indefinite adjective. See Note 2 on page 103.

***) **Zmrzačen** is the passive participle (see Lesson XXXVII), from which the adjective **zmrzačený** is derived.

Lékař, m. *lékarsh*, the physician
doktor, m. *doktör*, the doctor
lékařství, n. *lékarsh-stwee*, the medical profession:

lékařský, *lékarshkee*, medical
porodní lékař, *přodňec lékarsh*, the accoucheur

porodní bába, *p. bába* } the midwife
babička, *bábichka* }

ranhojič, m. *ránhdyich*, the surgeon

zubní lékař, *zúbňee lékarsh*, the dentist

vyléčiti, *vyléchit*, }
vyhojiti, *vyhdyit* } to cure, to heal
uzdraviti, *ždräviti* }

vyléčení, **vyhojení**, **uzdravení**, the cure

uzdraviti se, *ždräviti se* } to get
pozdraviti se, *pozdräviti se* } well;
vystonati se, *vystöndät se* } to recover;

umřiti, *ümrsheet*, }
zemřiti, *zemsheet* } to die
skonati, *skönät*

Bolest, f. *bolest* } the pain,
bolení, n. *bolěňi* } the ache;

bolení břicha, *b. brshikhä*, belly-ache

kolika, f. *kolikä*, the colic

mám bolení, I have a pain in the bowels or stomach;

bolení hlavy, *b. hlävy*, head-ache

“ **zubů**, *č. zübü*, tooth-ache

bolest v životě, *b. vživoťe*, pain in the abdomen;

“ **v kříži**, *b. fkrshée-ži*, pain in the small of the back;

umíratí, *ümeerät*, to be dying;

vypustiti ducha, *vypüst'it dükhä*, to breathe one's last;

smrt, f. *sm^ert*, the death

náhlá smrt, *náhlá s.*, sudden death

prohlédnouti, *prohlédnout* } to exam-
proskoumati, *proskoümat* } ine, to
vyšetřiti, *vyshětrshit* } probe;

raditi se, *räd'it se*, to consult

předepsati, *prshěděpsät*, to prescribe

dieta, *de-ětä*

mírnost v jídle, } the diet
meernost v yeedlě }

sbíratí se, *sbeerät se*, to be recovering;

hubnouti, *hübnoüt*, to lose flesh;

tloustnouti, *tloüstnoüt*, to gain flesh;

slábnouti, *slábnoüt*, to grow weak;

sílití, *seelit*, to gain strength;

slabost, f. *släbst*, weakness

síla, f. *seelä*, strength.

bolest v zádech, *b. vzäděkh*, pain in the back;

“ **v noze (v nohou)**, *b. vnöžě (v-nöhoü)*, pain in the leg, or foot (in the legs, or feet);

“ **v ruce (v rukou)**, *b. vrütsě (v-rüköü)*, pain in the hand, or arm (in the hands, or arms);

bolest u srdce, *b. üs^erdsě*, pain in the heart region;

“ **uvnitř**, *b. üvñitrsh*, pain inside

bolestný, *á, é bolestnee*, painful
 bolavý, *á, é bolávee*, sore
 boule, f. *boúľě*, a boil, a bump;
 vřed, m. *vrshěd*, ulcer
 krtice, pl. *k^ertitsě*, scrofula
 rak, m. *rák*, cancer
 otok, m. *štök*, a swelling;
 oteklý, *á, é štěklee*, swelled, swollen
 otéci, *štětsi*, to swell
 horký, *á, é horkee*, hot
 horkost, f. } the heat, the fe-
 rozpálenost, f. } ver, the feverishness

Zápal, m. *zápál* } inflammation
 závět, m. *závět* }
 zapálený, *á, é zápálěnee* } inflamed
 zanícený, *á, é zāñeetsěnee* }
 zápal plic, *zápál plits*, inflammation
 of the lungs;
 zápal mozku, z. *mōzku*, inflamma-
 tion of the brain;
 “ mozkové blány, z. *mōzkové*
blány, meningitis;
 zápal střev, z. *strshěf*, inflamma-
 tion of the bowels;
 zápal pobřišnice, z. *pobrshishñitsě*,
 peritonitis;
 “ pohrudnice, z. *pohrudñitsě*,
 pleurisy;
 souchotě, pl. *soúkhote* } the con-
 úbytě, pl. *oobyte* } sumption;
 tuberkule, pl. *tūberkulě* }
 ochroma, *škhromā* } paralysis
 ochrnutí, *škh^erñutěe* }
 mrtvice, f. *m^ertvitsě*, apoplexy
 záškrt, m. *záshk^ert*, diphtheria

rozpálen, a, o *rospálěn*, feverish;
 horečka, f. *horěchkā* } thety-
 horká nemoc, *horkā němots* } phus
 hlavnička, f. *hlāvñichkā* } fever;
 zimnice, f. *zimñitsě*, the ague
 žlutá zimnice, *žlūtā z.* the yellow-
 fever;
 mraziti, *mrāzit*, to chill
 mrazení, n. *mrāzěñi*, a chill, a shiver
 mrazí mě, *mrāzee myě*, I feel a chill;
 trásti se zimou, *trshást sě zimou*, to
 shiver with cold.

krup, m. *krūp*, the croup
 psotník, m. *psottñeek*, the fits
 spála, m. *spālā* } the measles
 šarlát, m. *shārlāt* }
 osutiny, pl. *ossūtiny*, the chicken-
 pox
 neštovice, pl. *neshtōvitsě*, the small-
 pox
 očkovati, *šchkovāt*, to vaccinate
 očkování, *šchkovāñi*, vaccination
 očkovaný, *á, é šchkovānee*, vacci-
 nated
 výraz, m. *veerāz*, eruption
 vyražený, *á, é vyrāžěnee*, full of
 eruption;
 kožní nemoc, f. *kožñee němots*, skin-
 disease;
 lišej, m. *lišey*, the lichen
 mol, m. the ringworm
 svrab, m. the itch
 svrběti, *sv^erbyět.* to itch
 strup, m. *strūp*, the scab, the scurf;
 strupovitý, *á, é strūpōvitee*, scabby

hostec, m. *hostěts* }
 revma, n. *revmā* } rheumatism
 hostečný, *hostěchnee* }
 revmatický, *revmātitskee* } rheu-
 matic
 srdeční vada, f. *s^erděchñee vādā*,
 heart-disease;

vodnatelnost, f. *vōdnātellnost*, drop-
 sy;

vodnatelný, á, é *vōdnātelnee*, drop-
 sical

záduch, m. *zādūkĥ*, asthma

zádušlivý, á, é *zādūshlivee*, asthmatic

kašel, m. *kāshel*, the cough

modrý kašel, *modree k.*, the whoop-
 ing cough

kašlati, *kāshlāt*, to cough

vyhazovati, *vyhāzōvāt*, to throw up;

dáviti, *dāvīt* }

blíti, *bleet* } to vomit

dávení, n. *dávěñi* }

blíti, n. *blitěe* } the vomiting;

Zlomiti, *zломit* }

zlámati, *zlámāt* } to break

zlomený, á, é *zloměnee*, broken

zlámanina, f. *zlámāñinā* } a broken

zlomenina, f. *zlōm.* } bone, a

puklá kost, f. *pūklū kost*, a cracked
 bone;

vymknouti, *vymknōūt*, to dislocate:

vymknouti kloub, v. *kloūb*, to sprain
 a joint;

vymknutí, n. *vymknūtěe*, a disloca-
 tion, a sprain;

srovnati kost, *srovñāt kost*, to set a
 bone;

křeče, pl. *krshĥchĥ*, cramps

mdloba, f. faintness, fainting fit;

mdlý, á, é *mdlee*, faint;

omdleti, *ōmdlĕt*, to faint, to swoon;

omdlévání, n. *ōmdlĕvāñi*, fainting
 fits, swooning.

nezáživnost, f. *nĕzāživnost* } indi-
 špatné trávení, n. *shpātné* } gestion

záživný, á, é *zāživnee*, digestible

nezáživný, *nĕzāživnee*, indigestible

větry, pl. *vyĕtry* }

nadouvání, n. *nāđouvāñi* }

nadýmání, n. *nāđeemāñi* } wínd, flatu-
 lence;

nadmutý, á, é *nāđmūtĕe*, flatulent

bĕhāvka, f. *byĕhāfka* }

průjem, m. *prooyem* } the
 diarrhea

zástava, f. *zástāvā* }

těžká stolice, *tĕshkā* }

stolitsĕ } stoppage in
 the bowels,
 constipation,
 costiveness;

úplavice, f. *ooplavitsĕ*, dysentery.

dátí do desek, *dāt dō đĕssek*, to splint

obvázati ránu, *ōbvāzāt ránū*, to dress
 a wound;

obvazek, m. *ōbvāzek*, a dressing, a
 bandage;

průtrž, m. *proot^ersh*, the rupture

průtržní pás, m. the truss

hrb, m. *h^erb*, a hump, a hunch;

hrbáč, *h^erbāch*, a humpback;

hrbatý, á, é *h^erbātee*, humpbacked;

kulhati, *kūlhāt*, to walk lamely;

kulhavý, á, é *kūlhāvee* }

chromý, á, é *khromee* } lame

dopadati, *dōpādāt*, to halt.

It is said that Mr. Hanush is sick.

Is he laid up?—Yes, he took to his bed.

Is he very sick? — I think it is serious.

Call a physician.— Send for a doctor

We have sent for him. — The doctor has been here already.

When was Mr. Hanush taken sick?—Yesterday morning; all at once he felt a chill, then he felt feverish.

What is the trouble?—What disease has he?

I think it is inflammation of the lungs.

That would be dangerous.—What does the physician say?

The doctor thinks that he has inflammation of the lungs.

Then I pity him.

How is Mr. Svoboda to-day? is he better? Always the same thing; — no better, no worse; — there is no change.

Pan Hanuš je prý nemocen.

Leží? — Ano, ulehnul.

Je mu tuze zle? — Myslím že je to povážlivé.

Zavolejte lékaře.—Pošlete pro doktora.

Poslali jsme pro něj. — Doktor už tu byl.

Kdy se pan Hanuš rozstonal? — Včera ráno; z nenadání dostal mrazení, pak horkost.

Co je mu?— Nač se rozstonal?

Myslím že na zánět plic.

To by bylo nebezpečné. — Co povídá lékař?

Doktor myslí že má zápal plic.

To ho lituju.

Jak je panu Svobodovi dnes? Je mu líp?

Pořád stejně; — ani líp, ani hůř; — nic se to nemění.

pan hanuš yě prey němotsěn.

ležee? — änd, ülehnuł.

yě mü toož zle? — misleem žě yě tš pšovážlivé.

zävoleyťě lékarshě.— pošletě pro dđktorä.

pšlali smě pro ěey. — dđktor ũsh tš bill.

gdy sě pan h. rostěnal? — fcherä ränö; zně nädäñi dostäl mrdžěñi. pak horkost.

tš yě mü? — nđch sě rostěnal?

misleem že nă zänet plits.

tš bi billö něbespěchné. — tšö poveedä lékarsh?

dđktor mislee že má zápal plits.

tš hš litüyü.

yäk yě pänü swöbödövi dness? yě mü leep.

porshäd steyñe; — äñi leep, äñi hoorsh; — ñits sě tš nemyěñee.

It does not grow worse,
— it doesn't grow
better;

What disease has he?—
What is his disease?
— What ails him?

The physician himself
doesn't know yet; —
until it develops.*)—
It is not known what
will come of it.

I hope it will not be so
bad.

I hope he will recover.
— Perhaps he will
soon get well.

I don't know if he will
get over it. — Who
knows if he will get
well.

He is well along in
years already.

Well, he needs good
nursing. — Give him
the best care possible.

We nurse him faith-
fully.—We tend him
as best we can.

Yes, tend him as well

**Nehorší se to, — ne-
lepší se to.**

**Co má za nemoc? Ja-
kou má nemoc? —
Nač stáně?**

**Lékař sám neví ještě;
— až jak se to uká-
že. — Neví se co z
toho bude.**

**Doufám že nebude to
tak zlé.**

**Doufám že z toho vy-
jde. — Snad se brzo
uzdraví.**

**Nevím vyjde-li z toho.
— Kdož ví jestli z
toho vyjde.**

Už je v letech.

**Inu, potřebuje dobré
ošetření.—Dejte mu
všemožnou péči.**

**Ošetřujeme ho pilně.
— Sloužíme mu co
nejlíp můžeme.**

Ano, služte mu co

*něhorshee sě tō — ne-
lepshee sě tō.*

*tsō má zā nēmots? —
yākoŭ má nēmots? —
nāch stōŋē?*

*lékarsh sám něvee yesh-
ŧe; — āsh yāk sě tō
ūkāže; — něvee sě tsō
stōhō būdē*

*doŭfām že něbūdē tō
tāk zlé.*

*doŭfām že stōhō veedē.
— snād sě b^c rzō ū-
zdrāvee.*

*něveem veedēli stōhō. —
gdōž vee yestli stōhō
veedē.*

ūsh yē vletēkh.

*inū, potrhšhbūyē dōbrē
oshētrshēñi.—deytē mū
fshēmožnoŭ péchi.*

*ōshētrshūyēmē hō pil-
ñe.—slōūžēemē mū tsō
neyleep moožēmē.*

ānō, slūshitē mu tsō

*) **Až jak se to ukáže**, — until it shows itself or develops, — is in fact an elliptical sentence, meaning: “We must wait, until it develops”. Sentences of this character are frequently used; for instance:

Až jak bude, “until (we see) how it will be;” — “(it depends upon) how it will be”.

Až jak to dopadne, “until (we see) how it will come out”; — (it depends upon) how it will come out”.

as you can. — Nurse him in every possible manner.	možná. — Obslužte ho se vším.	možná. — obslužitě ho se vším.
We are with him day and night.	Jsmo u něj ve dne v noci.	smě ů ňey vě dně vnotsi.
Has the doctor prescribed for him? — Yes, he wrote a prescription.	Přede-psal mu doktor? — Ano, napsal re-cept.	prshěděpsal mů dđktor? — ano, napsal re-cept.
Have you sent to the drug-store?— We sent there right away. — The druggist prepared it immediately.	Poslali jste do lékárny? — Poslali jsme tam hned. — Lékárník to připravil okamžitě.	pěslali stě dđ lékárny? — pěslali smě tam hned. — lékárňik tđ prshipřavil đkámžite.
The patient takes his medicine regularly.	Pacient užívá pravidelně.	pátsient ůževá právidelňe.
I hope to God that he will get well.	Dá bůh že se pozdraví.	dá booh že se pozdrávee.
I hope that he will soon be on his legs.	Doufám že bude brzo na nohou.	doůfám že būdě b ^e rzđ nă nđhoů.
I fear that he will soon be "on the board" (i. e. dead).	Bojím se že bude brzo na prkně.	boyeem se že būdě b ^e rzđ nă p ^e rkňe.
I am afraid that nothing will help him.	Bojím se že nic mu nepomůže*).	boyeem se že ňits mů něpěmoože:
I fear that he will die.	Obávám se že umře.	đbávám se že ůmrshě.
Is it true that Mr. Alesh died?	Je to pravda, že pan Aleš umřel?	yě tđ právdă že păn Alesh ůmrshell?
I am sorry to say it is true.	Bohužel, je to pravda.	bđhůžel, yě tđ právdă!
When did he die?—He died at midnight. — He died toward morning.	Kdy zemřel? — Skonal o půlnoci. — Skonal k ránu.	gdů zemrshell? — skonďl đ poolnotsi. — skonďl kránů.

*) See Note 1 on page 36, about double negation.

What did he die of? —
Of inflammation of
the lungs.

Very few get over that —
at his age.

Indeed very few! —
There was no help for
him. — The doctor
said so right off.

He said: There is no
help for him; — the
disease has been neg-
lected.

He neglected it. — He
sent for the doctor
too late.

He should have sent for
the doctor sooner. —
When the doctor
came; it was too late.

A disease must not be
neglected.

Old Mrs. Hoshek died
this morning.

She died suddenly, —
of heart disease.

She was taken sick and
in half an hour it was
all over with her.

That was a sudden
death.

It is better than to suf-
fer long.

Preserve us from long
suffering!

**Nač umřel?—Na zapá-
lení plic.**

**Z toho málo kdo vy-
jde, v jeho věku.**

**Ba málo kdo!—Nebylo
mu žádné pomoci.—
Doktor povídal to
hned.**

**Pravil: není mu po-
moci;—nemoc je za-
nedbána.**

**Zanedbal to. — Poslal
pro doktora pozdě.**

**Měl poslati pro dokto-
ra dříve.—Když dok-
tor přišel, bylo poz-
dě.**

**Nemoc nesmí se zane-
dbati.**

**Stará paní Hošková
skonala dnes ráno.**

**Zemřela náhle, — na
srdeční vadu.**

**Přišlo jí zle a za půl
hodiny bylo po ní.**

To byla náhlá smrt.

**Je to lepší než trápití
se dlouho.**

**Jen ne dlouhé trápe-
ní!**

*náč ůmrshell? — nač
zapáleñi plits.*

*støhø málø gðø veedè,
— vyøhø vyøkø.*

*Bø málø gðø! — nebillø
mø žádnè pomotsi. —
døctor pðveeddø tø
hnøð.*

*pðvøil: neyñi mø po-
motsi; — nømots yø
zànedbànø.*

*zànedbøl tø. — pðsløl
pro doctørà pøzðø.*

*myøll pðsløl pro doctø-
rà dðrsheevø. — gdyž
doctør pðrshishell, billø
pøzðø.*

*nømots nømee sè zà-
nedbøl.*

*størà pññi hoøkøvø
skonølø dneø rånø.*

*zemrshellø nàhlø, — nač
s^e rdechñee vøðø.*

*pðrshishlø yee zlø ã zø
pøol hoðñiny billø pð
ñi.*

tø billø nàhlø sm^ert.

*yø tø lepshee nesh trá-
pit sè dloøhø.*

yen nø dloøhø trápeñi.

Chronic consumption is a slow disease; — acute consumption has a quick run.

Drowning is a cruel death;—so is strangling.—Hanging is an easy death, if the neck is broken.

A. took his own life.— he committed suicide
He drowned himself;— he hanged himself.— he poisoned himself; — he shot himself;— he cut his throat; — he thrust a knife into his breast.

And why did he do it? — Most likely he was insane.

Chronické souchotiny jsou zdlouhavá nemoc;—akutní souchotě mají rychlý běh.

Utopení je těžká smrt; udušení taky. — Oběšení je lehká smrt, zlomí-li se vaz.

A. vzal si život;—spáchal samovraždu.

Utopil se; — oběsil se; otrávil se; — zastřelil se; — podřezal si krk; — vrazil si nůž do prsou.

A proč to udělal? — Nejspíš byl šílený.

kchronitské soukhotiny jsou zdlouháváněmots; — akutnee soukhotě máyee rykhlee byěh. útöpeñiyěveshkám^{ert}; — üdüshěñi táke. — obyěshěñi yě ľěhká sm^{ert}, zlomee-li sě vāz.

A. vzāl si život; — spáchāl sāmōvrāždū.

ütöpil sě; — obyēsil sě; — otrāvīl sě; — podřshězāl si k^{erk}; — vrāzil si noož dō p^{er}soū.

ā proč tō üdělāl? — neyspeesh bill sheelēnee.

VOCABULARY.

Nemocný, m. *němotsnee* } the male
patient, m. *pätsiěnt* } patient;
nemocná, f. *němotsná* } the female
pacientka, f. *pätsiěntkā* } patient;
lékárna, f. *lékárnä* } the drugstore,
apatyka, f. *äpätikā* } the pharmacy;
lékárník, m. *lékárñik*, } the druggist
apatykář, m. *äpätikársh* } ^{the} apothecary;
horkost, f. *horkost*, the fever heat;
mrazení, n. *mrāzěñi*, the chill
předpis, m. *prshědpis* } the prescription,
recept, m. *retsept* } ^{the} receipt,
the recipe.
předepsati, *prshědpsāt*, to prescribe

připraviti, *prshiprāviti*, to prepare;
péče, f. *péchě*, the care
pečovati (o), *pěchovat*, to care (for);
ošetření, n. *oshětrshěñi*, the nursing
ošetřovati, *oshětrshěvat*, to nurse,
to tend;
sloužiti, *slōžiti* } to serve, to wait
obsloužiti, *obsloūžiti* } on, to tend;
potřebovati, *potrshěbōvat*, to want,
to need;
báti se, *bāt sě*, to fear
obávati se, *obāvāt sě*, to apprehend
trápati se, *trāpit sě*, to suffer

trápení, n. *trápěni*, the suffering;
 zanedbati, *zănědbăt*, to neglect
 zanedbán, a, o neglected
 měniti se, *myěňit sě*, to change
 nemění se, *nemyěňee sě*, it does not
 change;
 horšiti se, *horshīt sě*, to grow worse
 nehorší se, *nehorshee sě*, it does not
 grow worse;
 ukázati, *ūkázăt*, to show
 ukáže se, *ūkázě sě*, it will show it-
 self;

vyjítí z toho, *ve-yeet stōhō*, to come
 out of it;
 nebezpečí, n. *něbepěchee*, the danger
 nebezpečný, á, é *něbepěchnee*, dan-
 gerous
 okamžik, m. *okāmžik*, the moment
 málo kdo, *málō gďō*, very few people
 bohužel, *bōhūžell*, alas; I am sorry
 to say;
 vaz, m. *váz*, the back of the head;
 the neck.

Drugs and medicines.

LÉČIVA a LÉKY.

Míra, f. *mecrā*, the measure
 váha, f. *váhā*, the weight
 měřiti, *myěřhīt*, to measure
 vážiti, *vážit*, to weigh
 míchati, *meehăt*, to mix
 prosíti, *proseet*
 přebrati, *prshěbrăt* } to garble
 libra, f. *lībrā*, a pound
 unce, f. *ūntsě*, an ounce
 lot, m. (about half an ounce);
 kvintlík, m. *quńtleek*, (about $\frac{1}{5}$ of
 an ounce);
 grán, m. a grain
 lžice, f. *lžeetsě* or *žeetsě*, a spoon, a
 spoonful;
 Prášek, m. *prášek*, a powder
 “ na zuby, p. *nā zūby*, tooth-p.;
 “ šumivý, p. *shūmivce*, Seidlitz-
 powder;
 “ perský, Persian powder;

lžička, f. *lžeekhā* or *žeekhā*, a small
 spoon; a small spoonful;
 kávová lžička, f. a coffee or tea
 spoonful;
 čajový šálek, m. *chayovee shálek*, a
 tea-cup;
 sklenice, f. *skleňitsě*, a glass
 vinná sklenice, f. *wine-glass*
 hrstka, f. *h^erstkā* } a hand
 přehoušle, f. *prshěhoūshlē* } ful
 špetka, f. *shpetkā*, a pinch
 kapka, f. *kāpkā*, a drop
 kapky, pl. *kāpky*, drops
 pět kapek, *pyět kápek*, five drops; etc.
 dávka, f. *dáfkkā*, a dose.

prášky, pl. *prášky*, powders
 pilulka, f. *pillūlkā*, a pill
 pilulky, pl. pills
 kašička, f. *kāshichkā*, a poultice
 těstičko, n. *ťestīchkō*, a paste

mazání, n. *mázání*, an ointment
 mast', f. *mášť*, salve
 lektvar, m. confection
 tinktura, f. *tinctoora*, tincture
 flastr, m. *flástr*^r } piaster
 náplast, m. *náplást* }
 fizikátor, m. vesicatory
 olej, m. *olěj*, oil
 extrakt, m. extract
 výstřelek, m. *veestrshělek*, spirit
 semeno, n. *seměň* } seed
 semínko, n. *semeenkō* }
 list, m. *list*, leaf
 listí, n. *lištee*, leaves
 kořen, m. *korshěn*, root
 kořínek, m. *korsheenek*, little root
 bobule, f. *bobůlě*, bulb
 kůra, f. *koora*, bark, peel
 šťáva, f. *šťává*, juice
 bylina, f. *billinā*, herb
 lékařská bylina, *lékarshská b.*, me-
 dicinal herb;
 odvar, m. decoction
 nálev, m. *nálef* } infusion
 výmök, m. *veemok* }

Aloe, n. *áloš*, aloes
 anjelika, f. *ányelličá*, angelica
 anýz, m. *áneez*, anise
 arabská guma, f. gum arabic
 arnika, prha, f. arnica

Baldrian (odolen, kozlík), m. water-
 avens;
 balšám, balzám, m. *bálshám*, *bál-
 zám*, balsam
 bavlna, f. *bávlnā*, cotton

roztok, m. *rostök*, solution
 dávidlo, n. emetic
 počist'ovadlo, n. *pochist'ovádlō*, pur-
 gative
 lehký, á, é *lěhkee*, light soft, easy
 prudký, á, é *průdkee*, drastic
 projímavý, á, é *proyeemávee*, laxative
 sílicí, *seelitsee*, tonic
 silivka, f. *silífká*, a tonic
 pro spaní, *pro spāñi*, soporific
 narkotický, *narkotitskee* } narcotic
 omamující, *omāmūyeetsee* }
 močohnavý, *mochōhnāvee*, diuretic
 pijavka, f. *piyāfkā*, a leech
 pijavky, pl. *piyāfky*, leeches
 baňka, f. cupping-glass
 příjemný, á, é *prshee-yemnee*, agree-
 able, pleasant;
 odporný, á, é *odpornee* } nauseating
 ošklivý, á, é *ošklivee* }
 ošklivost, f. *ošklivost*, nausea
 kyselina, *kissellinā*, acid
 kysličník, *kisslichñeek*, oxide
 síran, m. *seerān*, sulphate.

bedrník, m. *bedrñík*, pimpernel
 bezový květ, m. *bězovee kvyět*, elder
 flowers;
 běloba, f. *byělobā*, white lead;
 bílkovina, f. *beelkōvinā*, albumen
 blín, m. *bleen*, henbane
 bobko-třešně, f. cherry-laurel
 bolehlav, m. *bolěhlāv*, hemlock
 boží tráva (řecké seno), fenugreek
 seed

brambořík (svinský chleba, svinský ořech), sow-bread;

broskvové listí, n. peach-leaves;

brutnák oboecný, m. borage

bříza, f. *brsheezá*, birch, (*betula alba*);

Celík, m. *tsellik*, golden-rød

cesmina (lesní kopřiva), f. holly

cink, m. *tsink*, zink

citron, m. *tsitron*, lemon

citronová kůra, f. lemon juice

cukr, m. *tsúk^er*, sugar

cukr hrůznový, glucose

cukr mléčný, *ts. mléchnee*, sugar of milk;

cukr olověný, *ts. olovyěnee*, sugar of lead.

Dávičný kámen, m. *dávichnee kámen*, tartar emetic;

dehet, m. *děhět*, tar

divizna, f. *ďivizná*, mullein

dobrá mysl, f. see *marjánka*;

dračí krev, f. *drächee hrěf*, dragon's blood;

draslík, m. (*kalium*, n), *drässleek*, potassium

draslo, n. see *salajka*;

dřevo myší, n. *drshěvō mishee*, bitter sweet

dřevo sladké, liquorice

dřín, m. *drsheen*, dogwood

dřístal, m. barberry

drnavec, m. *d^ernävets*, wall-pellitory

droždí, see *kvasnice*;

dubinky, pl. nutgall, galls;

durman, m (panenské jablko pichlavé), stramonium seed;

dusík, m. *düssseek*, nitrogen

dusičnan olovnatý, nitrate of lead.

Ether, m. *éter*, ether

euforbium, *eüforbiüm*, euforbia.

Fenikl, m. fennel

fialka, f. *fiälkä*, violet

fik, m. *feek*, fig

fosfor, m. phosphorus.

Gdoulové semeno, n. quince seed;

granátové jablko, n. pomegranate

guma arabská, f. gum arabic

“ elastická, f. gum elastic

Heřmáněk, m. *heršmáněk*, chamomile

hořčice, f. *horchitsě*, mustard

hořec, m. *horshets*, gentian

houba, f. *houbä*, sponge

houby, pl. mushrooms,

hřebíček, m. *rshěbeeček*, cloves

hulevník, m. hedge-mustard

Chinin, m. *khinin*, quinine

china, f. } cinchona, Pe-

chinník pravý, m. } ruvian bark;

chlорové vápno, n. *khlorové vápnō*,

chloride of lime;

ehmel, m. *khmell*, hops.

Ibiš (proskurník), m. *ibish*, marsh-mellow

Jałovec, m. *yällovets*, juniper

jaterník, m. *yäternik*, liverwort

jed, *yěd*,
 utrejch, *ütreykh* } poison
 jelení roh, *yelleñee rōh*, hartshorn
 “ lāj, *y. looy*, hart's tallow
 jeřáb, *m. yersháb*, mountain ash;
 jetelice, *f. (janovec, m.)* broom tops
 jód, *m. yód*, iodine.

Kafr, *m. káf'ir*, camphor
 kalamín, *m* calamine
 kalanka, *f.* pinkroot
 kameneč, *m. kámeněts*, alum
 kampaška, *f. kámpeshká*, logwood
 kastoreum, *n.* castor
 kaštan, *m. káštán*, horse-chestnut;
 kaučuk, *m.* India rubber;
 klejt, (*kysličník olovnatý*) *m. kleyt*,
 oxide of lead;
 klejicha bulvatá, butterfly-weed
 kmín, *m. kmeen*, caraway seed;
 kmín vodní, *k. vcdñee*, water-hem-
 lock (fine-leaved);
 konítrud, *m.* hedge-hyssop
 konopí, *n. kōnopee*, hemp
 konopí indické, *k. inditské*, Indian
 hemp;
 konopný extract, *m.* extract of hemp
 kopytník tupolistý, *m.* asarum Eu-
 ropaeum;
 kopr, *m. kop'ir*, dill
 kořalka, *f.* see pálenka;
 korek, *m.* cork
 kořen hadí, *m. korshěn hād'ee*, bistort
 “ maliny, blackberry root;
 “ omanu, elicampane
 “ omějový, aconite root;

kosatec, *m. kossätets*, blue flag, iris
 versicolor;
 kozinec, *m. kozinets*, tragacanth
 kozlík odolén, *m.* valerian
 kožokvět, *m.* queen's root;
 křen, *m. krshěn*, horse-radish
 krevnice, *f. krěvñitsě*, bloodroot
 křída, *f. krsheedä*, chalk
 kroupy, *pl. kroūpy*, pearl barley;
 krtičník, *m. k'rtičñeek*, figwort
 krušinka, *krūshínká*, dyer's weed,
 genista;
 krušiček, (*pampalík*), *m.* marigold
 kůra dubová, *f. koorä dübdová*, black-
 oak bark;
 “ divoké třešně, wild cherry bark
 “ vrbová, *k. v'rbová*, willow bark;
 “ jilmová, *k. yilmová*, elm bark;
 “ červenějilmy, slipperyelm bark
 kvasnice, *pl. kvāssñitsě*, yeast
 květ, *m. kwyět*, flowers
 květel, *f. kwyětell*, common toad flax
 kyprej, *m. kíprey*, loosestrife
 kyslík, *m. kissleek*, oxygen
 kyselina, *f. kisselinä*, acid
 “ citronová, citric acid
 “ karbolová, carbolic acid;
 “ sanytrová, nitric acid;
 “ solná, muriatic acid;
 “ vínová, tartaric acid.

Lep na ptáky, *m.* bird-lime
 lentyšek, *m.* mastic
 levandule, *f.* lavender
 líh, *m. leeh*, alcohol
 lílek červený, see dřevo myší;
 limonka, *f.* marsh rosemary;

listi bobkové, n. laurel leaves;
 lomihnat, m. common groundsel;
 lopuch, (hořký kořen) m. burdock
 lůj, m. looy, tallow;
 " jelení, hart's tallow;
 " skopový, mutton suet
 lžičník, m. *lžičník*, common scurvy-grass;
 lék proti hlistám, vermifuge.

Mák, m. poppy-seed
 mandle hořké, pl. *mändlě horšké*, bitter almonds;
 " sladké, sweet almonds;
 mařena, f. *mārshěná*, madder
 marjánka, f. *māryánkā*, common marjoram;
 máta, (marulka) f. catnip
 máta peprná, f. peppermint
 máta kadeřavá, pennyroyal
 med, m. honey
 měď, f. *myěď*, copper
 medokvět, m. *měďkwoyět*, marsh trefoil, buckbean;
 medvědice obecná, *medvyěďitsě obětsná*, bearberry leaves;
 mejlí, n. (míšpule, f.) *meylee*, mistletoe
 melasa, f. molasses
 mléko, n. milk
 mlékový punč, milk-punch toddy;
 morušová šťáva, mulberry juice;
 mouka bílá, f- *moškā beelā*, wheat flour;
 " černá, m. *chernā*, rye flour;
 " ovesná, m. *ověsnā*, oatmeal;

mrkev, f. *m^erkef*, carrot seed;
 mýdlo, n. *meedlě*, soap
 " mazavé, soft soap
 " amygdalinové, amygdaline soap;
 " mandlové, almond oil soap;
 myrha, f. myrrh

Naháč, m. see ocún;
 námel, m. ergot
 náprstník červený, m. foxglove
 narcis kadeřavý, m. daffodil
 nátržník, m. tormentil
 netík, m. see ženský vlas;
 netýkalka, f. touch-me-not
 nové koření, n. *nově koršěňi*, allspice;
 nickamínek, see skalice;
 natrium, see sodík.

Ocet, m. *otset*, vinegar
 ocún, m. *otsoon*, colchicum seed;
 odolen, m. valerian
 olej, m. *šley*, oil
 " bavlněný, cotton-seed oil
 " z bergamotek; oil of bergamot
 " citronový, lemon oil
 " dymianový, oil of thyme, oil of origanum;
 " hořčičný, oil of mustard
 " heřmánkový, chamomile oil
 " jantarový, oil of amber
 " kafrový, camphor oil
 " kokosový, cocoa-nut oil
 " koprový, oil of dill
 " krotonový, croton oil
 " lněný, flaxseed oil

olej mandlový, almond oil
 “ olivový, }
 “ dřevěný } olive oil
 “ brabancový }
 “ ricinový, castor oil
 “ růžový, oil of roses
 “ sesamový, benne oil
 “ skořicový, cinnamon oil
 “ terpentínový, oil of turpentine
 “ z volské nohy, neats-foot oil
 olovo, n. *oldvø*, lead
 ořech, m. *orshèkh*, nut
 “ muškátový, nutmeg
 orlíček, m. *orleček*, columbine
 osládič, m. *oslád'ich*, male fern
 ožanka, f. (*gamandr*), germander.

Pálenka obyčejná, f. whiskey

“ vinná (*francouzská*), brandy
 pampeliška (*smetanka*), f. dandelion
 paprika, f. red pepper, cayenne p.
 pekelný kámen, m. lapis infernalis;

pelynek, m. wormwood
 peltrám, m. pellitory
 pepř, m. *pěprsh*, black pepper
 petružel, f. parsley-root
 pijavky, pl. f. *piyáfký*, leeches
 pížmo, n. *peežmø*, musk
 plavuň, f. lycopodium
 plieník, m. *plitsník*, Iceland moss;
 ploštičník, m. black snakeroot, cicmicifuga;
 pomoranč, m. *pomoranč*, orange
 pomorančový květ, orange flowers;
 pomorančová kůra, orange peel;

popel z kostí, m. *popell skost'i*, bone ash;
 posed, m. white bryony
 potaš (*draslo*), see *salajka*;
 potměchuť, f. }
 psí víno červené, n. } bittersweet
 protěž, f. cudweed, life-everlasting;
 pryskyřice, f. *pryskyřhītsě*, resin, rosin;
 pryskyrky, see *španělské mouchy*;
 psí rmen, m. mayweed
 pukavec (*vlčí mák*), m. *pūkávets*, red-poppy petals;
 puškvorec, m. *pūshkworets*, sweet flag;

Rauta, f. *rāūtā*, rue

rebarbora, f. *rebarbøřā*, rhubarb

rozinky, pl. f. raisins

rozmarna, f. rosemary

rozrazil, m. speedwell

rtuť, f. *rtūt'*, mercury

rulík zlomocný, m. deadly nightshade, belladonna root;

rum myrtový, m. bay-rum

rumělka, f. cinnabar

růže stolistá, f. hundred-leaved rose.

Sadec, m. *sādets*, eupatorium, thoroughwort;

sádlo, n. lard

salajka, f. *sālājkā*, potash

salmiak, m. sal amoniac

sanytr, m. *sānyt^{er}*, saltpeter

semeno lněné, n. flaxseed, linseed;

“ tykvové, pumpkin seed;

semínko citvárové, European worm-seed;
 senes, m. purging cassia;
 senesové listí, n. senna leaves
 seno řecké, n. *senē rshētské*, fenu-greek;
 sesamové listí, n. benne leaf
 síra, f. *seerā*, sulphur, brimstone;
 síran, f. *seerān*, sulphate
 síran draselnatý, sulphate of potash
 síran měďnatý, sulphate of copper;
 sirob, m. sirup
 skalice bílá, f. *skāllitsē beelā*, white vitriol;
 skila, f. squile
 skořice, f. *skorshitsē*, cinnamon
 “ bílá, canella
 sladká vrbka, f. bittersweet
 slíz, m. *sleez*, common mallow
 smola, f. pitch
 sodík, m. (natrium), n. sodium
 soda suchá, f. (suchý nátron, ky-sličník sodnatý, dry soda, protoxide of sodium;
 soda žíravá, (nátron žíravý, hydrát sodnatý), caustic soda, hydrate of soda;
 sporýš, m. see železník;
 starček, m. see lomihnatý;
 sůl kuchynská, f. *sool k.*, common salt;
 “ hořká, (Glauberova), Glauber's salt, Epsom salt;
 “ morská, bay salt;
 “ křišťálová, nitrate salt;
 suřík, m. red oxide of lead;
 sylačec, m. *solāchets*, scammony.

Šafrán, m. *shāfrán*, saffron
 šalvěj, m. *shālvoyēy*, sage
 šípek, m. *sheepék*, dog-rose, hip;
 šišák, m. *shishák*, scullcap
 škrob, m. *shkrob*, starch
 škrobovina americká, f. arrow-root
 škumpa jedovatá, f. poison-oak
 španělské mouchy, pl. f. Spanish flies, 'cantharides;
 špargl, m. *shpargl*, asparagus
 šťovík, m. *sh'ovik*, sorrel
 švestky, pl. f. *shvēstky*, prunes
 Tabák, m. *tābák*, tobacco
 tavola, f. hardhack
 terpentýn, m. *terpenteen*, turpentine
 tinktura arniková, f. tincture of arnica;
 tis, m. common European yew tree;
 tojest, f. dog's-bane
 tolije, f. *tolliyē*, *parnassia palustris*;
 tomel virginský, persimmon
 trán jaterní, m. cod-liver oil;
 trnka, f. *t'rnkā*, wild plumtree;
 trojpecka, f. *troypetskā*, fever root
 třemdava, f. *dictamnus*, bastard dittany;
 třezalka, f. St. John's wort;
 tuk velrybí, m. spermaceti
 turan, m. fleabane, erigeron.
 Uhel dřevěný, m. charcoal
 uhel zvířecí, animal charcoal; bone-black;
 uhlik, m. *ūhleek*, carbon
 uhličitán hořečnatý, m. carbonate of magnesia;

uhličitan sodnatý, carbonate of soda
užanka, f. hound's tongue.

Vanilka, f. vanilla

vápno, n. lime; quicklime;

vápno chlorové, chloride of lime;

vápno karbolové, carbolate of lime;

vavřín, m. laurel tree;

vejce, n. *veŷtsě*, egg

bílek, m. *beelek*, the white

žloutek, m. *žloŷtek*, the yelk

vinný kámen, m. cream of tartar;

víno bílé, n. *veeň beelé*, white wine

“červené, v. *chervěné*, red wine,

virginská hadovka, f. Virginia
snakeroot

vítod, m. *veetod*, bitter polygala;

vlašťovičník, m. *vlášťowichňik*, ce-
landine

voda čistá, f. *vdď chisťá*, pure water

voda minerální, mineral water

koupel, f. *koŷpell* } bath
lázeň, f. *lázeň* }

vodička, f. *voďichká*, wash, lotion;

vodička na oči, v. *ňá ochi*, eye-wash

vosk bílý, m. white wax

vosk žlutý, yellow wax

vraní oko, n. *vrãnee okô*, paris quad
rifolia;

vrátič, m. *vrátich*, tansy

výstřelek, m. *veestrshellek*, spirit

“pižmový, spirit of musk;

“terpentinový, spirit of
turpentine;

vyzí klí, n. *vizee klee*, isinglass.

Zázvor, m. ginger

zázvor divoký, wild ginger

zeměžluč, f. *zemyžžlŷch*, common
centaury;

zerav, m. *zerãf*, arbor vitae;

zimostráz, m. box plant;

zmíjovec, m. *zmeeyôvets*, skunk cab-
bage;

žábňík, m. *žãbňik*, water-plantain

žebřiček, m. *žebrsheeček*, yarrow

železnice lysá, s. snake-head, turtle-
head;

železník, m. *železňik*, vervain

ženský vlas, m. maidenhair

žluč volská, f. *žlŷch volská*, ox-gall

žlutidlo, n. turmeric

žlutodřev, m. prickly-ash.

At home.

DOMA.

I like domestic com-
fort.

We have a comfortable
home on tenth street.

We have a hall, five
rooms and a kitchen

Miluju domácí poho-
dlí.

Máme pohodlný domov
na desáté ulici.

Máme siň, pět pokojů
a kuchyň dole, a

*millŷyŷ domãtsee po-
hodlee.*

*mãmě pohod^elnee dš-
mof ñã desáté ŷlitsi.*

*mãmě seeň, pyět pokô-
yoo ã kŷkhiň dšlě,*

down stairs, and four bedrooms upstairs.

The stairs have a railing.

We have new furniture,—tables, chairs, sofas and beds.

The writing-desk and library stand in the front room.

The windows have both shutters and curtains.

On the walls there are pictures in frames.

Our clothes press is very handy.

The fuel we keep down cellar. — Hard and soft water is in the house.

We have a good stove and the chimney does not smoke.

It is time to eat — The meal is ready.

The table is spread; — everything is on the table: dishes, plates, forks, knives.

Come and eat; — sit down by the table.

Hand (thou) me that chair. — Hand (you) me the soup; I shall deal it out.

čtyry ložnice nahore.

Schody mají zábradlí.

Máme nový nábytek,— stoly, židle, pohovky a postele.

Psací stůl a knihovna stojí v přední světnici.

Okna mají okenice i záslony.

Na stěnách jsou obrazy v rámech.

Naše šatnice je tuze příručná.

Palivo máme ve sklepě. — Tvrdá i měkká voda je v domě.

Máme dobré kamna a komín nekouří.

Je čas k jídlu. — Jídlo je hotovo.

Je prostřeno; — všecko je na stole: mísy, talíře, vidličky, nože.

Pojďte jísti; — sedněte ke stolu.

Poděj mi tu sesli. — Podejte mi polívku; já rozdám.

ã shtiri ložnitsë nahorshë,

skhody mäyee zábradlee.

mámë novëe nábytek, — stolly, židlë, pohovky ä postellë.

psätsee stool ä knihovná stoyee f p r s h ë ä ñ ee scyëtñitsi.

oknä mäyee okëñitse e. záslony.

nã stënákh soň obräzy vrámekh.

nãshë shätñitsë yë toozë prsheerüchnã.

pälvöð mámë vë sklepyë. — tv^erdã e myëkkã vodã yë vdömyë.

mámë dobrëe kãmnã a komeen ñëkoürshee.

yë chãss k-yeedlÛ. — yeedlÛ yë hotövd.

yë prostrshëñd. — fshëtsko yë nã stolë: meesy, täleershë, vidlichky, nože.

pod'të yeest; — sedñetë kë stollÛ.

podëy me tÛ sessli. podëytë me poleefkÛ; yã rözdám.

Is it not salt enough? — Here is the salt; take some more salt.	Není dost slaná?— Zde je sůl; přisolte si.	<i>neyñi dost sláná?— zdě yě sool; prshisolltē si.</i>
The meat is cut; — I shall cut up the roast into pieces.	Maso je nakrájeno; — rozdělím pečení na porce.	<i>mässö yě năkrájěñď;— rozďelcem pēcheñi nă portsě.</i>
Help yourself; — here is roast goose,—here is fried chicken.	Poslužte si; — zde je pečená husa, — zde smažené kuře.	<i>poslušťtē si; — zdě yě pēchěná hüssă, — zdě smăžěné kărshě.</i>
Take a piece of bread.	Vemte si kousek chle- ba.	<i>vemťe si koušek khlěbă.</i>
Do you eat pastry? — Sometimes.	Jíte pečivo? — Někdy.	<i>yeeťe pēchivo? ñegdy.</i>
Do you want a cup of coffee? — or a cup of tea?	Checte šálek kávy? — anebo šálek čaje?	<i>khtsěťtē shálek kávy? — ănebď shálek chăyě?</i>
Is the coffee sweet e- nough?—Here is su- gar.	Je káva dost sladká?— Zde je cukr.	<i>yě kăvď dost slădká? — zdě yě tsŭk^{er}.</i>
After a meal a cigar tastes well.	Po jídle chuťná dout- ník.	<i>pď yeedľe khŭťná doŭť- ñík.</i>
Will you smoke?—Here are cigars; light one;	Budete kouřiti? — Tu jsou cigara; zapalte si.	<i>bŭďďtē kourřitĭ? — tŭ soŭ tsigară; zăpăľťtē si.</i>
Hand me the matches. — There in the cor- ner is a spittoon.	Podejte mi sirky. — Tam v koutě je pli- vátko.	<i>poděyťe me seerky. — tăm fkoŭťe yě pli- vătĕkď.</i>
It is growing dark. — It is dark. — Make a light.	Stmívá se.—Je tma.— Udělejte světlo.	<i>stmeevă sě.— yě tmă. — ŭďelěyťe swěťlo.</i>
Here is a candle-stick and a candle.—Light the lamp; —light the gas.	Zde je svícen a svíčka. — Rozžete lampu; - rozžete plyn.	<i>zdě yě sweetsěn ä sweech- kă. — rozžetē lâmpŭ; — rozžetē plyn.</i>

It is growing chilly, isn't it? — Make a fire.

There is a fire already in the stove.

It is late; — let us go to sleep.

It is time to go to bed. Is the bed made?—The beds are made for all.

I shall lie down on the sofa. — Do as you please.

Undress; — take off your clothes; — pull off your boots; here is the boot-jack.

Sleep well. — Good night!

It is time to get up. — Our folks are up.

Wencel is still sleeping; — wake him up; or he will oversleep.

How did you sleep? — I slept well.

Didn't that noise wake you up? — I slept fast; nothing disturbed me.

I had a bad night; — I could not fall asleep very long; — I only fell asleep towards morning.

Dělá se chladno, je-li pravda? — Zatopte.

Už je oheň v kamnech.

Je pozdě; — pojďme spat.

Je čas jít do postele.

Je ustláno? — Je ustláno pro všechny.

Já si lehnu na sofa. — Jak chcete.

Odstrojte se; — svléknete se; — zujte se, — tu je zouvák.

Spěte dobře. — Dobrou noc!

Jě čas vstáti. — Naši jsou zůru.

Václav posud spí; — zbud'te ho, sice zaspi.

Jak jste spal? — Spal jsem dobře.

Nebudil vás ten hluk? — Spal jsem tvrdě; — nic mě nebudilo.

Já měl zlou noc; — nemohl jsem usnouti dlouho; — usnul jsem teprvé k ránu.

d'ělá se khládno, yelli právdá? — zátoptě.

úsh yě ohěň fkámněkh.

yě pozd'e; — pod'me spát.

yě chäss yeet dō postellě.

yě ústláno? — yě ústláno pro fshěkhny

yá si lehnū ná sofá. — yák khtsětě.

odstroytě sě; — svlékněte sě; — zūytě sě; — tū yě zoūvák.

spytě dōbrshě. — dōbroū nots.

yě chäss fstát. — nāshi soū zhoorū.

vátslāv posud spee; — zbūd'tě ho, sitsě zāspee.

yák stě spāl? — spāl sem dōbrshě.

něbūd'il vāss ten hlūk? — spāl sem tv^erd'e; nīts myě něbūd'ilo.

yá myěll zloū nots; — nēmoh^el sem úsnoūt dloūhō; — úsnūl sem tep^ervé kránū.

Henry says he never shut his eyes (i. e. had no sleep at all).	Jindřich povídá že ani oka nezamhouřil.	yindrshikh poveedá že ǎni oka něžamoř- rshil.
--	--	---

VOCABULARY.

Sín, f. <i>secn</i> , the hall schody, pl. m. <i>skhody</i> , the stairs zábradlí, n. the railing stěna, f. <i>stěň</i> , the wall šatnice, f. <i>šătñitsě</i> , the clothes press; kumbál, m. <i>kũmbál</i> , the closet kout, m. <i>koũt</i> , the corner okenice, f. <i>okěñitsě</i> , the blind zásлона, f. <i>záslonă</i> , the curtain domáci, <i>dõmátsee</i> , domestic nábytek, m. the furniture stoly, m. <i>stõly</i> } tables tabule, f. <i>tăbũlě</i> } psací stůl, <i>psătsee stool</i> , the writing- desk židle, f. <i>židlě</i> } the chair or chairs; sesle, f. <i>sesslě</i> }	pohovka, f. <i>põhofkă</i> } sofa, n. <i>sofă</i> } the lounge obraz, m. <i>obrăz</i> , the picture rám, m. the frame Palivo, n. <i>păllivõ</i> , the fuel kamna, pl. <i>kămnă</i> , the stove komín, m. <i>komeen</i> , the chimney kouřiti, <i>koũrshit</i> , to smoke oheň, m. <i>õheň</i> , the fire; svícen, m. <i>swecetsen</i> , the candlestick svička, f. <i>sweechkă</i> , the candle plyn, m. the gas rozžítí, <i>rožcet</i> , to make a light; zapáliti, <i>zăpălit</i> , to light sirka, f. <i>sĩrkă</i> , a match cigaro, n. <i>tsigăro</i> } doutník, m. <i>doũtñik</i> } a cigar plivátko, n. <i>plivătko</i> } plivník, m. <i>plivñik</i> } spittoon.
--	--

Prostřítí, <i>prostrsheet</i> , to set the table; mísa, f. <i>meesă</i> , the dish talír, m. <i>tăleersh</i> , the plate šálek, m. <i>shălek</i> , the cup sůl, <i>sool</i> , the salt slaný, á, é <i>slănee</i> , salt, salt-d; přisoliti, <i>prshĩ-solit</i> , to put in some more salt; sladký, á, é <i>slădkee</i> , sweet	nakrájeti, <i>năkrăyet</i> , to cut in pieces; rozdělití, <i>rozďelít</i> , to divide rozdati, <i>rozďăt</i> , to deal out; pečivo, n. <i>pěchivo</i> , the pastry pečený, á, é <i>pěchenee</i> , roasted smažený, á, é <i>smăženee</i> , fried husa, f. <i>hũssă</i> , goose. kuře, n. <i>kũrshě</i> , chicken.
--	---

<p>Stmívati se, <i>stmeevät sě</i>, to grow dark;</p> <p>odstrojiti se, <i>odstroyit sě</i>, to undress</p> <p>zouti se, <i>zđút sě</i>, to pull off one's boots;</p> <p>zouvák, m. <i>zoŭvák</i>, the boot-jack</p> <p>ustlati, <i>ústlat</i>, to make the bed;</p> <p>uśnouti, <i>úśnoút</i>, to fall asleep;</p> <p>zaspati, <i>zúspăt</i>, to oversleep</p> <p>buditi, <i>bŭďit</i>, to wake, to disturb;</p>	<p>zbuditi, <i>zbŭďit</i>, to wake up, to call;</p> <p>vstáti, <i>fstát</i>, to get up;</p> <p>zhŭru, <i>zhoorŭ</i>, up;</p> <p>nahore, <i>nāhorshě</i>, up stairs;</p> <p>dole, <i>dělə</i>, down stairs;</p> <p>tvrdě, <i>tv^{rdě}</i> } fast</p> <p>pevně, <i>pev^{ně}</i> }</p> <p>hluk, m. <i>hlŭk</i>, noise</p> <p>je-li pravda? <i>yelh pravďa?</i> isn't it so?</p>
---	---

Buying and selling.

KOUPEĚ a PRODEJ.

<p>How much is this? —</p> <p>What is the price of it? — How much does it cost?</p> <p>What do you sell it for?</p> <p>What do you want for it? — What do you ask for it? — How much shall I give you for it?</p> <p>What is the price?</p> <p>A dollar and ten cents. — A dollar and a quarter.</p> <p>Two dollars and a half. — Two and a half dollars.</p> <p>Five dollars sixty cents</p> <p>It costs a little over six dollars.</p> <p>Is it worth that much?</p>	<p>Zač je to? — Co to stojí? — Co to kořtuje?</p> <p>Po čem to prodáváte?</p> <p>Co za to chcete? — Co za to žádáte? — Co vám za to dám?</p> <p>Jaká je cena?</p> <p>Dollar deset centů. — Dollar a čtvrt.</p> <p>Dva dollary a půl. — Půl třetího dolaru.</p> <p>Pět dolarů šedesát centů.</p> <p>Stojí to něco přes šest dolarů.</p> <p>Stojí to za to?</p>	<p><i>zách yě tď? — tsď tď stoyee? — tsď tď kosh-tŭyě?</i></p> <p><i>pď chem tď prodáváte? tsď eď tď khtsětě? — tsď ză tď žádátě? — tsď văm ză tď dăm?</i></p> <p><i>yăká yě tsenă?</i></p> <p><i>dollăr desset sentoo. — dollăr a shtv^{rt}.</i></p> <p><i>dwă dollăry ă pool. — pool trshěveehď dollărŭ.</i></p> <p><i>pyět dollăroo shědessăt sentoo.</i></p> <p><i>stoyee tď nĕtsď prshěs shest dollăroo.</i></p> <p><i>stoyee tď ză tď?</i></p>
--	--	--

I think it is; — why should it not be?	Myslím že stojí;—proč by nestálo?	<i>misleem že stojee; — proch be nestálô?</i>
It seems to me too much.— I think it is dear.	Mně se to zdá moc. — Myslím že je to drahé.	<i>myě sě tō zdá mots. — misleem že yě tō dráhé.</i>
—————		
That is too much. — That is too dear.— I won't give so much.	To je moc. — To je drahé. — Tolik nedám.	<i>tō yě mots. — tō yě dráhé. — tōlik nēdám.</i>
That is too much;—will you take off something?	To je tuze mnoho; — slevíte něco?	<i>tō yě toozě mnohō; — slēveteě ňetsō?</i>
You must take off something.	Něco musíte sleviti.	<i>ňetsō mūseeteě slevit.</i>
I shall not take off anything.—I cannot take off anything.	Ň. slevím nic. — Nemohu sleviti nic.	<i>něslēveem ňits. — němōhū slevit ňits.</i>
We have a fixed price. — We sell at a fixed price.	Máme pevnou cenu. — Prodáváme za pevnou cenu.	<i>mámě pevnoū tsenū. — prodávámě zā pevnoū tsenū.</i>
It is cheap. — It is low priced.	Je to laciné. — Je to levné.	<i>yě tō lātsiné. — yě tō levné.</i>
I shall get it cheaper elsewhere.	Dostanu to levněji jinde.	<i>dostānū tō levŋey yindě.</i>
You will not get it cheaper anywhere.	Nedostanete to levněji nikde.	<i>nedōstānetě tō levŋey ňigdě.</i>
I will try it. — I don't want to haggle — I don't like to haggle over the price.	Zkusím to. — Nechci smlouvatí. — Nerad smlouvám.	<i>skūseem tō — nēkhtsi smloūvāt. — nerād smloūvām.</i>
That is the lowest price; — it cannot be any cheaper.	To je nejnižší cena; — nemůže býti lacinější.	<i>tō yě neyŋishee tsenā; — němoože beet lātsi-ŋeyshee.</i>

What do you wish? —
What is your pleasure?

What can I do for you?
Have you satchels for sale?—I want to buy a satchel.

I would like to get a nice traveling bag.

We have a stock of them. — We have a large choice.

Show me some. — I wish to see them.

This is the best kind we have. — They are good.

This one is nice — This will suit you.

How much is it? — What is the price?

Four dollars and a half. — That is the regular price.

That is a little too much. — don't you think so?

I do not think so.

I will give four dollars for it. — Will you sell it for that?

I cannot. — I cannot take off anything.

The price is fixed.

Then I will not buy it. — Do as you please;

Co si přejete? — Co račte?

Čím mohu sloužiti?
Máte tašky na prodej?
— Čei koupit tašku.

Rád bych nějakou pěknou kabelu.

Máme je na skladě. —
Máme velký výběr.

Ukažte mi některé. —
Podívám se na ně.

Tohle je nejlepší druh co máme. Ty jsou dobré.

Tahle je pěkná. — Ta se vám hodí.

Zač je? — Co stojí?

Čtyry dollary a půl. —
To je pravidelná cena.

To je trochu moc; —
nemyslíte?

Nemyslím.

Dám za ni čtyry dollary. — Dáte ji za to?

Nemohu. — Nemohu nic sleviti.

Cena je pevná.

Teda ji nekoupím. —
Jak vám libo. — Ne-

tsò si prshëyetè? — tsò račte?

*cheem mohù sloužit?
mátè táshky ná prodej?
— khtsi koupit táshky.*

rád bikh nâkoù pyëknouù kâbellù.

*mámè yè ná sklādè. —
mámè velkee veebyër.*

*ùkâshè me nêkteré. —
pôdvám sè ná nê*

tòhlè yè neylepshee drùh tsò mámě. — ty sòù dðbré.

tâhlè yè pyëkná. — tâ sè vâm hoðee.

zâch yè? — tsò stoyee?

*shtiry dollàry à pool. —
tò yè prâvidelná tsèná.*

*tò yè trokhù mots; —
nèmisleetè?*

nèmisleem.

dám zâ nî shtiry dollàry — dátè ye zâ tò?

nemohù. — nemohù nîts slèviti.

tsèná yè pèvná.

*tèdâ ye nèkoùpeem. —
yâk vâm leebð. — ney-*

—it is not dear at that price.	ní drahá za tu cenu.	ñi dráhá zā tū tsenū.
You will not get it elsewhere. — They have not got them elsewhere.	Jinde ji nedostanete. — Jinde je nemají.	<i>yindě ye nēdostānētě. — yindě yě nemāyee.</i>
They are not to be had elsewhere. — Only I alone have them for sale.	Nejsou jinde k dostání. — Jenom já je mám na prodej.	<i>neysou yindě gdstáñi. — yenom yá yě mám nā prodej.</i>
They have not got these goods on hand any where.	Nemají to zboží na skladě nikde.	<i>nemāyee tō zbožee nā sklādě ñigdě.</i>
I keep honest goods on hand.	Já držím poctivé zboží.	<i>yá d^e rž, em potstivé zbožee.</i>
Small profits, quick sales — that is my motto.	Malý zisk, rychlý prodej, — to je mé heslo.	<i>mālee zisk, rykhlee prodej, — tō yě mé hesslo.</i>
Small but frequent profits.	Malý výdělek, ale častý.	<i>mālee veed'elek ālē chāss-tee.</i>
Have you some pocket-books?	Máte nějaké toboleky?	<i>mátě ñáké tōbolky?</i>
We have a large stock. — What kind do you wish, — expensive? — cheap?	Máme velkou zásobu. — Jaké chcete, — drahé? — laciné?	<i>mámě velkou zásobū. — yáké khtsētě, — dráhé? — látsiné?</i>
What is the price of these? — How much are they? — How do you sell them?	Zač jsou tyhle? — Po čem jsou? — Po čem je prodáváte?	<i>zāch sou tyhlě? — pō chem sou? — pō chem yě prodávātě?</i>
A dollar a piece. — They are good and lasting.	Po dollaru kus. — Jsou dobré a trvanlivé.	<i>pō dollārū küss. — sou dobré ā t^ervānlivé.</i>
Those are dearer; a dollar and a half.	Tam ty jsou dražší; po dollaru a půl.	<i>tām ty sou drāshee; pō dollārū ā pool.</i>

They are somewhat better.

I will take one;—wrap it up for me;

Here is the money; give me back.

There is fifty cents coming to you.—Here is half a dollar back.

I should like to buy a few tons of coal; but I have no money.

I will take it on credit; — will you trust me?

I do not trust anybody; —I sell only for cash.

I give no credit. — I want cash.

I want to have no bad debts.

I need money. — I am raking up money to buy goods;—I do not want to borrow.

For cash one buys cheap.

How is business?—So so;—tolerably good.

Have the goods a ready sale?—I have a good sale, but a small profit.

Jsou trochu lepší.

Vezmu si jednu;—zabalte mi ji.

Tu jsou peníze; dejte mi zpátky.

Přijde vám padesát centů.—Zde jest půl dolaru zpátky.

Rád bych koupil pár tun uhlí; ale nemám peníze.

Vezmu ho na dluh; — počkáte mi?

Nechekám žádnému; — prodávám jen za hotové.

Nedávám kredit.—Chci hotové.

Nechci mítí žádné špatné dluhy.

Potřebuju peníze. — Sháním peníze na zboží; nechci se dlužiti.

Za hotové koupí se lacino.

Jak jde obchod? — Tak tak; — projde to.

Jde zboží na odbyt? Mám dobrý odbyt, ale malý zisk.

soũ trokhũ lepshee.

vezmũ si jednũ; — zã bãltẽ me ye.

tũ soũ peñeezẽ; deytẽ me spãtky.

prsheedẽ vãm pãdessãt sentoo. — zãẽ yẽ pool dollãrũ spãtky.

rãd bikh koũpil pãr tũn ůhlee; ãlẽ nemãm peñeezẽ.

vezmũ hõ nã dlooh; — pochkãtẽ me?

nẽchekãm žãdnẽmũ; — prodãvãm yen zã hotõvẽ.

nẽdãvãm credit.—khtsi hotõvẽ.

nekhtsi meet žãdnẽ shpãtnẽ dloohy.

potrshẽbũyũ peñeezẽ. — shãñeem peñeezẽ nã zbožee; — nẽkhtsi sẽ dlũžit.

zã hotõvẽ koũpee sẽ lãtsi-nõ.

yãk dẽ obkhõd? — tãk tãk; — proydẽ tõ.

dẽ zbožee nã odbyt? — mãm dõbree odbyt, ãlẽ mãlee zisk.

I often sell at a loss. —
I have a loss on my
sales.

That is bad. — Have
you a large stock?

I have still many goods
on hand; — I expect
again fresh goods; —
they are on the way.

I was in New York to
make purchases.

Did you make a good
bargain? — I am satis-
fied.

Prodávám častose ško-
dou. — Mám na tom
ztrátu.

To je zlé. — Máte vel-
kou zásobu?

Mám ještě hodně zbo-
ží; — čekám zase
čerstvé zboží; — Je už
na cestě.

Byl jsem v New Yorku
nakupovat.

Koupil jste dobře? —
Jsem spokojen.

prodávám chässťó sě
skhodoŭ. — mám ná
tom strátŭ.

tó yě zlé. — máte velikoŭ
zásobŭ?

mám yeshťe hodňe zbo-
žee; — čekám zase
cherstvé zbožee; — yě
úsh ná tsešťe.

bill sem vnew-yorkŭ ná-
kupovát.

koŭpil stě dŭbrshě? —
sem spokojěŭ.

VOCABULARY.

Na skladě, ná skládě, on hand;

odbyt, m. sale (of goods);

zisk, m. profit

škoda, f. shkodă } loss
ztráta, f. strátă }

taška, f. táshkă } satchel,

kabela, f. kábellă } traveling bag;

tobolka, f. tŭbolkă, pocket book;

heslo, n. hěsslŭ, motto

pevný, á, é pevnee, fast, fixed;

trvati, t'rvát, to last

trvanlivý, á, é t'rvánlivee, lasting.

Stoji to, stoyee tŭ, it costs, it is worth;

koštuje, koshtŭyě, it costs

dostati, dostát, to get

dostanu, dostánŭ, I shall get;

dostanete, dŭstáněťe, you will get;
je k dostání, yě gdŭstánĭ, is to be
got; is to be had;

držeti, d'ržet, to keep

hoditi se, hodĭt sě, to suit; to fit;

sleviti, slěvit, to take off;

smlouvatĭ, smloŭvát, to haggle; to
bargain;

sloužiti, sloužĭt, to serve

dlužiti se, dlŭžĭt sě } to borrow
vydlužiti se, vydľužĭt sě }

počkati, pochkát, to wait, to trust;
nečekám, něčekám, I do not wait;

I do not trust;

nakupovati, nakŭpovát, to make
purchases;

zabaliti, zábalĭt, to wrap up.

In a grocery store.

U GROCERISTY.

I want some groceries
Please, command;— we
have fresh goods of
all kinds.

Give me a pound of
coffee, two pounds
of sugar and a pack-
age of chicory.

Anything else?

Five pounds of rice,
half a dozen of lem-
ons and some spices.

How do you sell eggs?
Twenty cents a dozen.

Give me two dozen of
eggs, three quarts of
kerosene and a pint
of sirup.

How do you sell kero-
sene by the gallon?

I will take a bottle of
mustard, a pound of
raisins, a pound and
a half of dried apples.

Besides, I want four
ounces of pepper.

Send me a sack of flour
and five pounds of
barley.

I want the best kind of
flour, — patent flour.

Chci nějaké grocerie.
Poroučejte; — máme
čerstvé zboží všeho
druhu.

Dejte mi libru kávy,
dvě libry cukru a
páklíček cikorie.

Ještě něco?

Pět liber rýže, půl tu-
ctu citronů a nějaké
koření.

Zač prodáváte vejce?

Dvacet centů tučet.

Dejte mi dva tuety va-
jec, tři kvarty pe-
troleje a pint siro-
bu.

Zač prodáváte petro-
lej na gallony?

Vezmu si láhev horčič-
ce, libru rozinek,
půldruhé libry kří-
žal.

Ještě chci čtyry unce
pepře.

Pošlete mi pytel mou-
ky a pět liber krup.

Chci nejlepší druh
mouky, — patentní
mouku.

*khtsi náké groceriě.
poroučeyte; — mámě
cherstve zbožee fshě-
hō drūhū.*

*deytě me librū kávy,
dvyě libry tsūkrū a
pākleechek tsikorīē.*

yeshťe netsō?

*pyět liber reyže, pool
tūtstū tsitrōnoo ā nā-
ké korshēnī.*

*zāch prodávātē veytsē?
dvyātsēt sentoo tūtset.*

*deytē me dvā tūtsty vā-
yets, trshī quārty pē-
trolejē ā pint siro-
bū.*

*zāch prodávātē petrolej
nā gāllony?*

*vezmū si láhev horchit-
sē, librū rōzīnek,
p o o l d r ů h ē l i b r y
krsheežāl.*

*yeshťe khtsi shiry ūn-
tsē pēprshē.*

*poshlētē mi pytel mouky
ā pyět liber krūp.*

*khtsi neylepshee drūh
mouky, — pātentnēe
moukū.*

A bushel of potatoes
and a peck of onions.
Give me five cents
worth of cinnamon,
five cents worth of
mace and ten cents
worth of ginger.

**Bušl bramborů a pek
cibule.**
**Dejte mi za pět centů
skořice, za pět cen-
tů květu a za deset
centů zázvoru.**

*būshel brāmboroo ā peck
tsibūlē.*
*deytě me zā pyět sentoo
skorshitsě, zā pyět
sentoo kvyětū ā zā
desset sentoo zázvorū.*

VOCABULARY.

Note. Many articles sold in groceries are to be found under the heading "Drugs and medicines".

Cukr kouskový, *tsūk^{er} koūskovee,*
crushed sugar;

“ **zrnkový,** *ts. z^{er}rnkovee,* granu-
lated sugar;

“ **utlučený,** *ts. ůtlūchence,* pul-
verized sugar;

“ **hnědý,** *ts. hñedee,* brown sug-
ar;

káva pražená, *kāvā prāženā,* roast-
ed coffee;

“ **mletá,** *k. mlētā,* ground coffee

koření, n. *korshēñi,* spice

nové koření, allspice

květ, m. *kvyět,* mace

dymián, m. thyme

šafrán, m. *shāfrān,* Spanish saffron

rozinky, pl. f. raisins

drobné rozinky, currants

křížaly, pl. f. *krshečžaly,* dried ap-
ples;

sušené švestky, pl. f. *sūshēné shvest-
ky,* prunes

cibule, f. *tsibūlē,* onions

česnek, m. *chessnek,* garlic

zázvor loupaný, bleached ginger-
root;

zázvor neloupaný, unbleached gin-
ger-root;

prášek na pečení, *prášek nā pē-
cheñi,* baking powder;

kvasnice, pl. *kwassñitsě* } yeast;

droždí, n. *drožďee* }

suché kvasnice, dry yeast;

lisované kv., compressed yeast;

salajka, f. *sālāykā,* saleratus

prací soda, f. *prātsee sodā,* washing
soda;

kornout, n. *kornout,* paper cornet;

paklík, m. *pākleek,* package

paklíček, m. *pākleechek,* small pack-
age;

balík, m. *bāleek,* bundle, parcel;

zabalíti, *zābāliti*

zapakovati; *zāpākōvāt* } to pack up

zavázati, *zāvāzāt,* to tie up;

svázati, *svāzāt,* to bind or tie to-
gether.

Garments.

ODĚV.

Dry goods have a ready sale.	Loketní zboží jde rychle na odbyt.	loket ⁿ ee zbožee dě rikhlě nã odbyt.
I intend to start a dry goods store.	Hodlám založiti střížní krám.	hodlám založit strshž- ⁿ ee krám.
My brother has a clothing store.	Můj bratr má oděvní krám.	mŭy brãt ^r má od ^e ee ⁿ ee krám.
He employs many tailors.	Zaměstnává mnoho krejčích.	zãm yěstnãvá mnohõ kreycheekh.
The tailor makes (liter. sews) clothes.	Krejčí šije šaty.	kreychee she-yě shãty.
Thread and needle, scissors and shears, a thimble, a sad-iron and a press-board are his tools.	Nit a jehla, nůžky a velké nůžky, náprstek, cihlička a kosa jsou jeho nástroje.	nít ã yěhlã, nooshky ã velké nooshky, nápr ^r -stek, tsihlichkã ã.kõzã soũ yěhõ nástroyě.
Nowadays much sewing is done on the machine.	Dnes mnoho šije se na stroji.	dness mnohõ she-yě sè nã stroyi.
The sewing machine is a useful invention.	Šicí stroj jest užitečný vynález.	shitsee stroy yest užitechnee vynález.
It is an American invention.	Jest to americký vynález.	yest tõ ãmeritskeee vynález.
I need a suit of clothes. — I want a new suit.	Potřebuju oblek. — Chci nový oblek.	potrshěbŭyũ oblek. — khtsi novee oblek.
Take my measure.	Vemte mi míru.	vehtë me meerũ.
The cutter takes measure and cuts the cloth.	Kraječ bere míru a nakrájí sukno.	kráyěch berě meerũ ã nákráyee sũkno.
What sort of stuff do you want?	Jakou látku chcete?	yãkoũ látkũ khtsetě?
Show me your patterns.	Ukažte mi své vzory,	ũkáshťe me své vzory
This wears well.	Tohle se dobře nese.	tõhlě sè dõbrshě nesse,

How will you have your coat made (i.e. sewed)?

After the present fashion.

Try your coat on.

It pinches me under the arms—It is too tight.

It is too wide round the waist. — It makes folds.

The skirts are long enough. It has pockets behind and breast-pockets.

Make me a pair of pants
Get it done pretty soon;
— take a good stuff.

Do you want lining in your pants?

I do not want any lining. — Without lining.

Jak cheete míti kabát ušítý?

Dle nynější mody.

Zkuste váš kabát.

Svráá pod pažema. — Je tuze těsný.

Je tuze volný v půli. — dělá faldy.

Šosy jsou dost dlouhé.

— Má kapsy v zadu a kapsy na prsou.

**Udělejte mi pár kalhot
Zhotovte je hezky
brzo; vemte dobrou látku.**

Cheete podšivku do kalhot?

Nechci žádnou podšivku. — Bez podšivky.

yák khtsetě meet kábát ũshítee?

dlě nyñeyshee mody

skŭstě vásh kábát.

sveerá pod pažemá. — yě toozě t'essnee.

yě toozě volnee fpooli. — d'elá faldy.

shössy soŭ dost dlouhé.

— má kapsy v zadŭ á kapsy ná p'rsou.

ŭd'elejtě me pár kálhot.

zhotoftě ye hesskee b'er-zŏ; — vemtě d'obroŭ látku.

khtsetě podshífku dŏ kálhot?

nekhtsi žádnou podshífku. — bēs podshífky.

VOCABULARY

Kabát, m. *kábát*, the coat
frak, m. *frák*, a dress-coat
svrehník, m. *sv^erkhñík*, an overcoat

zimník, m. *zimñík*, a greatcoat

plášť, m. *plášť*, a cloak

kalhoty, pl. } pants, trousers;
spodky, pl. }

nohavice, f. *nohávitě*, leg of the pants;

vesta, f. *vestá*, the vest

kazajka, f. *kázajká*, the jacket

bunda, f. *bündä*, the sack-coat

límeec, m. *leemets*, the collar

laple, f. *lápľe*, the lapel

rukáv, m. *rúkáf*, the sleeve

šos, m. *shöss*, the skirt

šev, m. *shěf*, the seam

štych, m. *shtikh* } a stitch
steh, m. *stěh* }

podšivka, f. *podshífká*, the lining

záplata, f. *záplätá*, the patch

kapsa, f. *kāpsā*, the pocket
knoflík, m. *knofleek*, the button
knoflíková dírka, the button-hole;

Prádlo, n. linen, underclothing;
košile, f. *koshillě*, the shirt
spodní košile, *spodñee k.*, the under-
 shirt

podvlečky, pl. }
spodní kalhoty } the drawers

punčochy, pl. f. *pūnchokhy*, the
 stockings, the socks;

podvazky, pl. *podvásky*, the garters

šandy, pl. f. *shāndy* } the
šle, pl. f. *shlě* } suspenders

šátek, m. *shátek*, kerchief

š. na krk, *sh. nā k^erk*, neckerchief

š. do kapsy, *sh. dō kāpsy*, pocket
 handkerchief;

mašle na krk, *māshlě nā k^erk*, a
 necktie.

Sukno, n. *sūknō*, cloth, broadcloth;

samet, m. *sāmmet*, velvet

plíš, m. *plīsh*, plush

atlas, m. *ātlās*, satin

hedvábí, n. *hedvábee*, silk

plátno, n. linen

kartoun, m. *kartoūn*, cotton, print;

šňůra, f. *shñoorā*, cord

civka, f. *tsifkā*, a spool

klubko, n. *klūbko*, a ball

přadýnko, n. *prshādeenko*, a skein

hrubá nit, f. *hrūbā ñit*, a coarse
 thread;

tenká nit, a fine thread;

hrubá jehla, f. *h. yehlā*, a coarse
 needle;

tenká jehla, a fine needle;

štepovací jehla, *shtepovātsee yěhlā*,
 darning needle;

drát (na pletení), m. knitting nee-
 dle;

stříhati, *strshihāt*, to cut with a pair
 of scissors;

žehlit, *žehlīt*, to iron.

Klobouk, m. *kloboūk*, the hat

ženský klobouk, a bonnet, a lady's
 hat;

čepec, m. *chěpets*, the hood

čepice, f. *chěpitsě*, the cap

cilindr, m. *tsilind^er*, a beaver, a
 silk hat;

nízký klobouk, *ñeeskee kloboūk*, a
 low hat.

Švadlena, f. *shvādlenā*, a needle-
 woman

šička, f. *shichkā*, a sewing-giri

modistka, f. a milliner

modní zboží, *modñee zbožee*, millinery

šaty, pl. *shāty*, a dress

život, m. *život*, the waist, the bust;

šněrovačka, f. *shñerovāchkā*, the
 corset, the bodice;

spodnička, f. *spodñichkā*, the petti-
 coat

košile (ženská), *koshillě*, the chemise

karnýr, m. *karneer*, a flounce

karnýrek, m. a ruffle

pentle, f. *pentlě*, a ribbon

mašle, f. *māshlě*, a sash

mašlička, f. *māshlichkā*, a bow
 klička, f. *klichkā*, a loop
 krajky, pl. *krāyky*, lace
 obruba, f. *obrūbā*, hem, border;
 pinta, f. *pinťā*, belt
 závoj, m. *zāvoy* } the veil
 flór, m. *flor*. }
 černý flór, *chernee floor*, crape

týl, m. *teel*, mosquito bar;
 pera na klobouk, pl. *plumes*
 perka, pl. *tips*
 rukavičky, pl. f. *rūkāvich-
 ky* } gloves
 rukavice, pl. f. *rūkāvitsě*,
 pár rukavic, *pār rūkāvits*, a pair of
 gloves;
 štueel, m. *shtütsell*, a muff.

Shoemaking.

ОБУВНИЦТВІ.

Obuv, f. *obūv*, footgear
 obuvník, *obūvnik* } shoemaker
 švec, *shvets* }
 obuvnický krám, *obūv-
 nitskee krām* } boot and
 švecovský krám, *shef* } shoe store;
tsofskee k. }
 bota, (pl. *boty*), f. *bottā*, boot
 střevíc, (pl. *střevíce*), m. *shtrshě-
 veets*, shoe
 pár bot, a pair of boots;
 pár střevců, a pair of shoes;
 botky (ženské), pl. *gaiters*
 pantofle, pl. *pāntoflě*, slippers
 svrchní střevíce, *sv^{er}khñee strshě-
 vitsě*, overshoes.

Holinka, f. *holeenkā*, leg of a boot;
 podešev, m. *poděshef*, the sole

kramflek, m. } the heel
 podpatek, m. }
 nárt, m. the vamp
 přaska, f. *prshāsskā*, the buckle
 kanice, f. *kāñitsě*, shoe-lace, shoe-
 string;
 floky, pl. *pegs*
 nejtky, pl. *neytky*, brass nails
 šroubek, m. *shroūbek*, a screw
 lastyng, m. *serge*
 dratev, f. *drātef*, waxed thread;
 potěh, m. *pōtēh*, strap
 knejpy, m. *kněyp*, knife
 kladivo, n. *klād'ivō*, hammer
 kopyto, n. *kopytō*, last
 štípce, *sh'tiptsě*, a pair of pincers;
 nádobí švecovské, n. *nādōbee shef-
 tsofské*, findings
 kůže, f. *koožě*, leather,

Diverse trades.

ROZLIČNÁ ŘEMESLA.

Barvíř, *barveersh*, dyer
 barvíř domů, house painter
 bednář, *bednářsh*, cooper
 cihlář, *tsihlársh*, brickmaker
 cukrář, *tsükrársh*, confectioner
 čalouník, *chäloüñik*, upholsterer
 doutníkář, *doütñikársh*, cigar-maker
 dlaždič, *dlážďich*, paver
 formář, *formársh*, moulder
 hodinář, *hodínársh*, watchmaker
 havíř, *háveersh*, miner
 kameník, *kämeñik*, stone cutter
 klempíř, *klempeersh*, tinner
 knihař, *kñihársh*, bookbinder
 kloboučník, *kloboüchñik*, hatter
 kolář, *kolársh*, wagon-maker
 kotlář, *kollársh*, boiler-maker
 kovář, *kovársh*, blacksmith
 koželuh, *koželüh*, tanner
 kožešník, *kožeshñik*, furrier
 krejčí, *kreychee*, tailor
 kufrář, *küfrársh*, trunk-maker
 lakýrník, *läkeerñik*, laquerer
 litec, *litets*, founder
 malíř, *mäleersh*, painter
 mydlář, *mydlársh*, soap-maker
 mlynář, *mlynársh*, miller
 natěrač, *nätëräch*, painter
 obuvník, (švec), *obüvñik*, (*shuets*)
 shoemaker
 pekař, *pekarsh*, baker
 plynovodník, gas-fitter
 puškař, *pushkarsh*, gunsmith
 řezník, *rshëzñik*, butcher

rybář, *rybársh*, fisherman
 rytec, *rytets*, engraver
 sazeč, *säzech*, typesetter
 sedlář, *sedlársh*, saddler
 sekerník, *sekerñik*, millwright
 sládek, brewer
 sochař, *sokharsh*, sculptor
 stavitel, builder
 strojník, *stroyñik*, machinist
 tesař, *tessarsh*, carpenter
 tiskař, *tisskarsh*, printer
 tkadlec, *käddlets*, weaver
 truhlář, (stolař), *trühlársh*, cabinet
 maker
 zahradník, *zährädñik*, gardner
 zámečník, *zámechñik*, locksmith
 zedník, *zedñik*, stone-mason, brick-
 layer;
 zlatník, *zlätñik*, goldsmith.

Barvířství, n. *barveershtwee*, the
 dyer's trade;
 bednářství, n. *bednárshtwee*, the
 cooper's trade;
 doutníkářství, *doütñikárstwee*, cigar-
 making;
 krejčovství, *kreychofstwee* } the tailor's
 krejčovina, *kreychovina* } trade, tai-
 } l ring;
 ševcovství, *shëftsof-
 stwee*, } the shoemak-
 } er's trade,
 ševcovina, *shëftovina* } shoemaking;
 sazečství, *säzechstwee*, type-setting,
 etc.

On the farm.

NA FARMĚ.

I want to go on a farm.
Do you want to be a farmer?

Yes, I want to buy land.

What is land worth in this neighborhood?

What are improved farms worth?

Fifty to sixty dollars an acre, and over.

How is the soil?—The soil is good, fertile.

Good land all over.

What is the character (or "lay") of the land?

The land is level, flat, broken, hilly.

The land is loamy, sandy.

Black loam, — mixed with sand.

Gravel at the bottom, — in some places clay.

Rich land;—poor land.

That land is bad — swampy; — it has no drainage.

That land looks poor. — Everything grows here; — but it wants manuring.

Chei na farmu.
Chcete býti farmerem?

Ano; chei koupiti pozemek.

Co stojí pozemky v tomto okolí?

Co stojí vzdělané farmy?

Padesát až šedesát dolarů akr, i více.

Jaká je půda? — Půda je dobrá, úrodná. □

Samá dobrá zem.

Jaká je poloha?

Půda je rovná (plochá, lomená, kopčítá).

Zem je hlinitá, — písčítá.

Černá hlína, — smíchaná s pískem.

Štěrka vespod, — někde jíl (mazník).

Bohatá půda; — chudá půda.

Ten pozemek je špatný, — bahutitý; — nemá odpad.

Ta půda vypadá hubená. — Všechno zde roste; — ale musí se hnojit.

khtsi nã farmũ.
khtsẽtẽ beet farmerem?

ãno; khtsi koupiti pözẽmek.

tsõ stoyee pozemky ftom-tõ okolee?

tsõ stoyee vzdẽlanẽ farmy?

pãdessãt ãsh shẽdessãt dollãroo ãk ^{r,e} veetsẽ.

yãkã yẽ poodã? — poodã yẽ dõbrã, oo'odnã.

sãmã dõbrã zem.

yãkã yẽ polohã?

poodã yẽ rovnã, (plokhã, lomẽnã, kopchitã).

zem yẽ hlĩnitã, — peeschitã.

chernã hleẽnã, — smee-klũnã speeskem.

sh'ẽrk vespod, — ñegdẽ yeel (mõzñik).

bohãtã poodã; — khũdã poodã.

ten pözemek yẽ shpãtnee — bãhũitee; — nõmã odpãd.

tã pũda vypãdã hũbenã. — fshẽkhnõ zdẽ rostẽ; — ãlẽ mũsee sẽ hnojit.

How will the harvest be? — good? — bad?

How does grain look? — Grain shows a good stand — Wheat stools out thickly.

Rye is in bloom. — Barley is heading.

Wheat as lodged; — the rainstorm laid it flat.

It has a good ear; — the berries are plump.

Corn is poor; — early corn looks better than late corn.

Have you a great deal of corn? — We have twenty acres of it.

We planted it towards the end of May. — I think it will pick up.

Our neighbor planted corn in the sod. — How does it grow? — Poorly.

How is the pasture? — Poor.

Everything is parched up. — Hay will be short.

Do you raise a great deal of stock?

About fifty head.

What do you feed (to your stock)?

Jaká bude úroda? — dobrá? — špatná?

Jak stojí obilí? — Obilí stojí dobře. Pšenice nasazuje hustě.

Žito je ve květu. — Ječmen vymetá.

Pšenice lehla; — ten líjak ji položil.

Má dobrý klas; — zrna je jádrné.

Kukuřice je špatná; — ranná korna je lepší než pozdní.

Máte mnoho korny? — Máme jí dvacet akřů.

Sázeli jsme ji ke konci máje. — Já myslím že se sebere.

Soused sázel kornu do drnu. — Jak roste? — Mizerně.

Jaká je pastva? — Hubená.

Všecko je vyprahlé. — Sena bude málo.

Chováte mnoho dobytka?

Asi padesát kusů.

Čím krmíte?

yáká būdě oorodā? — dōbrā? — špātñā?

yāk stoyee obilēe? — obilēe stoyee dōbrshĕ. — pshĕñitsĕ nāsazūyĕ hūssĕ.

žitō yĕ vĕ kvĕtū. — yĕchmen vymĕtā.

pshĕñitsĕ lehlā; — ten liyāk ye položil.

mā dōbrĕe klāss; — z^erñō yĕ yād^e rñĕ.

kūkūrshitsĕ yĕ špātñā, — rāñā kornā yĕ tepshee nesh pozdnĕe

mātĕ mnohō korny? — māmĕ ye dvātsĕt kroo.

sázelli smĕ ye kĕ kontsi máyĕ. — yā misleem že sĕ sĕberĕ.

soūsed sázel kornū dō d^erñū. — yāk rostĕ? — mizerñĕ.

yákā yĕ pāstvā? — hūbĕñā.

fshĕtsko yĕ vyprāhlĕ. — sennā būdě mālō.

khovātĕ mnohō dōbytkā?

āssi pādĕssát kūssoo.

cheem k^ermeētĕ?

What do you feed your stock upon?	Co dáváte dobytku žráti?	<i>tsō dāvátě dobytkū žrát?</i>
What do you feed to your horses?	Čím krmíte koně?	<i>cheem k^e rmeetě koñe?</i>
Do you fatten your stock for the butcher (<i>liter.</i> "for meat")?	Krmíte dobytek na maso?	<i>k^e rmeetě dōbytek nā māsō?</i>
Last year I fattened fifteen head of beefsteers.	Loni vykrmil jsem patnáct volů na maso.	<i>loñi vyk^e rmil sem pāt-nātst voloo nā māsō.</i>
I feed many hogs for the market.	Krmím mnoho prasat pro trh.	<i>k^e rmeem mnohō prāsāt pro t^erh.</i>
I have a stock farm not far from here.	Mám dobytčí farmu nedaleko odtud.	<i>mām dōbitchee farmū nedālekō otūd.</i>
There is a creek on it; — but now it is almost dry.	Je na ní potok; — ale teď je skoro suchý.	<i>yě nā ñee pōtok; — ālē teď yě skorō sūkhee.</i>
This is a dry year (a dry season);—there is no moisture (no rain).	Je suchý rok; — není vláhy.	<i>yě sūkhee rok; — neyñi vlāhy.</i>
A wet year (wet season) is better.	Mokrý rok je lepší.	<i>mokree rok yě lepshee.</i>
There is a great deal of insects this year.	Je síla hmyzu letos.	<i>yě seelā hmizū letos.</i>
Grasshoppers we never had;—neither did we have chinch bugs.	Kobylky nikdy jsme neměli; — polní štěnice také ne.	<i>kobylky ñigdy smě ně-myělli;—pollñee sh^te-ñitsě tāké ně.</i>
Farming implements cost a great deal.	Rolnické nářadí stojí mnoho.	<i>rolñitské nārshād^eee stoye mnohō.</i>
At present we have machines for everything	Teď máme stroje na všechno.	<i>teď māmě stroyě nā fshětskō.</i>
Farming is improving.	Rolnictví se zvelebuje.	<i>rolñitstvee sě zvelěbūyě.</i>

VOCABULARY.

Note. From the preceding lessons the student is familiar with a great many words and phrases relating to agriculture; To repeat the same in the following vocabulary would be a waste of space.

LAND and HARVEST.

Půda a žeň.

Dolina, f. *dollinā* } bottomland
 úpad, m. *oopād* }
 výšina, f. *veeshinā*, upland
 svah, m. *svāh*, slope
 stráň, f. *strāñ*, bluff
 rokle, f. *rocklē*, ravine, gully;
 mez, f. *měz*, boundary, line;
 pěšina, f. *pyěshinā* } path
 stezka, f. *steskā* }
 lávka, f. *láfká*, footbridge
 mostek, m. *mōstek* } little bridge
 můstek, m. *moostek* }
 kanál, m. *kānāl*, culvert
 strouha, f. *stroühā*, ditch
 břeh, m. *brshěh*, bank
 hráz (hráze), f. *hráz*, dam.

Orati, *orāt*, to plow
 vláčetí, *vláchet*, to harrow
 přeorati, *prshěorāt*, to backset
 přivláčetí, *prshí-vláchet*, to scour
 oráč, m. *orách*, plowman
 brázda, f. *brázdā*, furrow
 kolej, f. *kollej*, rut
 hnojiti, *hnojit*, to manure

Tráva, f. *trávā*, grass
 plevel, m. *plěvell*, weeds
 pletí, *plet*, to weed
 koukol, *koŭkol*, cockle
 jetel, m. *yetell*, clover
 pohanka, f. *pohānkā*, buckwheat
 proso, n. *prossō*, millet

hnojivo, n. *hnoyivō*, } manure,
 hnůj, m. *hnooy* } dung;
 mrva, f. *m^ervā* }
 zasėti, *zāsset*, to sow, to seed (with);
 zaseto, *zāssetō*, sown, seeded;
 sázeti, *sázet*, } to plant
 zasázeti, *zāsászet*, }
 zasázeno, planted
 žíti, *žet*, } to reap, to mow;
 požíti, *požet* }
 sekati, *sekāt* } to cut
 posekati, *pōsekāt* }
 sklíditi, *sklidít*, to harvest
 sláma, f. *slámā*, straw
 snop, m. *snōp*, sheaf
 vázati, *vázāt*, to bind
 stoh, m. *stōh*, stack
 stohovati, *stōhovāt*, to stack
 kupa sena, *kŭpā sennā*, hay-stack
 kupka sena, *kŭpkā s.*, hay-rick
 voziti, *vozit* } to haul,
 svážeti, *svážet* } to carry;
 droliti se, *drolit sě*, to shed, to shell;
 zralý, *á, é zrálee*, ripe
 přezralý, *á, é prshězrálee*, over-ripe.

PLANTS.

Ros'liny.

hrách, m. *hrákh*, pease
 boby, *bōby* } beans
 fazole, *fázolě* }
 čočka, f. *chochkā*, lentils
 řepa, f. *rshěpā* } beets
 řípa, f. *ršheepā*, }
 řepa pro dobytek, rutabaga

vodnatka, f. turnips
 keř, m. *kersh*, shrub
 živý plot, *živee plot*, hedge
 háj, m. *háy*, grove
 houština, f. *hoüşhřinā*, thicket,
 copse;
 chrastí, n. *khrāšťi*, brushwood,
 undergrowth;

pařez, m. *pārshěz*, stump
 klada, f. *klādā*, trunk
 větev, f. *vyětef*, branch, bough;
 větvička, f. *vyětvichkā*, twig
 ratolest, f. -prig
 káceti stromy, *kátset* } to fell (trees)
 porážeti “ *porážet* }

TEAMS AND DOMESTIC ANIMALS.

Potah a domácí zv ěata.

Potah, m. *põtāh*, a team
 pár koní, *pār koñee*, a pair of horses
 pár volů, *pār voloo*, a yoke of oxen
 pár mladých volů, a pair of seers;
 na koni, *nā koñi*, on horseback;
 jeti na koni, *yet nā koñi*, to ride a
 horse;
 jeti s koňma, *yet skoñmā*, to drive
 horses;
 zapřahuouti, *zāprshāhnoūt*, to har-
 ness;
 uvázati, *ūvázāt*, to hitch
 náklad, m: *nāklād*, the load
 nakládati, *nāklādāt*, to load
 skládati, *sklādāt*, to unload
 uváznouti, *ūváznoūt*, to get fast, to
 stick fast;
 splástiti se, *splāshit sē*, to run away
 lekati se, *lekāt sē*, to shy
 zarážlivý kůň, *zarážlivee kooñ*, a
 balky horse;
 zlý kůň, *zlee kooñ*, a vicious horse;
 klus, m. *klüss*, trot
 krok, m. pace
 krmítí, *k^ermít*, to feed
 napojítí, *nāpoyít*, to water.

Klisna, f. *klissnā* } broad mare;
 hřebice, f. *hrshěbitsē* }
 hřebná, *hrshěbnā*, with foal;
 hřibě, n. *hrsheebyě*, foal
 hřebček. m. *hrshěbčhek*, colt
 hřebička, f. *hrshěbichkā*, filly
 cucati, *tsūtsāt*, to suckle
 cucák, m. *tsūtsák*, a suckling
 hřebec, m. *hrshěbets*, } stallion
 hengst, m. *hengst* }

Kráva, f. *krávā*, cow
 dojnice, f. *doynitsē*, milch cow;
 jalovice, f. *yāllovitsē*, heifer
 tele, n. *tellē*, calf
 bulík, m. *bulleek*, bull calf;
 jalovička, f. *yāllovichkā*, heifer calf
 roční, *rochñee*, yearling
 stelná, *stellnā*, with calf
 jalová, *yāllová*, farrow
 pometati, *pōmetāt*, to slink, to slip
 the calf;
 běhati se, *byěhāt sē*, to be bulling;
 to want the bull;
 býk, m. *beek* } bull
 bejk, *běyk* }

Ovce, f. *oftsě*, sheep
 bahnice, f. *báhnětsě*, ewe
 beran, m. *berán*, ram, buck;
 jehně, n. *yěhñe*, lamb
 bahnění, n. *báhněñi*, lambing season
 vlna, f. *v^lñä*, wool
 střihání, n. *strshehání*, shearing.

Prase, n. *prässe* } pig, hog;
 vepř, m. *veprsh* }
 kanec, m. *kānets*, boar
 svině, f. *sveeñe*, sow
 sele, n. *sellě* } sucking
 podsvinče, n. *podswinchě* } pig.

Mezek, m. *mězek*, mule
 osel, m. *šzell*, donkey
 koza, f. *közä*, goat, she-goat;
 kozel, m. *közell*, he goat
 kůzle, n. *koozlě*, kid
 pes, m. *pass*, dog
 čuba, f. *chübä*, bitch
 štěně, n. *shťeñe*, whelp

kočka, f. *kōchkä*, cat
 kocour, m. *kotsoūr*, tom-cat.

Drůbež, f. *drooběsh*, poultry
 slepice, f. *slepitsě*, hen, chicken;
 kvočna, f. *kwochnä*, clucking hen;
 kuře, n. *koorshě*, chick, young
 chicken;

kohout, m. *kohoūt*, rooster
 kachna, f. *kākhñä* } duck
 kačena, *kachenä* }
 kačer, m. *kācher*, drake
 husa, f. *hūssä*, goose
 houser, m. *hoūsser*, gander
 housata, pl. *hoūssätä*, goslings
 krocan, m. *krotsän*, turkey-cock
 krůta, f. *krootä*, turkey-hen
 páv, m. *páf*, peacock
 pávice, f. *pávitsě*, peahen
 hnízdo, n. *hñeezdō*, nest
 nesti vejce, *nest veytsě*, to lay eggs;
 líhnouti se, *lehnout sě*, to hatch.

TOOLS AND MACHINES.

Nástroje a stroje.

Vůz, m. *vooz*, wagon
 kolo, *kollō*, wheel
 kolečko, n. *kollechkō*, wheelbarrow
 ráf, m. *tire*
 náboj, m. *náboy*, hub
 náprava, f. *nápravä*, axletree
 špice, f. *shpitsě*, spokes
 voj, f. *voy*, pole
 vojky, *vryky*, shafts
 hamovák, m. *hāmovák*, brake
 pera, pl. n. *perä*, springs
 sedadlo, n. *sedādlō*, seat

kšír, m. *ksheer*, harness
 oprat', f. *oprāt'*, line
 sedlo, n. *sedlō*, saddle
 uzda, f. *oozdä*, bridle
 ohlávka, f. *ohláfká*, halter
 popruh, m. *poprūh*, girt
 čabraka, f. *chābrākä*, horse-loth
 třemen, m. *trshēmen*, stirrup
 hřebílec, *hrshě-beeltsě*, curry-com!
 bič, m. *bitch*, whip
 bičičště, n. *bichishťe*, whip-stick.

Saně, pl. *sāne*, sleigh
 sanice, f. *sānitsě*, runner, (also: sleighing);
 korba, f. *korbā*, cutt r
 řezačka, f. *rshězāchkā*, straw-cutter, feed-cutter;
 řezanka, f. *rshězānkā*, chopped straw;
 brány, pl. harrow, drag;
 válec, m. *vālets*, roller
 pluh, m. *plooh*, plow
 radlice, f. *rādlitsě*, plowshare
 klěče, pl. *klěchě*, handles
 krajadlo, n. *krāyādlō*, coulter
 řetěz, m. *rshěčez*, chain
 pospěchy, pl. *pospyěkhy* } culty-
 podrývač, m. *podreerāch* } vator
 kosa, f. *kossā*, scythe
 motyka, f. hoe
 špicatá motyka, *shpichātā m.*, pick-axe
 rýč, f. *recch*, spade
 lopata, f. *lopātā*, shovel
 hrábě, pl. *hrābyě*, rake
 hrabati, *hrābāt*, to rake
 podávky, pl. *podāfky*, hayfork
 vidle, pl. *vidlē*, pitchfork
 sekyra, f. *sekyrā*, axe
 sekyrka, f. hatchet

pila, f. *pillā* }
 pilka, *pillkā* } saw
 ruční pilka, *rūchñee pillkā*, hand saw
 nebozez, m. bore, auger;

Mlatidlo, *mlāčidlō* } threshing
 mlatička, *mlāčichkā* } machine
 mlátiti, *mlāčit*, to thresh
 mláčení, n. *mlātsēñi*, threshing
 mlatič, m. *mlāčich*, thresher
 fofr, m. *fōf^er*, fanning mill;
 sečka, f. *sechkā*, grain-drill
 žací stroj, m. *žātsēe sroy*, mower
 sekací stroj, *sekātsēe sroy*, reaper
 samovazač, m. *sāmovāzāch*, self-

binder
 rám, m. frame
 sýto, n. *sectō*, sieve
 řešeto, n. *rshěshětō*, screen
 řemen, m. *rshēmen* }
 pruh, m. *prooh* } b. lt
 tyč, f. *tich*, rod
 panty, pl. m. *pānty*, hinges
 zuby, pl. m. *zūby* }
 palec, *pālsě* } cogs
 žlábek, m. *žlābek*, spout
 mlýnek, m. *mlēynek*, mill
 loupáč (na kukuřici), m. *loūpāch*,
 corn-sheller;
 loupati, *loūpāt*, to shell.

PART IV.

Bohemian grammar.

1. ORTHOGRAPHY.

SECTION 1. — The full Bohemian alphabet, as given in the first Part, contains the following vowels : **a, á, — e, é, ě, — i, í, y, ý, — o, ó, — u, ú, ů.**

The other letters are consonants. There is only one diphthong: **ou, oů.** When **ou** occurs in a compound word, ending one and beginning the next syllable, it is not a diphthong and must be divided : **použiti (po-užiti), pŕ-ůžit,** to use, to make use of; **samouk (samo-uk), sǎmo-ůk,** a self-educated man.

An accute accent (or comma' over a vowel marks a long sound: **kam,** *kám,* where to; **kámen,** *kámen,* a stone.

A ring over the vowel **u (ů)** is also a prolongation mark : **sup,** *sŭp,* a hawk; **sůl,** *sool,* the salt.

When a word begins with a long **u,** the accute accent is used: **úrok,** *oorok,* the interest. In such cases the vowel **ú** may be and frequently is changed into the diphthong **ou: ourok, oůrok,**

The accented vowel **ě** has always the short sound of *yě*: **svět,** *swyět,* the world.

The vowels **a, o, u, y,** are called *hard*; the vowels **e, ě, i,** are called *soft*.

SECTION 1. — The consonants are divided into three classes :

hard consonants, — **h, ch, k, r, d, n, t;**

soft consonants, — **c, ě, d', j, ů, ř, š, t', ž;**

neutral consonants, — **b, f, l, m, p, s, v, z.**

After the hard consonants the hard vowel *y* is always used :

hynu , <i>hinnǎ</i> , I am perishing;	vždyť, <i>dyť</i> , <i>diť</i> , but, to be sure;
chyba , f. <i>khíbǎ</i> , a mistake, a fault;	
kyt , m. <i>kit</i> , putty	
ryba , f. <i>ribǎ</i> , a fish	
	nyněko (<i>nyní</i>), <i>nínchkoš</i> , now, at present;
	tykev , f. <i>tikef</i> , a pumpkin

When the sound is long, an accented *ý* is used : **hýbati**, *heebăt*, to move; **tichý** (*á*, *é*), *vikhee*, quiet; **rýti**, *reet*, to spade, to dig, to root; **dým**, m. *deem*, smoke; **týrati**, *teerăt*, to misuse, to torment.

In such cases the vowel *ý* is usually changed into *ej* (*ěy*), in common pronunciation : **hejbati**, *hěybăt*, **tichej**, *vikhey*; **rejti**, *rěyt*; **dejm**, *děym*; **tejrati**, *těyrăt*.

Words derived from foreign languages, also foreign names, make an exception, their original spelling being retained : **historie**, *historiě*, history; **Amerika**, **Riga**, etc.

The soft consonants are always followed by the soft vowel *i* (or *í*, when the sound is long) :

cít , m. <i>tsit</i> , the feeling	cíl, m. <i>tseel</i> , the goal
čín , m. <i>chin</i> , the deed	
divoký *, <i>dívooke</i> , wild	
jistý , <i>yistee</i> , certain	
nic , <i>nits</i> , nothing	
řimsa , f. <i>rshimsǎ</i> , a cornice	
šikovný , <i>shikövnec</i> , smart, clever;	
tisk , m. <i>visk</i> , the printing	
život , m. <i>život</i> , the life	
	díl, m. <i>d'eel</i> , a part
	jísti, <i>yeest</i> , to eat
	hníti, <i>hñeet</i> , to rot
	řeci, <i>rshheetsi</i> , to say
	šíti, <i>sheet</i> , to sew
	tíže, f. <i>t'eežě</i> , the weight -
	žíla, f. <i>žeelǎ</i> , the vein.

The neutral vowels are followed by the soft *i* or *í*, with the following exceptions :

b : **aby**, by, that; **bych**, **bys**, etc. that I, that thou, etc.; **bylina**, f. the plant; **bystrý**, quick, sharp; **býti**, to be; **kobyła**, the mare; **obyčej**, m. the custom.

l : **lysý**, bald; **lysina**, f. bald spot, or white spot; **lýko**, the bast; **lyska**, f. the coot; **mlýn**, m. the mill; **oplyvati**, to abound; **pely-**

*) The soft consonants *ď*, *ň*, *ť* lose their accent, when followed by *i*, *í* or *ě*, and are written simply *đ*, *n*, *t*. See Part I, section 2.

něk, m. the wormwood; **plyn**, m. the gas; **plynouti**, to glide; **plýtvati**, to waste; **polykati**, to swallow; **slyšeti**, to hear; **vzlykati**, to sob.

m : **lmyz**, m. the insects; **my**, we; **mýdlo**, n. the soap; **mýliti**, to mislead, to confuse; **mýliti se**, to mistake; **omyl**, m. a mistake; **mysl**, f. the mind; **mysliti**, to think; **myš**, f. the mouse; **mýti**, to wash; **smyčec**, m. the fiddle-stick; **smykati**, to drag; **zamykati**, to lock up.

p : **kopyto**, n. the hoof; **netopýr**, m. the bat; **pýcha**, f. the pride; **pykati**, to regret; **pyl**, m. the pollen; **pýr**, m. the quick-grass; **pysk**, the lip; **pytel**, the sack; **třpytiti**, to glitter; **zpytovati**, to search, to inquire.

s : **osyka**, f. the aspen; **osypky**, pl. the measles; **posýlati**, to send; **syčeti**, to hiss; **sychravý**, chilly; **syn**, m. the son; **sypati**, to pour; **sýpka**, f. the granary; the bin; **sýr**, m. the cheese; **syrový**, raw; **syrop**, the syrup; **sysel**, m. the gopher; **syť**, nasycen, full, satiated.

v : **povyk**, m. the noise; **vy**, you; **vydra**, f. the otter; **výheň**, f. the forge; **vykýř**, m. the dormer-window; **výr**, m. the horn-owl; **vyšoký**, high; **výti**, to howl; **vyza**, the sturgeon; **zvyk**, the habit; **žvýkati**, to chew.

z : **brzy**, soon; **jazyk**, the tongue; **nazývati**, to call, to name.

SECTION 3.—As in English, the spelling makes sometimes a great difference of meaning, though the pronunciation may be identical. For instance :

býti , <i>bee'ti</i> or <i>beet</i> (colloquially <i>běyt</i>), to be	bíti , <i>bee'ti</i> or <i>beet</i> , to beat
mýti , <i>mee'ti</i> or <i>meet</i> , (colloq. <i>měyt</i>), to wash	míti , <i>mee'ti</i> or <i>meet</i> , to have
my , <i>me</i> , we	mi , <i>me</i> , to me
vy , <i>ve</i> , you	ví , <i>vee</i> , he knows
výr , <i>veer</i> , (colloq. <i>věyr</i>), the horn-owl	vír , <i>veer</i> , the whirl-wind
výti , <i>vee'ti</i> or <i>veet</i> (colloq. <i>věyt</i>), to howl	víti , <i>vee'ti</i> or <i>veet</i> , to wind.

SECTION 4.—The Bohemian verb shows a distinction of gender in the past tense*). In the plural, there is only an orthographical distinction

*) See Note 2, Lesson IX.

between the masculine and *feminine* gender, the latter always terminating in **y**. For instance :

<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>
byli jsme, we were	byly jsme, we were
byli, they were	byly, they were
měli jsme, we had	měly jsme, we had
měli, they had	měly, they had
muži měli, the men had;	ženy měly, the women had
hoši viděli, the boys saw;	holky viděly, the girls saw.

The same is true of verbs relating to *inanimate* nouns of the masculine gender, or names of lifeless things : **stromy vyrostly**, the trees grew up; **domy shořely**, the houses burned down.

SECTION 5. — The general rule of Bohemian spelling is: A sound for every letter and a letter for every sound, and no silent letters*). From this rule there are but few exceptions. In some words the initial letter **j** is silent :

jdu, <i>dů</i> , I go	jmeno, n. <i>menš</i> , the name
jsem, <i>sem</i> , I am	jmenovati, <i>menšvat</i> , to name
jme, <i>smě</i> , we are	jmění, n. <i>myění</i> , the property.

The letter **d** is also silent in a few cases: **dcera**, *tserá*, the daughter, **srdce**, n. *s^eřěšě*, the heart.

In some cases the letters **k, s, t, v, z, ž** modify their sound in order to facilitate pronunciation:

kdo, who, — <i>gdě</i>	v peci, in the oven, — <i>fpetsi</i> ;
kdy, when, — <i>gdy</i>	bez peněz, without money, — <i>běs</i>
s bohem, farewell, — <i>zběhem</i>	<i>pěñez</i> ;
kletba, f. the curse, — <i>kledbā</i>	zpívati, to sing, — <i>speevāt</i> .

SECTION 6. — The prepositions **s** and **z** (**se**, **ze**) are governed by the following rule :

When the tendency is *from above downwards* **s** or **se** is used: **spadl s okna**, **s nebe**, **se stromu**, *spādł soknā, sněbě, sě stromū*, — he fell from the window, from heaven, from the tree.

*) See Part III, Note 1.

When the tendency is from below upwards, or from the inside to the outside, *z* or *ze* is employed : **vylezu ze studně**, I shall crawl up from the well; **vyndal jsem peníze z kapsy**, (*skápsy*), I took the money from my pocket, *or* out of my pocket; **vyskočím z okna ven**, I shall jump out of the window.

SECTION 7.—It is a vulgar English custom to place the sound of *h* before initial vowels : *heye* (eye), *Hengland* (England). In Bohemian a similar vulgar custom obtains, namely that of placing the letter **v** before an initial **o**. We hear, for instance :

von ,	instead of on (he)	vokno ,	instead of okno (window)
vona ,	“ “ ona (she)	voko ,	“ “ oko (eye)
vono ,	“ “ ono (it)	vosel ,	“ “ osel (ass).

This vulgarity must be carefully avoided in writing as well as speaking. On the other hand, when the letter **v** belongs to the root of the word, care must be taken not to omit the same :

voda, water; **voják**, soldier; **vosk**, wax; **voskovati**, to wax.

SECTION 8. — In writing, words have often to be divided in syllables. The principal rules to be observed are the following :

a) A consonant standing between two vowels belongs to the next syllable : **o-ba**, both; **o-ko**, the eye; **kla-da**, the log.

b) A consonant succeeding the letter **l** or **r** also belongs to the next syllable : **vl-na**, *v^elnā*, the wool; **hr-dlo**, *h^erdlō*, the throat.

c) Two vowels, if they do not form the diphthong **ou**, are always divided : **Ma-ri-e**, *māriě*.

d) Compound words are divided according to their component parts : **bez-hlavý** (**bez-hla-vý**), headless; **roz-ličný** (**roz-lič-ný**), different; **oka-mžik**, the twinkling of an eye; a moment.

Other rules are less important and are sometimes sinned against even by the best writers.

SECTION 9. — The use of capital letters follows the same rules as in English, excepting that adjectives derived from the names of countries or nations do not, in Bohemian, commence with a capital letter (**anglický**, English; **český**, Bohemian etc.); neither does the personal pronoun **já** (I) use a capital letter.

2. ETYMOLOGY.

SECTION 1. — The Bohemian language has seven cases, the nature of which is sufficiently explained in Note 5, on page 82.

SECTION 2. — The declension of Bohemian nouns differs in regard to *gender*, and also in regard to *termination*.

Nouns of the masculine gender, moreover, form two classes: (a) names of living creatures, or *animate* nouns; (b) names of lifeless beings, or *inanimate* nouns.

According to this division there is also a slight difference in their declension.

DECLENSION of MASCULINE NOUNS.

SECTION 3.—The first declension of nouns of the masculine gender is fully shown by the following examples*):

	<i>Animate</i>		<i>Inanimate</i>
	Singular number.		
<i>nominative</i>	syn, the son		strom, the tree
<i>genitive</i>	syn-a, of the son;		strom-u, of the tree;
<i>dative</i>	syn-u, -ovi, to the son		strom-u, to the tree;
<i>accusative</i>	syn-a, the son		strom, the tree
<i>vocative</i>	syn-e*), son !		strom-e, tree !
<i>locative</i>	syn-u, -ovi, (in) the son		strom-u, (in) the tree;
<i>instrumental</i>	syn-em, with the son		strom-em, with the tree
	Plural number.		
<i>nom.</i>	syn-i, -ové, the sons		strom-y***), the trees
<i>gen.</i>	syn-ů, -ův, of the sons		strom-ů, ův, of the trees
<i>dat.</i>	syn-ům, to the sons;		strom-ům, to the trees;
<i>acc.</i>	syn-y, the sons		strom-y, the trees
<i>voc.</i>	syn-i, -ové, sons;		strom-y***), trees !
<i>loc.</i>	syn-ech, (in) the sons;		strom-ech, (in) the trees;
<i>inst.</i>	syn-y, with the sons:		strom-y, with the trees.

*) Compare Note 3, on page 55; also Note 1, on page 69.

**) In this particular case the common usage is *synu !* o son ! *Synu můj*, o my son !

***) It has also the long termination *ové*, when used as an *animate* noun, especially in poetic language: *stromové se klonili*, the trees bowed.

O stromové, promluvte ! o trees, speak out !

The first masculine declension (*ten syn, ten strom*) comprises nouns ending in hard or neutral consonants.

SECTION 4. — The second declension of nouns of the masculine gender is presented in full by the following examples:

<i>Animate</i>		Singular.	<i>Inanimate</i>
<i>nom.</i>	muž , the man		meč , the sword
<i>gen.</i>	muž-e , of the man;		meč-e , of the sword;
<i>dat.</i>	muž-i, -ovi , to the man;		meč-i, t the sword;
<i>acc.</i>	muž-e , the man		meč , the sword
<i>voc.</i>	muž-i , man!		meč-i , sword!
<i>loc.</i>	muž-i , (in) the man;		meč-i , (in) the sword;
<i>inst.</i>	muž-em , with the man;		meč-em , with the sword.
Plural.			
<i>nom.</i>	muž-i, -ové , the men		meč-e*) , the swords
<i>gen.</i>	muž-ů, -ův , of the men;		meč-ů, -ův , of the swords;
<i>nat.</i>	muž-ům , to the men;		meč-ům , to the swords;
<i>acc.</i>	muž-e , the men		meč-e , the swords
<i>voc.</i>	muž-i, -ové , men!		meč-e*) , swords!
<i>loc.</i>	muž-ích , (in) the men;		meč-ích , (in) the swords;
<i>inst.</i>	muž-i , with the men;		meč-i , with the swords.

The second masculine declension (*ten muž, ten meč*) comprises nouns ending in soft consonants or in **el** (for inst. **učitel**, the teacher).

SECTION 5. — Nouns of the first declension, terminating in **h, ch, k, r**, change these hard consonants into **z, š, c, ř**, in the *nominative* case of the plural number, as explained in Note 3 on page 70, to which we refer.

SECTION 6. — Nouns of the first declension ending in **ek** eliminate the vowel **e** in the inflected cases, as stated in Note 2 on page 80. For instance :

svědek, *svyědek*, the witness; **svědka**, *svyědkā*, (not **svědeka**), of the witness; **svědku** or **svědkovi**, to the witness; etc. — (Plural:) **svědci** or **svědkové**, the witnesses; **svědků**, of the witnesses; **svědkům**, to the witnesses; etc.

*) It may also have the long termination (**mečové**), when used as an animate noun, especially in solemn or poetical language.

The same is true of nouns ending **et** and **en**. The nouns **loket** (the yard, or the elbow) and **den** (the day) follow in their declension the example of **meč**:

loket, the yard; **lokte**, of the yard; **lokti**, to the yard; etc.

den, the day; **dne**, of the day; **dni**, to the day; etc.

In the plural, **den** is quite irregular; **dni** or **dnové**, the days; **dní** or **dnův**, of the days; **dnům**, to the days; **dni** or **dný** (accus.), the days; **dnech**, (in) the days; **dněmi** or **dný**, with the days.

SECTION 7. — The vowel **ů**, when it occurs in the nominative, changes into **o** in the inflected cases: **kůň**, the horse; **koně**, of the horse; **koni** (or **koňovi**), to the horse; etc. — See Note 4 on page 56.

SECTION 8.—Nouns ending in **el** are mostly declined like **muž** or **meč**; for instance: **učitel**, the teacher; **učitele**, of the teacher; **učiteli**, (**-ovi**), to the teacher; etc.

Přítel (the friend) has in the nominative plural **přátelé**, (the friends); in the genitive **přátel**, of the friends. —

The word **penize** (the money) is a plural noun: **peněz**, of the money; **penězům**, to the money; **v penězích**, in the money; **penězi**, with the money.

DECLENSION OF FEMININE NOUNS.

SECTION 9.—The first declension of nouns of the feminine gender (ta **žena**) is shown by the following example*):

	Singular	Plural
<i>nom.</i>	žen-a , the woman	žen-y , the women
<i>gen.</i>	žen-y , of the woman	žen , of the women
<i>dat.</i>	žen-ě , to the woman	žen-ám , to the women
<i>acc.</i>	žen-u , the woman	žen-y , the women
<i>voc.</i>	žen-o , woman!	žen-y , women!
<i>loc.</i>	žen-ě , (in) the woman	žen-ách , (in) the women
<i>inst.</i>	žen-ou , with the woman	žen-ami , with the women.

All nouns of the feminine gender ending in **a** belong to this declension.

SECTION 10.—There are some masculine nouns terminating in **a**, which follow this declension in the singular, excepting the dative and locative cases, which have the long masculine form. For instance: **vévod-a**, the duke; **vévod-y**, of the duke; **vévod-ovi**, to the duke; etc.

*) Compare Note 3 on page 60

In the plural number, such nouns follow the first masculine declension: **vévod-ové**, the dukes; **vévod-ův**, of the dukes; **vévod-ům**, to the dukes; etc. (See "plural" of first declension of masculine nouns.) - Some masculines ending in **a** take in the nominative plural always the short form **i** or **é**; for instance: **basista**, the basso; **basisti** (or **basisté**), the bassoes.

SECTION 11.—Nouns of the feminine gender ending in **ě**, belong to the second declension (*ta země*), which is as follows*):

	Singular		Plural
<i>nom.</i>	zem-ě , the earth		zem-ě , the earths
<i>gen.</i>	zem-ě , of the earth		zem-í , of the earths
<i>dat.</i>	zem-i , to the earth		zem-ím , to the earths
<i>acc.</i>	zem-i , the earth!		zem-ě , the earths
<i>voc.</i>	zem-ě , earth!		zem-ě , earths!
<i>loc.</i>	zem-i , with the earth		zem-ích , (in) the earths
<i>inst.</i>	zem-i , with the earth		zem-ěmi , with the earths.

SECTION 12.—Nouns of the feminine gender ending in a *consonant* (*ta daň*), belong to the third declension, which has two branches showing a slight divergence at least in the written language, if not always in common discourse; hence we subjoin two examples :

	Singular		Plural
<i>nom.</i>	kost' , the bone		daň , the tax
<i>gen.</i>	kost-i , of the bone		dan-ě , of the tax
<i>dat.</i>	kost-i , to the bone		dan-i , to the tax
<i>acc.</i>	kost , the bone		daň , the tax
<i>voc.</i>	kost-i , bone!		dan-i , tax!
<i>loc.</i>	kost-i , (in) the bone		dan-i , (in) the tax
<i>inst.</i>	kost-i , with the bone		dan-i , with the tax.
<i>nom.</i>	kost-i , the bones		daně , the taxes
<i>gen.</i>	kost-í , of the bones		dan-í , of the taxes
<i>dat.</i>	kost-em , to the bones		dan-ím , to the taxes
<i>acc.</i>	kost-i , the bones		dan-ě , the taxes
<i>voc.</i>	kost-i , bones!		dan-ě , taxes!
<i>loc.</i>	kost-ech , (in) the bones		dan-ích , (in) the taxes
<i>inst.</i>	kost-mi , with the bones		dan-ěmi , with the taxes

*) Compare Note 3 on page 60.

Nouns terminating in *eñ* drop the vowel *e* in the inflected cases; for instance : *lázeň*, the bath; *lázně*, of the bath; *lázni*, to the bath; etc.

DECLENSION OF NEUTRAL NOUNS.

SECTION 13.—The **first** declension comprises nouns of the neutral gender ending in *o* (*to slovo*). They are declined as follows*):

	Singular	Plural
<i>nòm.</i>	slov-o , the word	slov-a , the words
<i>gen.</i>	slov-a , of the word	slov , of the words
<i>dat</i>	slov-u , to the word	slov-ům , to the words
<i>acc.</i>	slov-o , the word	slov-a , the words
<i>voc.</i>	slov-o , word !	slov-a , words !
<i>loc.</i>	slov-ě , (-u), (in) the word	slov-ech , (-ích), (in) the words
<i>inst.</i>	slov-em , with the word	slov-y , with the words

SECTION 14.—The **second** neutral declension embraces nouns ending in *e* and *ě* (*to pole*, *to poupě*). It has two branches differing somewhat in their inflected endings, as will be seen from the subjoined two examples**).

	Singular	Plural
<i>nom.</i>	pol-e , the field	poup-ě , the bud
<i>gen.</i>	pol-e , of the field	poup-ěte , of the bud
<i>dat.</i>	pol-i , to the field	poup-ěti , to the bud
<i>acc.</i>	pol-e , the field	poup-ě , the bud
<i>voc.</i>	pol-e , field !	poup-ě , bud !
<i>loc</i>	pol-i , (ir) the field	poup-ěti , (in) the bud
<i>inst.</i>	pol-em , with the field	poup-ětem , with the bud.
<i>nom.</i>	pol-e , the fields	poup-ata , the buds
<i>gen.</i>	pol-i , of the fields	poup-at , of the buds
<i>dat.</i>	pol-im , to the fields	poup-atům , to the buds
<i>acc.</i>	pol-e , fields	poup-ata , the buds
<i>voc.</i>	pol-e , fields !	poup-ata , buds !
<i>loc.</i>	pol-ich , (in) the fields	poup-atech , (in) the buds
<i>inst.</i>	pol-i , with the fields	poup-aty , with the buds.

*) Compare Note 2 on page 65.

***) Compare Note 2 on page 65

The following nouns are declined like *poupě*: **hrabě**, the count, (**hrab-ěte**, of the count; **hrabata**, the counts); **kníže**, the princ; **pachole**, the little boy; **děvče**, the girl; **vnouče**, the grandchild; — **zvíře**, the animal; **dobytče**, the beast; **hříbě**, the foal; **jehně**, the lamb; **kotě**, the kitten; **kůzle**, the kid; **káče**, the duckling; **kuře**, the chick; **hádě**, the young snake; **house**, the gosling; **tele**, the calf; — **doupě**, the den; **koště**, the broom; **vole**, the crop (the craw);

The nouns **břemeno**, the burden; **rameno**, the arm or upper arm; **semeno**, the seed; **temeno**, the crown of the head, — and some others, have also a short form: **břímě**, **rámě**, **símě**, **témě**. The declension of these shortened nouns deviates somewhat from the above examples of the second neutral declension, for which reason a full paradigm is subjoined:

	Singular	Plural
<i>nom.</i>	sím-ě , the seed	sem-ena , the seeds
<i>gen.</i>	sem-ene , of the seed	sem-en , of the seeds
<i>dat.</i>	sem-eni , to the seed	sem-enům , to the seeds
<i>acc.</i>	sím-ě , the seed	sem-ena , the seeds
<i>voc.</i>	sím-ě , seed !	sem-ena , seeds !
<i>loc.</i>	sem-eni , (in) the seed	sem-enech , (in) the seeds
<i>inst.</i>	sem-enem , with the seed	sem-eny , with the seeds.

SECTION 15. — The third declension of neutral nouns is characterized by the terminal **í** :

	Singular	Plural
<i>nom.</i>	znamen-í , the sign	znamen-í , the signs
<i>gen.</i>	znamen-í , of the sign	znamen-í , of the signs
<i>dat.</i>	znamen-í , to the sign	znamen-ím , to the signs
<i>acc.</i>	znamen-í , the sign	znamen-í , the signs
<i>voc.</i>	znamen-í , sign !	znamen-í , signs !
<i>loc.</i>	znamen-í , (in) the sign	znamen-ích , (in) the signs
<i>inst.</i>	znamen-ím , with the sign	znamen-ími , with the signs.

This declension embraces also: 1. *Feminine* nouns terminating in **í**, like: **paní**, the mistress or lady; **bibli**, (also **bible**); the bible; but these nouns retain the terminal **í** in the instrumental of the singular number: **s paní**, with the lady. — 2. Some *masculine* nouns ending in **í**: **rukojmí**, the surety.

SECTION 16. — There is a *dual* number in Bohemian, limited in the modern language to the names of parts of the human body, which appear in pairs : **oči**, the eyes; **uši**, the ears; **ruce**, the hands; **nohy**, the feet; **prsa**, the breasts; **ramena**, the arms; **kolena**, the knees. They are declined in the dual number as follows :

<i>nom.</i>	oč-i , the eyes	uš-i ,	ruc-e ,	noh-y	prs-a ,
<i>gen.</i>	oč-í , of the eyes	uš-í ,	ruk-ou ,	noh-ou	prs-ou
<i>dat.</i>	oč-ím , to the eyes	uš-ím ,	ruk-ám ,	noh-ám	prs-ům
<i>acc</i>	oč-i , the eyes	uš-i ,	ruc-e ,	noh-y	prs-a
<i>voc.</i>	oč-i , eyes !	uš-i ,	ruc-e ,	noh-y	prs-a
<i>loc.</i>	oč-ích , (in) the eyes	uš-ích ,	ruk-ou ,	noh-ou	prs-ou
<i>inst</i>	oč-íma , with the eyes	uš-íma ,	ruk-ama ,	noh-ama	prs-oma .

DECLENSION of ADJECTIVES.

SECTION 17. — There are two leading classes of adjectives: definite and indefinite.

Definite adjectives present two subdivisions : 1. adjectives with a changing termination, according to gender: **dobr-ý** (**muž**), **dobr-á** (**žen-a**), **dobr-é** (**ditě**), — the good man, the good woman, the good child; 2. adjectives with the same termination in all three genders: **dneš-n-í** (**vítr**) **dnešní** (**zima**), **dnešní** (**parno**), — today's wind, today's cold, today's heat.*)

Indefinite adjectives are either derived from definite adjectives, being only a different form of the same; for instance: **zdrav-ý**, **zdrav-á**, **zdrav-é**, healthy or well (definite); **zdráv**, **zdráva**, **zdrávo** (indefinite)**);

Or they are so-called possessive adjectives, derived from nouns : (**otec**, the father) **otec-ův**, **otec-ova**, **otec-ovo**, the father's; (**matka**, the mother) **matč-in**, **matč-ina**, **matč-ino**, the mother's***).

SECTION 18.—Definite adjectives with a changing termination are declined in the following manner****) :

*) Compare Note 1 on page 85, and Note 1 on page 94.

***) Compare Note 2 on page 103.

****) Com Notes 2 and 3, on pp. 94, 95

*****) Compare Note 1, on page 85.

Singular.

	<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neutre</i>
<i>nom.</i>	dobr-ý muž, a good man;	dobr-á žena;	dobr-é dítě
<i>gen.</i>	dobr-ého muže, of a good man	dobr-é ženy;	dobr-ého dítěa
<i>dat.</i>	dobr-ému muži, to a good man	dobr-é ženě;	dobr-ému dítěu
<i>acc.</i>	dobr-ého muže, a good man;	dobr-ou ženu,	dobr-é dítěo
<i>voc.</i>	dobr-ý muži, good man!	dobr-á ženo !	dobr-é dítěo!
<i>loc.</i>	dobr-ém muži, (in) a good man	dobr-é ženě;	dobr-ém dítěu
<i>inst.</i>	dobr-ým mužem, with a good man	dobr-ou ženou;	dobr-ým dítěem.

Plural.

<i>nom.</i>	dobř-í muži, good men	dobr-é ženy	dobr-á dítěa
<i>gen.</i>	dobr-ých mužů, of good men	dobr-ých žen	dobr-ých dítěů
<i>dat.</i>	dobr-ým mužům, to good men	dobr-ým ženám	dobr-ým dítěům
<i>acc.</i>	dobr-é muže, good men	dobr-é ženy	dobr-á dítěa
<i>voc.</i>	dobř-í muži, good men!	dobr-é ženy	dobr-á dítěa
<i>loc.</i>	dobr-ých mužích, (in) good m.	dobr-ých ženách	dobr-ých dítěích
<i>inst.</i>	dobr-ými muži, with good men	dobř-ími ženami	dobr-ými dítěími.

Note 1. The hard consonants **h, ch, k, r**, are changed in the nominative plural, of the *masculine* gender into the soft consonants **z, š, c, ř**, when the adjective qualifies an *animate* noun : **dobrý muž**, — **dobří muži**; **velký hoch**, — **velcí hoši**. The terminations **cký** and **ský** change into **čtí** and **ští**: **německý** (sing). **němečtí** — (plur.); **český** (sing.) — **čeští** (plur.).

In common discourse, however, this rule is neglected.

Note 2. When the adjective qualifies a masculine *inanimate* noun, it agrees in the nominative and accusative plural with the feminine gender: **dobré stromy**, good trees; and the accusative singular is like the nominative: **dobrý strom**.

SECTION 19.— Definite adjectives, having the same termination (**í**) in all genders and both numbers, are declined in the following manner*);

*) Compare Note 1, page 94.

	Singular			Plural
	<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neutre</i>	<i>all three genders</i>
<i>nom.</i>	dnešn-í	dnešn-í	dnešn-í	dnešn-í
<i>gen.</i>	dnešn-ího	dnešn-í	dnešn-ího	dnešn-ích
<i>dat.</i>	dnešn-ímu	dnešn-í	dnešn-ímu	dnešn-ím
<i>acc.</i>	dnešn-ího	dnešn-í	dnešn-í	dnešn-í
<i>voc.</i>	dnešn-í	dnešn-í	dnešn-í	dnešn-í
<i>loc.</i>	dnešn-ím	dnešn-í	dnešn-ím	dnešn-ích
<i>inst.</i>	dnešn-ím	dnešn-í	dnešn-ím	dnešn-ími

Note. When the adjective qualifies a masculine *inanimate* noun, the accusative singular is like the nominative. We say: čekám dnešního hosta, I wait for today's guest; but: "čekám dnešní list", I wait for today's paper.

SECTION 20.—Indefinite adjectives like zdráv (from zdravý), vesel (from veselý), etc.*) are now used only in the nominative and accusative cases. Possessive adjectives have the following declension:

	Singular		
	<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neutre</i>
<i>nom.</i>	bratr-ův, my brother's	bratr-ova	bratr-ovo
<i>gen.</i>	bratr-ova, of my brother's	bratr-ovy	bratr-ova
<i>dat.</i>	bratr-ovu, to my brother's	bratr-ově	bratr-ovu
<i>acc.</i>	bratr-ova, my brother's	bratr-ovu	bratr-ovo
<i>voc.</i>	bratr-ův! brother's!	bratr-ova!	bratr-ovo!
<i>loc.</i>	bratr-ovu (-ově) in my brother's	bratr-ově	bratr-ovu
<i>inst.</i>	bratr-ovým, with my brother's	bratr-ovou	bratr-ovým.

(Only three cases differ, the other four being identical. In conversation there is no difference at all.)

	Plural		
<i>nom.</i>	bratr-ovi, my brother's	bratr-ovy	bratr-ova
<i>gen.</i>		bratr-ových	
<i>dat.</i>		bratr-ovým	
<i>acc.</i>	bratr-ovy	bratr-ovy	bratr-ova
<i>voc.</i>	bratr-ovi!	bratr-ovy!	bratr-ova!
<i>loc.</i>		bratr-ových	
<i>inst.</i>		bratr-ovými	

*) See Note 2, page 103.

Note 1. — When the possessive adjective qualifies a masculine *inanimate* noun, the accusative singular is like the nominative: *vidím bratrův dům*, “I see my brother’s house”; and the nominative and vocative plural have a final *y*, like the feminine gender: *bratrovy domy*, “my brother’s houses”.

Note 2. — The adjective *páně* is not inflected: *leta Páně 1900*, in the year of our Lord 1890;— *chrám Páně*, the Lord’s house; — *večeře, Páně*, the Lord’s supper, — *dům páně Hodanův*, Mr. Hodan’s house.

Note 3. — Possessive adjectives formed from feminine nouns and having the termination *in* (fem. *ina*, neutre *ino*)*), are declined like those formed from masculine nouns: *bratrův, bratrova, bratrovo*.

In their formation hard consonants are softened down in the usual manner: *mat-ka*, the mother; *mat-čin (matčina, matčino)*, the mother’s.

COMPARISON of ADJECTIVES.

SECTION 21. — The comparison of adjectives is fully explained in Notes 1 and 2, Lesson XXII. The termination *ký* changes into *čí*, in the second and third degree: *hezký*, nice; *hezčí*, nicer; *nejhezčí*, ni est.

DECLENSION of PRONOUNS.

SECTION 22. — *Personal pronouns.**)

Singular.

<i>nom.</i>	já , I	ty , thou	on , he; ono , it	ona , she
<i>gen.</i>	mě (mne) of me	tě (tebe)	jeho (ho)	jí
<i>dat.</i>	mi (mně) to me	ti (tobě)	jemu (mu)	jí
<i>acc.</i>	mě (mne) me	tě (tebe)	jeho (ho, jej); je , it	ji
<i>loc.</i>	mně , in me	tobě	něm	ní
<i>inst.</i>	mnou , with me	tebou	ním (jím)	ní (jí)

Plural.

<i>nom.</i>	my , we	vy , you	oni , (fe n. <i>ony</i> ; neut. <i>ona</i>) they
<i>gen.</i>	nás , of us	vás ,	jich
<i>dat.</i>	nám , to us	vám	jim
<i>acc.</i>	nás , us	vás	je
<i>loc.</i>	nás , in us	vás	nich
<i>inst.</i>	námi (with) us	vámi	nimi (jimi)

*) See Note 3, page 95.

*) Compare Note 1 on page 102 and Note on page 106.

SECTION 23. — *Possessive pron uns.**)

Singular.

	<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neutre</i>	<i>masc.</i>	<i>fem.</i>	<i>neut.</i>
<i>nom.</i>	můj	má (moje)	mé (moje)	naš	naše	naše
<i>gen.</i>	mého	mé (mojí)	mého	našeho	naší	našeho
<i>dat.</i>	mému	mé (mojí)	mému	našemu	naší	našemu
<i>acc.</i>	mého (inan. můj)	mou (mojí)	mé (moje)	našeho (inan. náš)	naší	naše
<i>voc.</i>	můj	má (moje)	mé (moje)	naš	naše	naše
<i>loc.</i>	mém	mé (mojí)	mém	našem	naší	našem
<i>inst.</i>	mým	mou (mojí)	mým	naším	naší	naším.

Plural.

(Cases showing no difference of gender are left in blank.)

<i>nom.</i>	moji (moje)	mé (moje)	má (moje)	naši (naše)	naše	naše
<i>gen.</i>	mých			našich		
<i>dat.</i>	mým			naším		
<i>acc.</i>	mé (moje)	mé (moje)	má (moje)	naše		
<i>voc.</i>	moji (moje)	mé (moje)	má (moje)	naši (naše)	naše	naše
<i>loc.</i>	mých			našich		
<i>inst.</i>	mými			našimi		

SECTION 24. — *Indicative pronouns.***)

Singular

Plural

	<i>masc.</i>	<i>fem.</i>	<i>neut.</i>	<i>masc.</i>	<i>fem.</i>	<i>neut.</i>	
<i>nom.</i>	ten	ta	to	ti	ty	ta	kdo co
<i>gen.</i>	toho	té	toho	těch			koho čeho
<i>dat.</i>	tomu	té	tomu	těm			komu čemu
<i>acc.</i>	toho (ten)	tu	to	ty	ty	ta	koho co
<i>loc.</i>	tom	té	tom	těch			kom čem
<i>inst.</i>	tím	tu	tím	těmi			kým čím

SECTION 25.—The relative pronouns **který** (fem. **která**, neut. **které**) and **jenž** (fem. & neut. **jež**), are translated by *which* or *that*.

The pronoun **který**, **á**, **é** is declined like the definite adjective **dobrý**, **á**, **é** : the pronoun **jenž** is declined as follows:

*) Compare Lessons XXV and XXVI.

**) Compare Note 1 on page 115, and Note 5 on page 82.

	Singular			Plural
	<i>masc.</i>	<i>fem.</i>	<i>neut.</i>	<i>of all three genders.</i>
<i>nom.</i>	jenž	jež	jež	již (masc.), jež (f. & n.)
<i>gen.</i>	jehož	jíž	jehož	jichž
<i>dat.</i>	jemuž	jíž	jemuž	jimž
<i>acc.</i>	jehož (ježž)	již	jež	jež
<i>loc.</i>	(v) němž	(v) níž	(v) němž	(v) nichž
<i>inst.</i>	jímž	jíž	jímž	jimiž

NUMERALS.

SECTION 26.—The *cardinal* numeral **jeden** (fem. **jedna**, neut. **jedno**) is declined like **ten**, (**ta**, **to**):*)

	Singular			Plural
	<i>masc.</i>	<i>fem.</i>	<i>neut.</i>	<i>of all three genders.</i>
<i>nom.</i>	jeden	jedn-a	jedn-o	jedn-i, -y, -a
<i>gen.</i>	jedn-oho	jedn-é	jedn-oho	jedn-ěch
<i>dat.</i>	jedn-omu	jedn-é	jedn-omu	jedn-ěm
<i>acc.</i>	jedn-oho (inan. jeden)	jedn-u	jedn-o	jedn-y, -y, -a
<i>loc.</i>	jedn-om	jedn-é	jedn-om	jedn-ěch
<i>inst.</i>	jedn-ím	jedn-ou	jedn-ím	jedn-ěmi

The declension of **dva** (fem. & neut. **dvě**), **tři**, **čtyři** (fem. & neut. **čtyry**) is sufficiently explained in Note 1, on page 122.

The numerals **pět**, **šest**, **sedm** until **devadesát devět** (*five till ninety nine*) take in all cases an **i**, except the accusative and vocative, which are like the nominative. For instance: **pět mužů**, five men; **pěti mužů**, of five men (or "of the five men"); **pěti mužům**, to five men; **v pěti mužích**, in five men; **s pěti muži**, with five men.

In the nominative and accusative they are *always* followed by the *genitive case* of the noun: **pět mužů** or **mužův**, five men; **šest holek**, six girls; **sedm dětí**, seven children.

*) See Note 2 on page 116.

Numerals like *twenty one, twenty two, twenty three*, and so forth; may be rendered in Bohemian in two ways: 1.—**dvacet jeden, dvacet dva, dvacet tři**, etc.*), in which case both parts are inflected: **dvaceti dvou**, of twenty two; **dvaceti dvěma**, to twenty two; etc.

2. — **jeden-a-dvacet, dva-a-dvacet, tři-a-dvacet**, etc., *one and twenty, two and twenty, three and twenty*; etc., but usually written together: **jedenadvacet, dvaadvacet**. In this case only the second part is inflected: **jedenadvaceti**, of twenty one, to twenty two; **s jedenadvaceti**, with twenty one.

Sto (one hundred) is declined like the neutre noun **slovo**, excepting that in connection with **dvě** (two) it retains the *dual* number in the nominative and accusative: **sto, sta, stu**, etc. (a hundred, of a hundred, to a hundred); **dvě stě**, two hundred; **dvou set**, of two hundred; **dvěma stům**, to two hundred; **o dvou stech**, about two hundred; **s dvěma sty**, with two hundred.

Tisíc (one thousand) is declined like the masc. noun **meč**: **tisíce**, of a thousand; **tisíci**, to a thousand; **s tisícem**, with a thousand.

SECTION 27.—*Ordinal* numerals, **první** or **prvý, druhý, třetí**, etc; (first, second, third,) are declined like adjectives of a corresponding termination, i. e. like **dobrý, á, é** or **dnešní**.**)

The same rule obtains in relation to the *special* and *multiplicative* numerals: **dvojí, trojí**, etc. (twofold, threefold); **dvojnásobný, trojnásobný**, etc. (double, treble).

The neutral form of special numerals: **čtvero, patero, desatero**, etc., is declined like the neutre noun **slovo**; for instance: **desatero přikázání**, the ten commandments; **desat-*ra* přikázání**, of the ten commandments; **v desateru přikázání**, in the ten commandments; etc.

The *names* of numbers: **jednotka** (the figure one), **dvojka**, the figure two), **trojka**, (the figure three), etc., are declined like the fem. nouns ending in **a**: **žena**.

SECTION 28.—The indefinite numeral **všechen** (also **všecek** or **všecken*****), *all*, has the following declension:

*) See page 120.

***) See Note 3 on page 124.

***) See Note 1 on page 127.

		Singular.		
		<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neutre</i>
<i>nom. & voc.</i>	všechn		všechna	všechno
<i>gen.</i>	všeho		vší	všeho
<i>dat.</i>	všemu		vší	všemu
<i>acc.</i>	všeho		všechnu	všechno
	(inan. všechn)			
<i>loc.</i>	všem		vší	všem
<i>inst.</i>	vším		vší	vším
Plural.				
<i>nom. & voc. masc.</i>	všichni	<i>gen.</i>	všech	} in all three genders.
(<i>masc. inan.</i>)	všechny	<i>dat</i>	všem	
<i>fem.</i>	všechny	<i>l. c. (ve)</i>	všech	
<i>neut.</i>	všechna	<i>inst</i>	všemi	
<i>acc., masc. & fem.</i>	všechny	<i>acc. neut.</i>	všechna	

The indefinite numeral **veškerý, á, é** has the same meaning as **všechn, na, no** (*all*), and is declined like adjectives of the same termination (**dobrý, á, é.**)

VERBS.

SECTION 29. — 1. The verb is said to be *subjective*, when the action or condition is strictly confined to the subject: **sedím**, I am sitting; **běhám**, I am running; **růže kvete**, the rose is blooming.

2. It is called *objective*, when the action relates to another person or thing: **slunce zahřívá zemi**, the sun is warming the earth; **učitel chválil žáka**, the teacher praised the scholar; **důvěřuj v Boha!** trust in God!

The objective verb is *transitive* or *intransitive*.

The transitive verb is accompanied by the accusative case without any preposition: **učitel chválí žáka**, the teacher is praising the scholar; **matka vede dceru**, the mother is leading her daughter.

The intransitive verb is accompanied by the accusative case with a preposition: **důvěřuj v Boha**; or by some other case with or without a preposition: **lakomec baží po bohatství**, the miser craves for riches; **žák poslouchá učitele**, the scholar obeys his teacher.

3. A verb is called *reflexive*, when the action reverts to the subject. Such verbs are accompanied by the reflexive pronoun **se**: **Modli se!**

pray! *Chlupec se strojí*, the boy is dressing (himself). *Radujeme se z toho*, we are rejoicing over it.

But sometimes the pronoun *se* expresses the *passive* mood, and not a reflected action: *maso se jí*, the flesh is eaten; *jablka se česají*, the apples are being picked; *pole se orá*, the field is being plowed.

4. *Impersonal* verbs express an action or condition regardless of the person or thing, from which it proceeds: *prší*, it rains, it is raining; *rozednívá se*, it dawns, (the day is breaking).

SECTION 30.—The classification of the Bohemian verbs in regard to the character of the action is fully explained in Lesson XXXIX.

Tense-inflection shows a difference in the *time* of the action or condition. There are three tenses :

1. *The present tense (přítomný čas)*: *píšu*, I write, I am writing; *pes štěká*, the dog barks, the dog is barking.

2. *The past tense (minulý čas)*: *psal jsem*, I wrote, I was writing; *pes štěkal*, the dog barked, the dog was barking.

The past tense may be *continuous*, when a continued past action is expressed: *šel jsem*, I went, I was going; or *finite*, when a finished action is expressed: *přišel jsem*, I came.

3. *The future tense (budoucí čas)*: *psátí budu*, I shall write, I shall be writing; *pes bude štěkati*, the dog will bark, the dog will be barking.

The future tense may also be either *continuous*: *budu psátí*; or *finite*, when a completed future action is to be expressed; *napišu*, I shall write out.

The Bohemian verb, like in English, has an indicative mood: *mluvím*, I speak; a subjunctive or conditional mood: *mluvil bych*, I should speak; and an imperative mood: *mluv!* speak!

SECTION 31.—There is only one auxiliary verb in Bohemian: *býti*, to be. — But certain verbs are used in connection with other verbs, to make a complete assertion or declaration; for instance: *musíti*, must; *smítí*, may, dare; *moci*, can; *ráčítí*, please; etc. We say: *musím jíti*, I must go; *smím mluvití?* may I speak? *račte vejíti!* please to come in!

SECTION 32.—The Bohemian verb has *six conjugations*, fully illustrated in Lessons XXXI—XXXV incl.

The auxiliary verb *býti*, adding in the formation of the past and future tenses, is conjugated thus :

Present: jsem, jsi, jest; jsme, jste, jsou.

Imperative: buď, buďme, buďte.

Past participle: byl, byla, bylo; byli, byly, byla.

Subjunctive: bych, bys, by; bychom, (bysme), byste, by.

Future: budu, budeš, bude; budeme, budete, budou.

Present transgressive):* jsa, jsouc, jsouc; jsouce; (being).

Past transg.: byv, byvši, byvši; byvše; (having been).

Future transg : buda, budouc, budouc; budouce; (to be, expecting to be).

*) This participial construction occurs only in the written language; it is explained in Note 4, page 164.

SECTION 33.—Table of the six conjugations.

		I. Termination ti directly attached to the root.				II Term. -outi	III Termin.	
Person		nes-ti to carry	pi-ti to drink	tři-ti to rob	peč-i* to bake	min-outi to pass	hled-ěti to look, to look after	
Indicative mood	Singular	1	nes-u	plj-u (-i)	tr-u	pek-u	min-u	hled-fm
		2	nes-eš	pij-eš	tř-eš	peč-eš	min-eš	hled-fš
		3	nes-e	pij-e	tř-e	peč-e	min-e	hled-f
	Plural	1	nes-eme	pij-eme	tř-eme	peč-eme	min-eme	hled-fme
		2	nes-ete	pij-ete	tř-ete	peč-ete	min-ete	hled-fte
		3	nes-ou	pij-ou	tr-ou	pek-ou	min-ou	hled-f
Imperative	Sing.	2	nes	pij	tři	peč	miň	hled'
	Plur.	1	nes-me	pij me	tř-me	peč-me	miň-me	hled-me
		2	nes-te	pij-te	tř-ete	peč-te	miň-te	hled-te
Active participle.	Singular	<i>masc.</i>	nes-l	pi-l	tře-l	pek-l	minu-l	hled-ěl
		<i>fem.</i>	nes-la	pi-la	tře-la	pek-la	minu-la	hled-ěla
		<i>neut.</i>	nes-lo	pi-lo	tře-lo	pek-lo	minu-lo	hled-ělo
	Plural	<i>masc.</i>	nes-li	pi-li	tře-li	pek-li	minu-li	hled-ěli
		<i>fem.</i>	nes-ly	pi-ly	tře-ly	pek-ly	minu-ly	hled-ěly
		<i>neut.</i>	nes-la	pi-la	tře-la	pek-la	minu-la	hled-ěla
Passive participle	Singular	<i>masc.</i>	nes-en	pi-t	tře-n	peč-en	minu-t	hledě-n
		<i>fem.</i>	nes-ena	pi-ta	tře-na	peč-ena	minu-ta	hledě-na
		<i>neut.</i>	nes-eno	pi-to	tře-no	peč-eno	minu-to	hledě-no
	Plural	<i>masc.</i>	nes-eni	pi-ti	tře-ni	peč-eni	minu-ti	hledě-ni
		<i>fem.</i>	nes-eny	pi-ty	tře-ny	peč-eny	minu-ty	hledě-ny
		<i>neut.</i>	nes-ena	pi-ta	tře-na	peč-ena	minu-ta	hledě-na
Present transgressive	Singular	<i>masc.</i>	nes-a	pij-e	tr-a	pek-a	miň-a	hled-ě
		<i>fem.</i>	nes-ouc	pij-ěc	tr-ouc	pek-ouc	min-ouc	hled-ěc
		<i>neut.</i>	nes-ouc	pij-ěc	tr-ouc	pek-ouc	min-ouc	hled-ěc
	Plural	<i>m. f.</i>	nes-ouce	pij-ěce	tr-ouce	pek-ouce	min-ouce	hled-ěce
		<i>n.</i>	nes-ouce	pij-ěce	tr-ouce	pek-ouce	min-ouce	hled-ěce
Past transgressive	Singular	<i>masc.</i>	nes	piv	tře-v	pek	min-uv	hledě-v
		<i>fem.</i>	nes-ši	piv-ši	tře-vši	pek-ši	min-uvši	hledě-vši
		<i>neut.</i>	nes-ši	piv-ši	tře-vši	pek-ši	min-uvši	hledě-vši
	Plural	<i>m. f.</i>	nes-še	piv-še	tře-vše	pek-še	min-uvše	hledě-vše
		<i>n.</i>	nes-še	piv-še	tře-vše	pek-še	min-uvše	hledě-vše

*) Popularly **pecti**, originally **pěkti**.

III -ěti or -eti	IV Termin. -iti	V Termin. -ati			VI Term. -ovati
ház-eti to throw	čin-iti to do	vol-ati to call	maz-ati to rub	hná-ti to drive	mil-ovati to love
ház-ím	čin-ím	vol-ám	maž-u (-i)	žen-u	miluj-u (-i)
ház-íš	čin-íš	vol-áš	maž-eš	žen-eš	miluj-eš
ház-í	čin-í	vol-á	maž-e	žen-e	miluj-e
ház-íme	čin-íme	vol-áme	maž-eme	žen-eme	mi.uj-eme
ház-íte	čin-íte	vol-áte	maž-ete	žen-ete	miluj-ete
ház-ejí	čin-í	vol-ají	maž-ou (i)	žen-ou	miluj-ou (-f)
házej	čiň	volej	maž	žeň	miluj
házej-me	čiň-me	volej-me	maž-me	žeň-me	miluj-me
házej-te	čiň-te	volej-te	maž-te	žeň-te	miluj-te
háze-l	čini-l	vola-l	maza-l	hna-l	milova-l
háze-la	čini-la	vola-la	maza-la	hna-la	milova-la
háze-lo	čini-lo	vola-lo	maza-lo	hna-lo	milova-lo
háze-li	čini-li	vola-li	maza-li	hna-li	milova-li
háze-ly	čini-ly	vola-ly	maza-ly	hna-ly	milova-ly
háze-la	čini-la	vola-la	maza-la	hna-la	milova-la
háze-n	čině-n	volá-n	mazá-n	hná-n	milová-n
háze-na	čině-na	volá-na	mazá-na	hná-na	milová-na
háze-no	čině-no	volá-no	mazá-no	hná-no	milová-no
háze-ni	čině-ni	volá-ni	mazá-ni	hná-ni	milová-ni
háze-ny	čině-ny	volá-ny	mazá-ny	hná-ny	milová-ny
háze-na	čině-na	volá-na	mazá-na	hná-na	milová-na
háze-je	čin-ě	vola-je	maž-e	žen-a	miluj-e
háze-jíc	čin-íc	vola-jíc	maž-íc	žen-ouc	miluj-íc
háze-jíc	čin-íc	vola-jíc	maž-íc	žen-ouc	miluj-íc
háze-jíce	čin-íce	vola-jíce	maží-ce	žen-ouce	miluj-íce
háze-v	čini-v	vola-v	maza-v	hna-v	milova-v
háze-vši	čini-vši	vola-vši	maza-vši	hna-vši	milova-vši
háze-vši	čini-vši	vola-vši	maza-vši	hna-vši	milova-vši
háze-vše	čini-vše	vola-vše	maza-vše	hna-vše	milova-vše

SECTION 34.—Irregular verbs.

- Jeti**, to ride, to drive;—*present*, jedu, jedeš, jede, jedeme, jedete, jedou; *imper* jed', -me, -te; *active partic* jel, -a, -o; *passive partic*. jet, -a, o; *present transg.* jed-a, -ouc, -ouce; *supine*, jet, (to ride);
- jíti**, to go;—*pres.* jdu, jdeš, jde, jdeme, jdete, jdou; *imp.* jdi, jdě-me, jdě-te; *act. part.* šel, šla, šlo; *present transg.* jda, jdouc, -ce; *sup.* jít, (to go);
- chtíti**, to want;—*pres.* chci, chceš, chce, cheeme, chcete, chtějí; *imper.* chtěj, chtěj-me, -te; *act. part.* chtěl, -a, -o; *pres. transg.* chtěj-e, -ic, -íce; *past transg.* chtěv, -ši, -še; *sup.* chtět (to want);
- míti**, to have;—*pres.* mám, máš, má, máme, máte, mají; *imper.* měj, měj-me, měj-te; *act. part.* měl, -a, o; *pres. transg.* maj e, -ic, -íce; *past transg.* měv, -ši, -še;
- spáti**, to sleep;—*pres.* spím, spíš, spí, spíme, spíte, spí; *imper* spi, spě-me, -te; *act. part.* spal, -a, -o; *pres. transg.* spě, spíc, spíce; *past transg.* spav, -ši, -še; *sup.* spat, (to sleep);
- státi se**, to happen, to become;—*stanu se, staneš se, stane se, stan-eme, -ete, -ou se; imper.* stañ se, -me, -te se; *act. part.* stal, -a, -o se; *pres. transg.* stav, -ši, -še, -se; (*stává se, it happens, is impersonal*);
- viděti**, to see;—*vidím, vidíš, vidí, vidíme, vidíte, vidí; imper.* viz, -me, -te; *act. part.* viděl, -a, -o; *passive part.* viděn, -a, -o; *present transg.* vid-a, -ouc, -ouce.

SECTION 35.—The derivation and comparison of adverbs is explained in Notes 2 and 3, on page 128.

Prepositions govern or require particular cases.

The *genitiæ* case, responding to the question **čí, koho? čeho?***, is governed by the following prepositions, and adverbs used as prepositions:

bez, without	} according to;	do, to, till, until;	} as'de from,	
dle		od, from		kromě } except;
podle		u, at, by;		kolem } round,
vedle, next to, along-		z, ze, from, out of;		okolo } around;
side of;				vůkol }

*) See Note 5, page 82. In the genitive case the question **koho? whose?** was inadvertently omitted.

vně, outside of;		daleko, far		výše, higher
vnitř, inside of;		stranu, about		prostřed, amidst
blízko, near		níže, lower		místo, instead of.

The *dative* case (responding to the question **komu? čemu?** is governed by the following:

k	} to, for;		proti, against		naproti, towards, a-
ke			k vůli, for the sake of;		gainst, opposite;
ku					vstříc, towards.

The *accusative* case (responding to the question **koho? co?**) is governed by the following:

mimo, besides, past;		pro, for		skrze, through.
ob, over		přes, over, across;		

The *locative* case (responding to the question **v kom? v čem? o kom? o čem?** etc.) is always governed by the preposition **při**, *by, at*; and in most instances by the following prepositions:

v	} in		o, about, on;		po, after, by, during.
ve			na, on, upon, for;		

The preposition **v** or **ve**, when it occurs before a word beginning with the letter **v**, is often changed into **u**; for instance: **u velikém počtu** (instead of **ve velikém počtu**), *in a large number*, or "in large numbers."

The above five prepositions often require the *accusative* case; for example: **na potupu**, *for disgrace*, i. e. "in order to disgrace or dishonor"; **bojí se o život**, he fears for his life.

The prepositions **mezi**, between, among; **nad**, over, above; **pod**, under, below; **před**, before, — govern either the *accusative* or the *instrumental* case: **půjdu mezi lidi**, I shall go among people; **byl jsem mezi lidmi**, I was among people.

The preposition **s**, *se* governs the *genitive* case, when it means *from*, *off*: **spadl s vozu, se stromu**, he fell from the wagon, from the tree; and it governs the *instrumental* case, when it means *with*: **pojď se mnou**, come with me; **šli jsme za ním**, we went after him, we followed him.

Za governs the *genitive* case, when it means *during, in*: **za času Washingtona**, in the time of Washington;—it governs the *accusative* case, when it means *for*: **koupil jsem to za dollar**, I bought it for a dollar; — and it governs the *instrumental* case, when translated by *behind, after*: **pojd' za mnou**, come behind me; **přijdu za tebou**, I will come after thee.

In rare instances it requires the *accusative* case: **nejsem s to posloužití vám**, I cannot (I am not able to) accommodate you.

CONTENTS.

	Page
Why this book has been written.....	5
The Bohemian language.....	7
The Bohemians in the United States.....	8
PART I.	
General observations.....	12
The Bohemian alphabet.....	12
Names of the letters.....	15
Bohemian pronunciation.....	16
Parts of speech.....	18
Gender.....	19
Grammatical rules in general.....	20
The accent.....	21
“Ty” and “vy”.....	22
PART II. Rules of pronunciation.....	25
Lesson I }.....	28
Lesson XL }.....	172
PART III. Bohemian conversation.....	179
Bohemian and English.....	180
Greetings and compliments.....	187
A call.....	190
Time.....	192
The hour.....	198
Age and date.....	201
The weather.....	206
Health and sickness.....	213
The human being.....	218
Disease and cure.....	228
Drugs and medicines.....	237
At home.....	244
Buying and selling.....	249
In a grocery store.....	255
Garments.....	257
Shoemaking.....	260
Diverse trades.....	261
On the farm.....	262
PART IV. Bohemian grammar.....	
Orthography.....	269
Etymology.....	274

Knihy vydané nákladem Slavie:

Tlumač. Nový Tlumač Americký od Karla Jonáše. Žádná publikace česká v této zemi nebyla přijata od obecnstva s takovým vděkem a uznáním a žádná se nedostalo rozšíření tak rychlého a velikého, jako Tlumači, knize ku snadnému a rychlému přiučení se jazyku anglickému, bez jehož znalosti nikdo se zde valného pokroku nededělá. Cena \$1.50 i se zásilkou a prodává se jediné za hotové.

Slovník česko-anglický, od Karla Jonáše. Čtvrté rozmožené a opravené vydání. Postupná kniha učebná po Tlumači a nezbytná pro každého ku zdokonalení se v jazyku anglickém. Pro počátečníka ku rychlému seznámení se s nejobecnější, každodenní mluvou stačí Tlumač; povrchní znalec angličtiny musí pak k ruce míti Slovník, aby se zdokonalil. Cena \$1.50. Jen za hotové.

Slovník anglicko-český, od Karla Jonáše. S úplnou výslovností anglickou. Obsahuje na 723 stranách bohatý slovní poklad anglického jazyka. Nezbytná pomůcka čtenářům. Cena \$1.75.

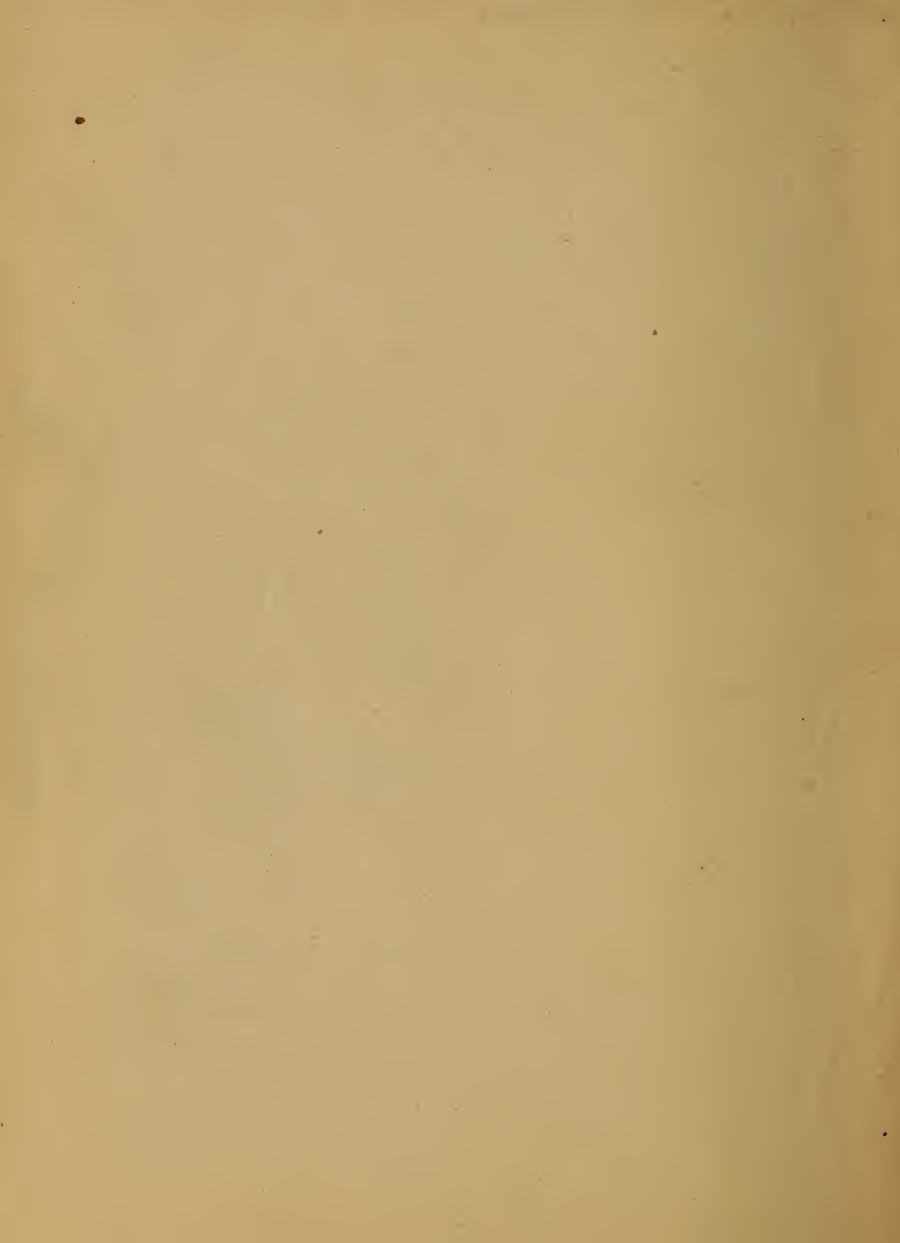
Zlatá kniha pro farmera. Dle rozličných pramenů sestavil Karel Jonáš. Kniha tato pojednává o vnitřních i zevnitřních nememocech koní a všeho dobytka hospodářského. Obsahuje návod o koupi koní, dodatek o domácích pomůčkách pro všeliké nehody, a recepty na rozličné léky v jazyku českém i anglickém. Prospěla již stům českých farmerů a na žádné farmě neměla by chyběti. Cena \$1.00.

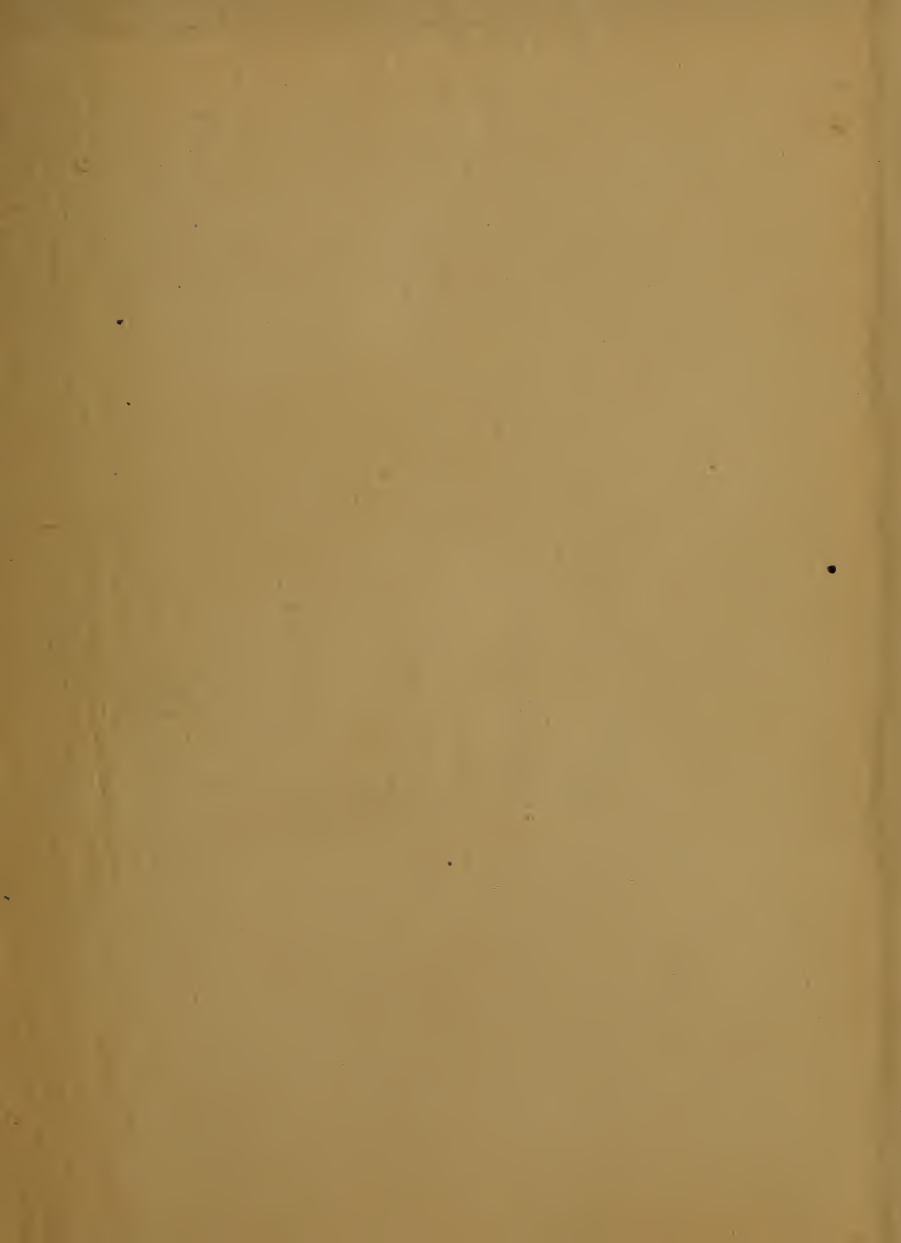
Americké právo. Sepsal Josef Jiří Král. Sbírká nejdůležitějších zákonů, které by měl znáti každý občan americký. Obsahuje právo státní, občanské, rodinné, pozemkové, farmářské; homstední zákon i jiné o zabírání veřejných pozemků a všechny smlouvy s Rakouskem. Cena \$1.75.

Česko-americký Besedník. Největší sbírka příležitostných básní a deklamací vážných i žertovných, solových výstupů, gratulací atd. Pravý poklad pro pořadatele zábav. Cena \$1.75.

Politické zřízení americké. Napsal Charles Nordhoff. Se svolením spisovatele a nakladatele přeložil Gustav B. Reišl. Cena 50c.

Objednávky adresujte: SLAVIE, Racine, Wis.





LIBRARY OF CONGRESS



00023913367

